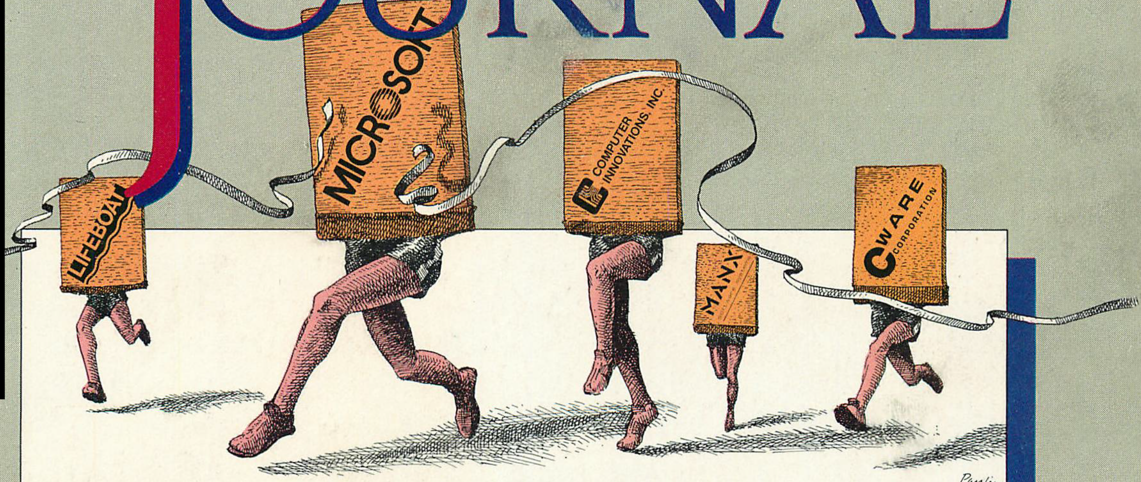
November-December 1983 Vol. 1, No. 3 $3.95

FOR IBM PERSONAL COMPUTER USERS

PC TECH JOURNAL

[redacted]



C AND THE PC

Ten compilers reviewed: Part one

INSIDE MICROSOFT BASIC

TWO APL SYSTEMS

SQL ON THE PC

3COM LAN: ETHERSERIES

INTERRUPTS AND THE IBM PC

UCL: A USER COMMAND LANGUAGE

0 14024 14357 12

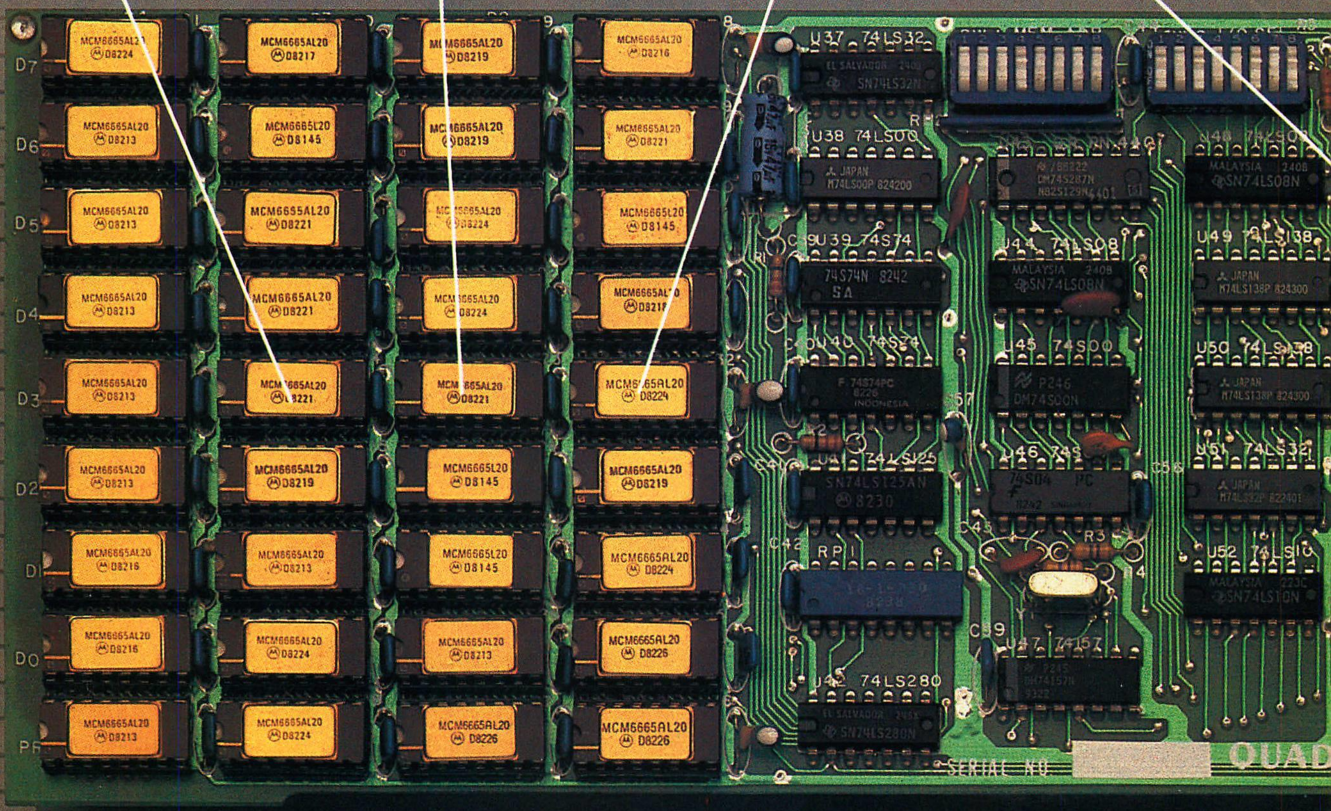
QUADBOARD™

256K Memory Expansion
Expandable in 64K increments, Quadboard™ is socketed for 256K bytes of memory. Full parity and checking standard.

Qspool™
With Qspool, you can also use part of system memory as a software print buffer. Choose from 8K to 56K of memory and stop waiting for your printer.

QuadRAM Drive™
This software program lets you use part of your total system memory as multiple disk drives. Super-fast drives that let you store important information for easy access.

Chronograph
Quadboard features a real time chronograph to always keep your system's clock/calendar up-to-date. Even when your system's been off for months.



ACTUAL SIZE

THE FIRST AND ONLY BOARD YOUR IBM PC MAY EVER NEED.

Your IBM Personal Computer is very versatile. New functions and applications are being developed for it everyday. And now with Quadram's Quadboard, you can keep your PC options open for tomorrow's technology. In the tradition of Quadram Quality, six of the most needed PC functions have been combined into one package, using only one expansion slot. Your remaining IBM slots are left free for future expansion needs.

All-On-One-Board and Software, too.
Every board you may ever need for your IBM PC is in the Quadboard package. From serial port to print buffer. Plus, there's QuadMaster software, too. Included on this disk are utilites for accurately setting the Quadboard's chronograph for time and date, and for performing diagnostics on all Quadboard functions. There's

QUADRAM QUALITY

BY QUADRAM™

Parallel Port
There's a parallel I/O designed to operate most printers and parallel devices.

Or a second serial port on Quadboard II.

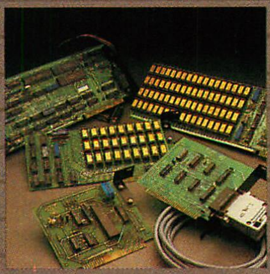
Serial Port
Used for connecting modems, printers, and other serial devices, Quadboard's serial adapter can be configured as COM1 or COM2 and fully supports IBM PC communications software.

$395 (64K)
$595 (256K)

also Qswap,™ the feature that lets you switch line printers one and two, back and forth, as your printing needs change.

Proven Design
Quadboard is the number one IBM PC option board on the market today. Nothing even comes close, because Quadboard is designed with performance in mind. Engineered for dependability and built with only the finest components available. Each board has been thoroughly tested and "burned-in" for years of reliable service.

INCREDIBLE PRICE, ASK YOUR DEALER.
Our full line of IBM PC accessories: Quadboard II, Quad 512+, Quadcolor, Quadchrome, Quadscreen, Quadmodem, Memory Board, Serial Board (Single or Dual ports), Parallel Board, Chronograph, and Microfazer.



All products are sold through local personal computer dealers. If yours does not stock Quadram, please ask him to call us at (404) 923-6666.

QUADRAM CORPORATION
An Intelligent Systems Company

4355 International Blvd./Norcross, Ga. 30093
(404) 923-6666/TWX 810-766-4915 (QUADRAM NCRS)

CIRCLE NO. 191 ON READER SERVICE CARD

With all the clamor about personal computers, a fundamental fact is often overlooked: some simply *work* better than others.

Consider the COMPAQ Portable.

A computer will make you more productive. A computer will make you more efficient. You hear it everywhere. But you don't hear much about which computer actually *works* best.

The COMPAQ Portable fits under a standard airline seat for business trips.

Works in more places

With the COMPAQ™ Portable, you can be as productive in your hotel room or your lake house as in your own office. It's a reliable companion on a business trip. It's a powerful sales aid in your customer's office.

You can move it from office to office to share its resources. You can move it into the conference room to answer questions.

What's more productive than a computer? A computer that works for you in more places.

Works with the greatest number of programs

The most important consideration when choosing a computer is "what programs will it run?"

The COMPAQ Portable runs more programs than any other portable. In fact, it runs more than most non-portables because it runs all the popular programs written for the IBM® Personal Computer without any modification. There are hundreds of them. They are available at computer stores all over the country.

Imagine the power of a *portable* word processor. There are dozens of word processing programs available for the COMPAQ Portable.

Planning, problem-solving, and "what-ifs" are a cinch with a variety of popular electronic spreadsheet programs. The COMPAQ Portable runs them all.

There are accounting programs for anything from computerizing your family budget to full-scale professional management of payables, receivables, inventory, and payroll.

There are programs for making charts and programs for communicating with other computers.

So you get portability and you don't give up problem-solving power.

The combination adds up to the most useful personal computer on the market today.

Add-on options make it work the way you work

Inside the COMPAQ Portable are three open slots. Most portables don't have any. Electronic devices called expansion boards fit those slots and give the COMPAQ Portable new powers. As with programs, expansion boards designed for the IBM will work. With them, you can make your personal computer more personal.

Want to check a stock price? One expansion board enables the COMPAQ Portable to handle those communications over ordinary phone lines.

Want to use your company's central computer files while you're on a trip? There are boards that allow the COMPAQ Portable to communicate with a variety of large computers.

Other boards let you hook up controllers for computer games, increase memory capacity, or connect several personal computers in a network.

The added usefulness is free

The COMPAQ Portable doesn't cost any more than an ordinary desktop computer. In fact, it costs hundreds less than a comparably equipped IBM or Apple® III. The COMPAQ Portable comes standard with one disk drive and 128K bytes of memory, both of which are usually extra-cost options.

The bottom line is this—you just can't buy a more practical, useful, productive computer. Compare the COMPAQ Portable.

All the popular programs written for the IBM PC run as is on the COMPAQ Portable.

For the location of the Authorized Dealer nearest you, call 1-800-231-9966.

COMPAQ™

The most computer you can carry

In the Hard Disk Jungle Tallgrass Clears a Path

In today's hard disk jungle, Tallgrass clears a path by offering high performance, integrated mass storage solutions for the IBM® PC and compatibles, the T.I. Professional and the Victor 9000 computers.

TALLGRASS INNOVATIVE FEATURES

MASS STORAGE SYSTEMS with formatted HardFile™ capacities of 6, 12, 20, 35 and 70 Mb, all with built-in tape backup.

CONVENIENT INTEGRAL TAPE BACKUP SYSTEM allows rapid tape "image" streaming, or incremental file-by-file backup and restore on ANSI standard inexpensive data cartridges, instead of the usual floppies, video cassettes, or low-capacity removable Winchester devices.

NETWORK READY and fully compatible with networks such as PCnet® and EtherShare.™

HIGH RELIABILITY with dual directory and read-after-write verify options. A dedicated landing zone, where the read/write heads reside when the disk is idle, provides data protection during powerdowns and transportation.

EtherShare™ is a registered trademark of 3Com Corp.
PCnet® is a trademark of Orchid Technology
IBM® is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.

Follow the Tallgrass path to your local computer dealer and watch your personal computer transform into a powerful data processing system.
From $2,995.00 U.S. including integral tape backup.

Available from COMPUTERLAND,® Entré® Computer Centers, MicroAge® Computer Stores and other participating computer dealers.

New!
IBM-XT Cartridge Tape Backup

World Headquarters: Tallgrass Technologies Corp. / 11667 W. 90th St. Overland Park, KS 66214 / 913-492-6002 / Telex: 215406 TBYT UR

Canadian Distributors: Micro-Ware / 440 Phillip St. Waterloo, Ontario N2L 5R9 / 519-884-4541
CompuServe / 1675 W. 8th St. / Vancouver, B.C. V6J 1V2 / 604-733-7783

European Distributor: CPS Computer Group, LTD Birmingham, England B276BH / (021) 7073866

Australian Headquarters: Tallgrass Technologies (Australia) / Five Dock Plaza, Suite 12 / 50 Great North Road / Five Dock / Sydney, N.S.W. 2046 / (02) 712-2010

Tallgrass Technologies Corporation

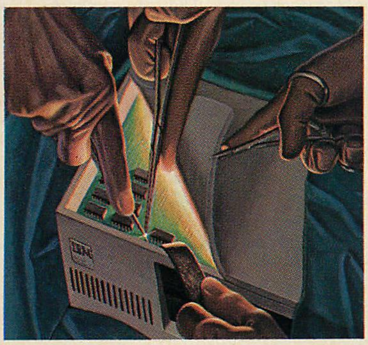
CIRCLE NO. 234 ON READER SERVICE CARD

FOR IBM PERSONAL COMPUTER USERS

Volume 1 Number 3
Nov/Dec 1983

TECH JOURNAL

30



62

78

ARTICLES

DEPARTMENTS

TECH NOTEBOOKS

TECH JOURNAL

VOL. 1, NO. 3

Publisher
Jeff Weiner

Editorial
Editor: Will Fastie
Managing Editor: Marjory Spraycar
Technical Editor: Susan Glinert-Cole
Copy Editor: Gina Maranto
Editorial Assistant: Arthur A. Gleckler
Contributing Editors: Ray Duncan, Richard Foard, Thomas V. Hoffmann, Max Stul Oppenheimer
Editorial Secretary: Diana L. Carey

Art & Production
Editorial Design: Nancy Lepow
Production Artists: Jean Taylor, Jim Buklarewicz, Ellen Grossman, Lisa Herring, Ellie Bernstein, Tito Pretel
Illustrators: Doug Palin, Mark Busacca, Richard Kreigler, Aleta R. Jenks, Tim Huhn, Robert Conrad

Advertising Sales
Advertising Coordinator: Sheryl Panzer
District Managers: Ian Smith—East Coast; Caroline Anderson—Midwest; Ted Bahr—West Coast
Account Sales Manager: Pauline Scherer
Account Representatives: Rita Burke—East Coast; John Grogan—Midwest; Bill Bush—West Coast

Circulation
Subscription Director: Chet Klimuszko, New Business Manager: Eric A. Bernhard, Renewal and Billing Manager: Shane Boel, Direct Retail Sales: Lynn Kujawa, Telemarketing Manager: Linda Rossiter

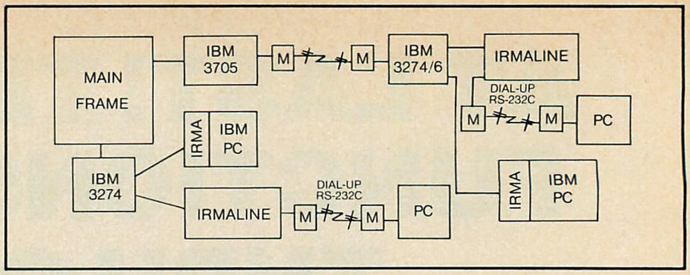
Consumer Computers & Electronics Magazine Division
President: Larry Sporn
Vice President, Marketing: J. Scott Briggs
Vice President, Circulation: Carole Mandel
Vice President, General Manager: Eileen G. Markowitz
Creative Director: Peter J. Blank

Ziff-Davis Publishing
President, RICHARD P. FRIESE; President, Consumer Magazine Division, ALBERT S. TRAINA; Executive Vice President, Marketing and Circulation, PAUL H. CHOOK; Senior Vice President, PHILLIP T. HEFFERNAN; Senior Vice President, SIDNEY HOLTZ; Senior Vice President, EDWARD D. MUHLFELD; Senior Vice President, PHILIP SINE; Vice President, BAIRD DAVIS; Vice President, GEORGE MORRISSEY; Treasurer, SELWYN TAUBMAN; Secretary, BERTRAM A. ABRAMS

PC Tech Journal (ISSN 0738-0194) is published bi-monthly, $24.97 for one year, $43.97 for two years. Additional postage $6.00 for Canada & Foreign. PC Tech Corp. is a subsidiary of Ziff-Davis Publishing Company, The World Trade Center, Suite 211, Baltimore, Maryland, 21202. Application to mail at Second-Class Postage Rates is pending at New York, NY 10001. POSTMASTER: Send address changes to *PC Tech Journal*, 39 East Hanover Ave., Morris Plains, NJ 07950.

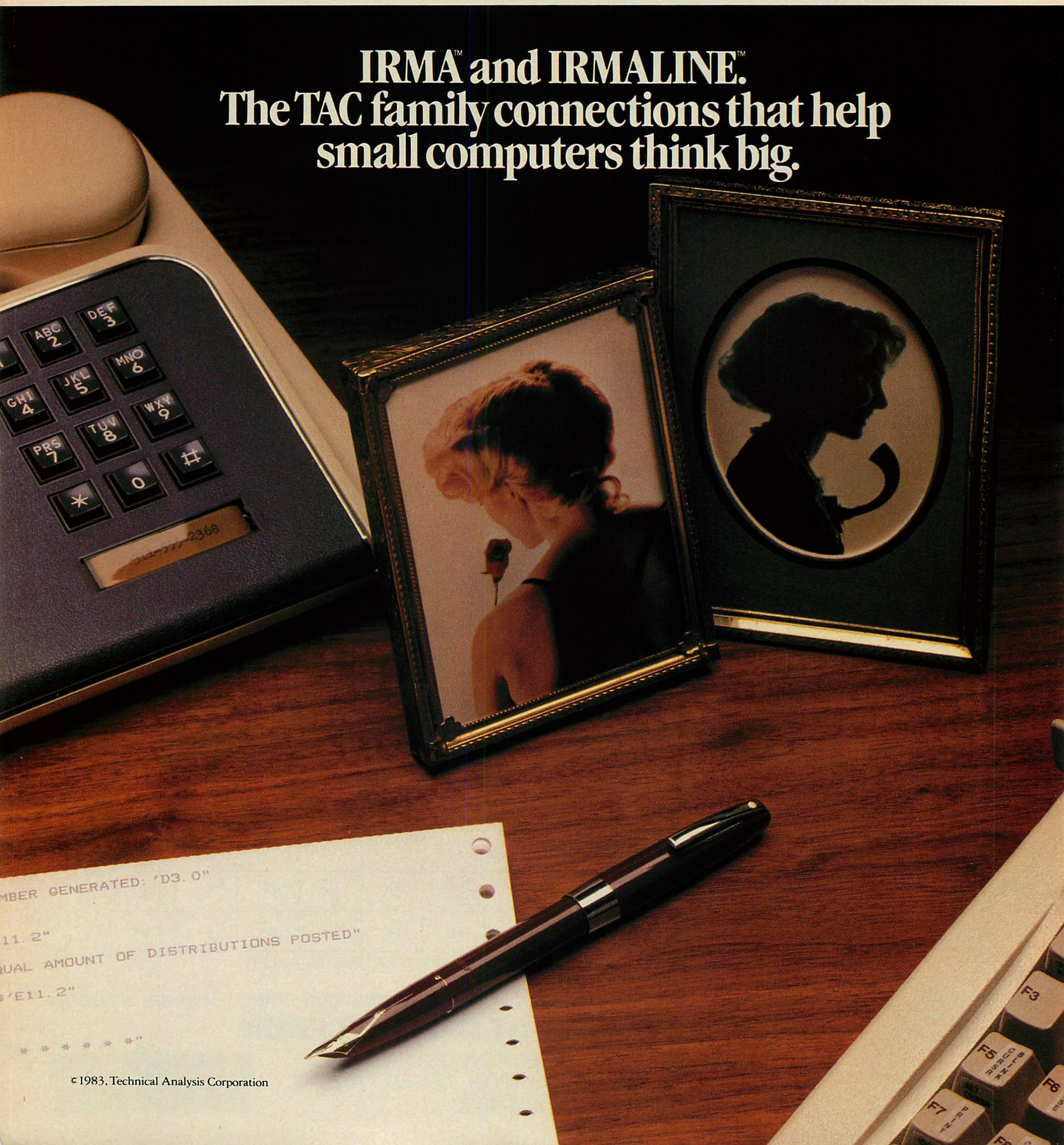
Editorial and Business Offices: *PC Tech Journal*, The World Trade Center, Suite 211, Baltimore, Maryland 21202. Editorial (301) 576-0770, Advertising PC Tech Journal, One Park Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10016 (212) 725-7947.

Here are two beautiful ways to get small computers on line with the mainframe quickly, easily and economically—yours from TAC, home of the industry's first coaxial cable links between small computers and IBM 3270 networks.



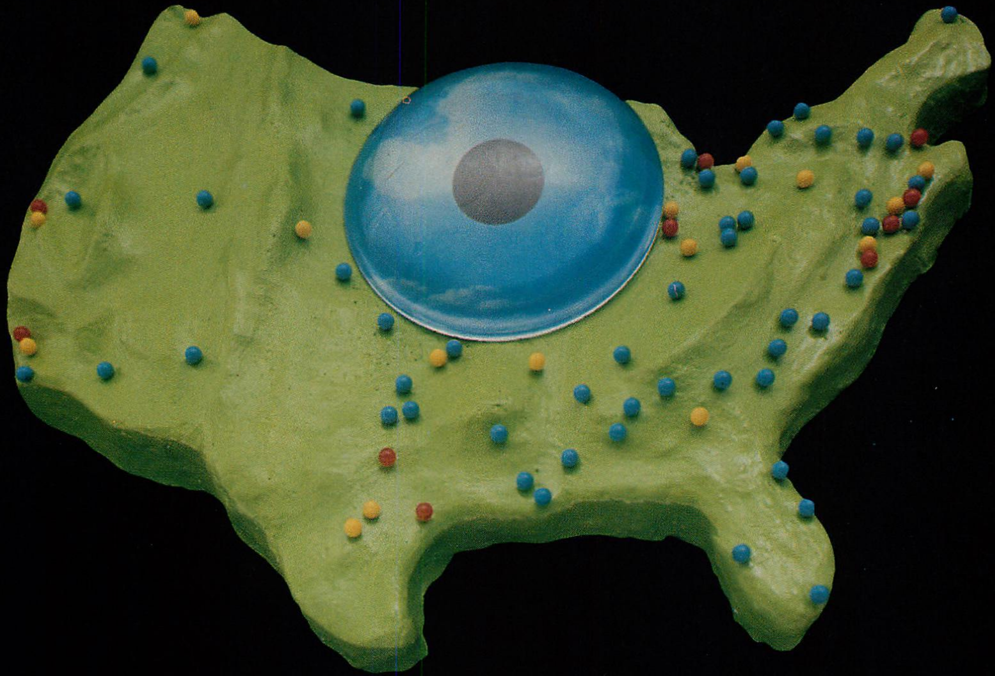
IRMA™ is the Decision Support Interface™ that gets IBM Personal Computers and IBM PC XTs into the 3270 mainstream via direct attachment to 3274 or 3276 controllers.

CIRCLE NO. 210 ON READER SERVICE CARD




EDIT/BROWSE COMMAND:
(PRIMARY COMMAND)
(EDIT LINE COMMAND)
IBM
Personal Computer
IBM
Personal Computer
Esc

Our Vision Is Peripheral



Yours Can Be, Too, With Multi-Tech Systems' New Modem For The IBM PC

Expand your horizons. Connect your IBM PC to San Diego, San Antonio, Savannah, and points between. Link up to New York for the Dow Jones News, or check out The Source in D.C. Dial up CompuServe in Ohio, or the corporate mainframe downtown. Swap programs with your pal in Seattle. Transfer files with your friend next door.

Share the latest excitement at Multi-Tech: the MT212PC Intelligent Modem for the IBM PC.

- Plugs into any IBM PC expansion slot.
- Transmits at 0-300 or 1200 bits per second.

MT212PC Board Modem

- Automatically dials, answers, hangs up, redials.
- Stores phone numbers, parameters, log-on sequences.
- Creates, stores, prints, displays, and transfers files.
- No IBM serial card needed . . . price includes all software.

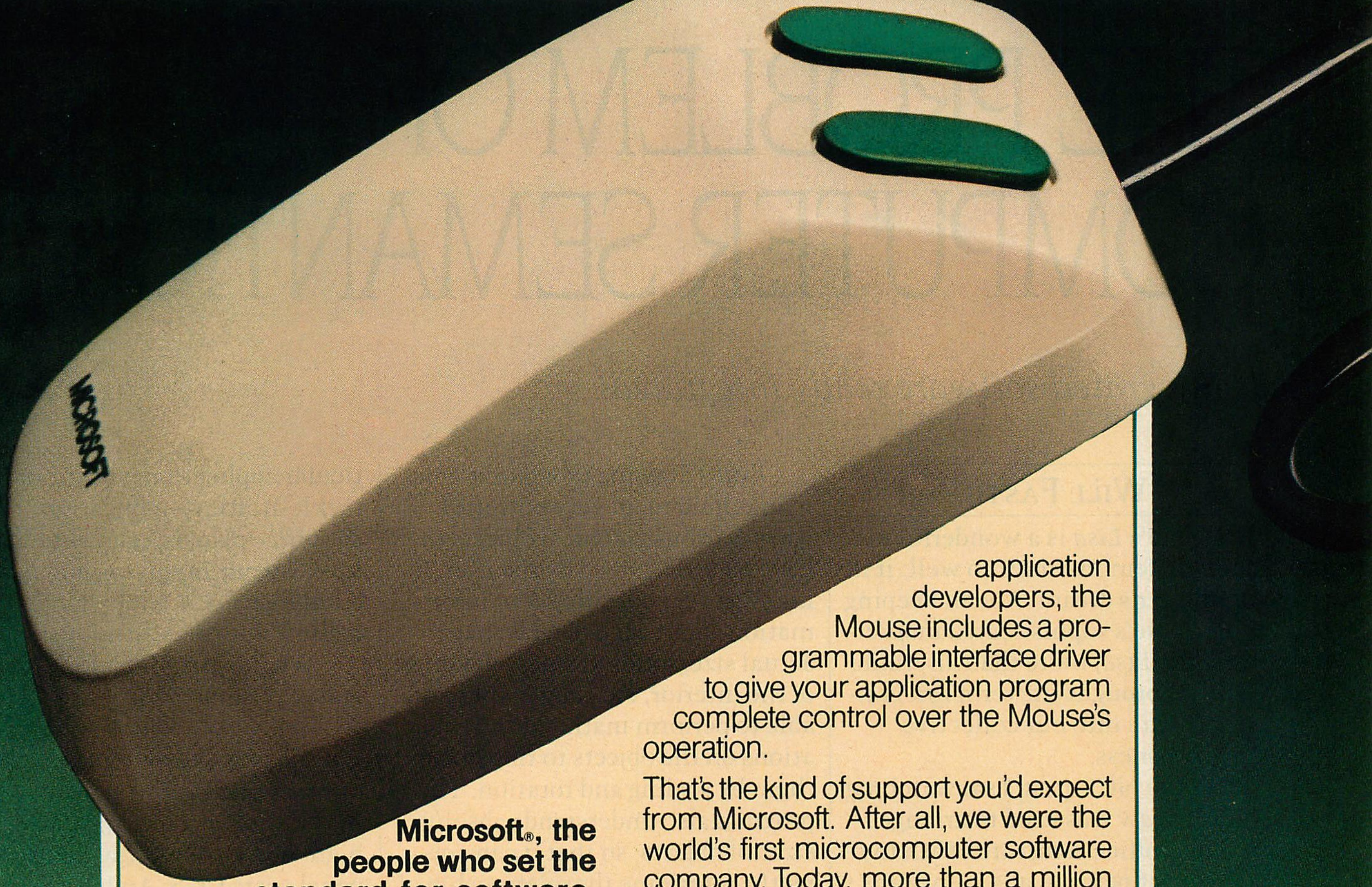
At Multi-Tech Systems, our future is new markets for us, and new products for you. Since 1971, we've been building acoustic couplers, direct-connect modems, testers, multiplexers, and now this newest generation of intelligent modems.

The MT212PC modem has a two-year warranty and a suggested retail price, including companion software, of just $549. For more information, write to Multi-Tech Systems, Inc., 82 Second Avenue SE, New Brighton, Minnesota 55112. Or phone us at 612-631-3550.

TWX 910-563-3610

MULTI-TECH SYSTEMS
The Peripheral Vision People

THE NEW STANDARD. THE MICROSOFT MOUSE.



Microsoft®, the people who set the standard for software, have done it again with the Microsoft Mouse.

Our expertise in both hardware and software has gone into the development of the Microsoft Mouse. Now you can plug in the most exciting computer product of the year and put it to work.

The Mouse lets you move the cursor freely and naturally, then execute commands at the push of a button.

The Microsoft Mouse is a complete system. It comes with an on-screen tutorial, a practice application, and the Multi-Tool™ Notepad, a mouse-based text editor, so you can begin using the Mouse right away. And for application developers, the Mouse includes a programmable interface driver to give your application program complete control over the Mouse's operation.

That's the kind of support you'd expect from Microsoft. After all, we were the world's first microcomputer software company. Today, more than a million microcomputers are running Microsoft languages, operating systems, application programs, and hardware-software combinations.

You can get the Microsoft Mouse in either a bus or serial version for the IBM® PC or PC XT.

Ask your Microsoft dealer for a demonstration of the Microsoft Mouse —a whole new standard.

BETTER TOOLS FOR MICROCOMPUTERS

MICROSOFT™

Microsoft is a registered trademark, and MS and the Microsoft logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Directions

THE PROBLEM OF COMPUTER SEMANTICS

Is integrated software really integrated?

WILL FASTIE

Apple's *Lisa* is a wonderful machine. It demonstrates so well: it is a marketer's dream. And in keeping with Apple's sophisticated marketing style, *Lisa*, more than anything else, has brought the term *integrated software* into our collective consciousness.

At the NCC past, I sat watching as *LisaDraw* was used to arrange modular office furniture. With my cynic's hat perched at a jaunty angle, I challenged the demonstrator with a series of difficult graphics tasks; only keystrokes later, I was out for the count.

Well, not quite. I did ask one more question, quietly, so as not to put the demonstrator on the spot. I asked if the information entered with *LisaDraw* could be used by the spreadsheet *LisaCalc.* The expected answer, and the one given, was no. Had it been yes, I would have sold my grandmother to buy Apple stock.

To be fair, Apple makes no claim that the drawing software is integrated with the spreadsheet. I'm not picking on *Lisa;* there is a very important issue in computer science lurking here that needs to be understood before a rational buying decision can be made regarding software that purports to be integrated.

Lisa's drawing program is able to manipulate, in very powerful ways, various graphical objects that have been described by the user. It knows a very specific set of information about each object (shape, actual size, ratios of sides, shadings of the interior, etc.) and is therefore able to perform mathematical operations on the objects to transform them by scaling and rotation. The program also understands absolute sizes of objects, so that it can correctly determine the relationship of the object to the scale of the "drawing."

Using the program, the demonstrator was able to quickly lay out a proposed open office arrangement. Changes were suggested and quickly effected. Once complete, the drawing could have been transferred to paper.

Such a design process should not stop there, however. The next phase must be a cost analysis of the layout, possibly based on competitive cost information. Ideally, the file of objects from the drawing program could be used to get all the information a spreadsheet program would need to make a parts list. For the specific application of modular office planning, such a set of programs would be relatively easy to construct. To build a set of general-purpose, cooperating programs that have no specific knowledge of a particular application, yet are able to tackle arbitrary applications like the office plan, is a gargantuan task. It is also one involving problems in computer science for which satisfactory solutions do not yet exist.

What is the problem? Simply stated, *LisaDraw* does not *know* that one of the objects with which it deals is a wall panel with fabric on both sides, electrical raceways in the bottom, standing four feet high. It does not *know* that such a panel costs $475. And worse, it cannot tell you that 13 such panels are present in the drawing.

Because it does not know these things, *LisaDraw* cannot tell a spreadsheet or any other program about the nature of its drawing. The other manipulations that a human being easily performs are a mystery to the program.

We sacrifice the ability to deal with the *semantics,* that is, the meanings and context inherent in a particular application, when we build general-purpose programs. We do so simply because we currently don't know how to do otherwise. What little we do understand today requires hardware and software resources well beyond the capability of the typical desktop computer, including IBM's Personal Computer and Apple's *Lisa.*

You might well ask why the so-called integrated packages have

From your mind's eye to the screen.

Bring images to life, with color, resolution, and the speed of thought.

The CONOGRAPHIC™ intelligent color display graphics system gives your IBM PC the performance of a professional graphics workstation. And lets you build sophisticated 16 color images in fractions of a second, with resolutions to 640 x 400 or 512 x 512.

The system features CONOGRAPHY,™ a powerful graphics technology which produces device independent images with less data, yielding faster image transmission, lower storage requirements and fewer calculations.

The modular CONOGRAPHIC system lets you start with the CONO-COLOR™ adapter for a wide color spectrum and high resolution, and later add the optional CONO-GEN™ module for increased processing power and speed. The two boards use up only one expansion slot within the IBM PC or PC-XT.

A spectrum of colors in high resolution.
The CONO-COLOR adapter lets you run your standard graphics software without modification or turn on some real power by using its advanced features. The adapter's 128K bytes of high speed memory and special design will reduce your image buildup time, increase your resolution and allow you to select a palette of 16 colors for simultaneous on screen display from a spectrum of 256colors. Modify the palette dynamically for instantaneous color changes and special effects like motion. The CONO-COLOR adapter also offers improved light pen resolution, multiple video display pages and much more.

Speed and processing power.
The CONO-GEN module's dedicated microprocessor and special purpose hardware compress image buildup time from minutes to a fraction of a second. It generates vectors, circles, ellipses (at any orientation), arcs and conic curves at up to 800,000 pixels per second.

Graphic images are simple to create.
Efficient software makes graphic images simple to create. The CONOGRAPHIC system supports all IBM advanced (BASICA) graphics functions. And optional programs like CONO-LIB™ provide powerful tools for image creation, manipulation, and interface with external devices.

From your mind's eye to the display screen with the speed and vivid color of thought itself. Ask your nearest IBM PC dealer for more information.

Conography is to curves— what vectors are to straight lines.

CONOGRAPHIC CORPORATION

18022 Cowan
Irvine, CA 92714
714/474-1180
Dealer inquiries invited.

CIRCLE NO. 120 ON READER SERVICE CARD

been successful so far. Why is it that Lotus' 1-2-3 is so popular? Yes, it is true that 1-2-3 can take data from the spreadsheet and graph it quickly and effectively. It is true that this feature is a valuable tool, just as *LisaDraw* is a valuable and useful tool. The right question to ask, however, is whether 1-2-3 can label each axis of a line graph from information entered in the spreadsheet. The answer, of course, is no. Although 1-2-3 is touted as an integrated spreadsheet and graphics solution, it is actually a human being who performs the integration. It is the user who labels the axes, who knows the meaning of the data.

Take this a step further. What does any spreadsheet package know about the value in a particular cell? It does understand certain relationships between that cell and others if others are referenced in the cell's formula. It categorically does *not* know that the cell contains a budgeted amount for entertainment for the month of January, 1984. *It is the human being who makes that connection;* the computer cannot.

Try this for yourself. Using the spreadsheet of your own choosing, try to reference anything in context. Oops, no fair! A reference to column G *is not* a reference to August. Oh, you chose Multiplan and named column G *August?* That's good, but it is *syntactic;* the program still does not understand that August is a month. Naming the column *Fred* works just as well. Naming the column August helps the human being perform the integration but does not take the spreadsheet program any further towards an understanding of the context.

To date, no integrated software that I know of can deal with what I like to refer to as semantic content. I do not intend this as an indictment of integrated software, but as a warning to prospective buyers that such systems deal with the mechanics of the data manipulation and rely on their human users to perform semantic integration.

I hope you noticed a new feature in our last issue: *The Tech Journal Newsline.* Containing news, views, and gossip about the IBM marketplace, the column is prepared by no less an expert than *Microsystems* editor Sol Libes. Sol previously wrote a similar column for *Byte;* it became one of its most widely-read features in that magazine.

I am absolutely delighted to announce that Sol will be sharing his insights and cranking the rumor mill on a regular basis.

Due to space considerations we were unable to give complete information about Per Brinch Hansen, who wrote "Programming in Edison" on page 84 of our September/October issue. He is Henry Salvatori Professor of Computer Science at the University of Southern California and an expert in programming language technology and concurrent systems. He developed Concurrent Pascal in 1975 and invented the monitor concept.

His most recent book is *Programming A Personal Computer* (1983, Prentice-Hall Inc., $18.95), which describes the Edison System and illustrates how the principles of programming languages, compilers, operating systems, and computer architecture are applied in the design of a complete software system.

The Edison-PC system is available for the IBM and Compaq personal computers with 64K bytes of RAM, two 320K disk drives, and parallel printer. An executable system (object code) with documentation is available for $37 and the source code for the system is available for $300 from Prof. Per Brinch Hansen, 1351 Pleasant Ridge, Altadena, California 91001.

Although our editorial policy at *PC Tech Journal* precludes the publication of articles written by authors with a vested interest in the subject matter, we invited Professor Brinch Hansen to prepare an overview of the Edison system because of its potential importance to software developers. In a future issue we plan to carry an independent review and evaluation of the Edison system.

Let Us Hear From You!

Did you know that you are part of a very special group in the computer industry? Why? Because you read *PC Tech Journal!*

This is not a magazine for everybody. We expected our readers to have a stronger technical background, to understand computer systems more clearly, and to be interested in the more complicated issues surrounding the emergence of the IBM Personal Computer. Our research indicates that we were right on the button. Our readership is a sophisticated one, and very knowledgeable in the field: 83 percent of you are college graduates, 90 percent hold professional/technical/managerial positions, and 33 percent work in M.I.S. or data processing departments. Ninety-seven percent of you use a microcomputer; 84 percent own one; you use a microcomputer an average of 25 hours a week.

To make sure we continue to serve your interests, drop us a line and let us know what's on your mind. We are interested both in your comments on what you read here and in suggestions for future topics. We are also interested in adding the names of informed and adept writers to our list of regular contributors. If you would like to contribute in that capacity, please write to us and we'll send you an author's guide. Our editorial address is as follows:

PC Tech Journal
Suite 211, World Trade Center
Baltimore, Maryland 21202
or you can reach us via The Source, ID STY682.

PC NEWSLINE

Sol Libes

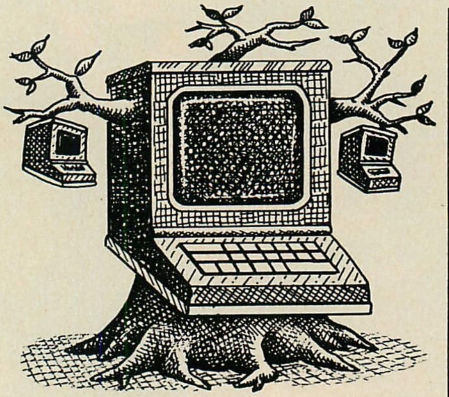
News, views, and gossip on the IBM and IBM-like marketplace

Random Rumors

This year IBM is expected to make and sell upwards of 800,000 PC/XT machines. **The rumored new IBM** home computer (see last month's column for details) is expected to hit the stores by the time this column appears (so check the accuracy of my rumor mongering). There is additional rumor that it will contain a slot for a plug-in software cartridge. Expect to see an advertising campaign for it that will be larger than the efforts of all the current home competitors combined. **Apple is also rushing** to get its system onto the market for the Christmas season. **Expect both systems** to have some upward compatibility with their standard systems, thus serving as an initial migration path up to standard systems for first–time computer users. I expect these systems to come with very good CAI (Computer Assisted Instruction) tutorials. No longer will the purchaser have to study hundreds of pages of manuals to learn how to use the machine. The machine itself will be the teacher. **Expect Lotus Development** to introduce a new version of its popular 1-2-3 integrated software package early next year (they just issued a major update). The new version is expected to include word processing and communications.

IBM Increasing Distribution

IBM has disclosed that it will beef up its retail distribution for the PC by adding another 300 dealers to its



existing 800 dealers during the next several months. With a total of 1,100 dealers, the IBM will be sold through nearly half the personal computer stores in the country.

IBM is also becoming more aggressive in the retail area. It has been establishing retail outlets (called Product Centers) across the country, opening three in 1980, 20 the following year, and 10 in the first half of this year. No doubt more Product Centers will appear at an even faster rate: there should be about 80 in operation by the middle of next year. With each store grossing about $3 million in sales, this network is becoming a big operation—one of concern to independent dealers. Although each store, staffed by five or six professionals, sells typewriters, the Datamaster, and Displaywriter systems, you can bet most of their sales are of the PC.

In another aggressive marketing move, IBM has announced that independent software and service firms that refer customers to IBM sales offices will earn referral fees ranging from 2.5 to 10 percent of resulting sales.

IBM is demonstrating to its competition how to market personal computers. It now has more retail distribution than all its competition, more salespeople selling national accounts, spends far more than any of its competition on advertising, and updates its products and offers new add-on products at a faster rate.

IBM Promoting PC to Fortune 500s

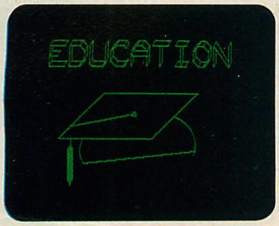
When IBM first brought out the PC in '81, it was intended mainly as a system to compete with the Apple. IBM was after the home, educational, and small business markets. Thus the original PC had a cassette interface, BASIC in ROM, and 16K of RAM. The unit was to be sold via the same dealerships that sold the Apple (most notably the Computerland chain of retail stores). But during the two years since its birth, IBM discovered that the primary market for the system was the business market, which necessitated a shift in marketing strategy.

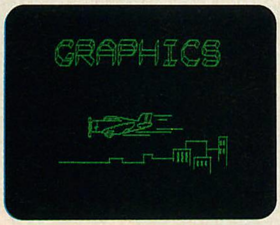
A close look at this market disclosed that practically nobody used a cassette with the PC, virtually everyone used double-sided disk drives, and that the most frequently used software were spreadsheets, word processors, data base managers, and accounting software.

Thus, IBM introduced a new version of the PC, namely the XT, designed specifically for the business market (it is apparent that IBM intends to further enhance the machine for this market). To move the XT, IBM is turning its attention to its large national accounts. It has


Introducing the
PLATO Microlink Network

Now...network your IBM PC to world-famous PLATO® educational courseware–and more. All for just $5 an hour.





For this special low price, IBM PC users can get interactive education, authoring, electronic mail, graphics and games on the PLATO Microlink™ network. This network service of Control Data brings a world of capability right into your home in a specially-reserved time-frame, 6 p.m. to 3 a.m., every day. (7 a.m. to 3 a.m. on weekends and holidays.)*

PLATO BRINGS NEW EXCITEMENT TO LEARNING.

Act now to get outstanding PLATO educational courseware home-delivered, for you and your family, on your IBM PC. Choose from more than 150 titles from business simulation to medicine, mathematics and social sciences–even language and reading lessons.

THE GRAPHICS TO GROW WITH.

With the PLATO Microlink network you get one of the most comprehensive graphics systems around. The sophisticated graphics editor lets you draw lines, boxes, circles, arcs, vectors. Generate advanced graphics, display, print, store them away and use them over and over again. Most lessons and games use these graphics to give you spectacular displays.

UNIQUE INTERACTIVE GAMES.

Thirty advanced, interactive games so far, all delivered on your IBM PC via the PLATO Microlink network. You get "Roll 'em", "Maze War", "Chess", "Concentration" and dozens of others. You get "Moria", one of the most exciting adventure games a computer network ever delivered. And you get "Empire"–a galaxy-wide game played against other people on the PLATO Microlink network. A game so popular, so interactive, that PLATO networkers are playing it right now, while you're reading this ad.

THE INCREDIBLE ELECTRONIC MAIL.

Bulletin boards are common, but PLATO gives you something a little bit special–and easy to use. It keeps a string of responses for each original note. You can choose to look only at unread notes and responses.

*SIGN UP NOW–PARTICIPATION IS LIMITED.***

Send in the order card by November 30, 1983. You'll get the Microlink disk and user guides–with a regular price of $50–for the limited-time price of just $15. Then network time costs you only $5 an hour. (There is only a $10 annual registration fee and no monthly minimum.)

So if you have an IBM PC with 64K RAM, disk drive, 300 or 1200 baud modem, an asynchronous communications adapter and a color/graphics monitor adapter, you're just about there. You also need a monitor that will operate with your color/graphics board.

Be the first to send in the order card. You'll get what you need to link up–disk, complete instructions and your private code name and password.

Send in the order card today. Or get additional information by calling toll-free 800/233-3784; in California call 800/233-3785: or write Control Data Publishing Co., P.O. Box 261127, San Diego, CA 92126.

Special message to THE SOURCE℠ subscribers: See the new post category, PLATO, for a special offer.

THE SOURCE℠ is a servicemark of Source Telecomputing Corporation, a subsidiary of The Reader's Digest Association, Inc. THE SOURCE services are offered in participation with Control Data Corporation.

*Closing time may differ regionally. **Participation is limited by the capacity of the network.

Control Data Publishing Company, 4455 Eastgate Mall, San Diego, CA 92121.

PLATO
Computer-Based Education

CONTROL DATA PUBLISHING

CIRCLE NO. 121 ON READER SERVICE CARD

ELAN™* — Extended Local

NETWORKING
- Ethernet
- Electronic mail
- Device sharing
- No dedicated server required
- Floppys not required in single node
- Remote job execution
- File lock out
- Password protection

TELEPHONE SUPPORT
available through modem board)
- Autodial - with extended telephone numbers
- Call Forwarding
- Length Of Call Indicator
- Directory Support - with unlimited number storage
- Message Support - either leave or obtain messages. Receive messages remotely
- The modem board, with a handset, substitutes for a telephone

MODEM
- Gateway to other networks
- Electronic mail
- Device sharing
- Remote job execution
- File lock out
- Password protection
- 300 to 1200 baud modems available
- Data in network can be obtained by decoding touch-tone sequence or through voice recognition prompt
- Respond to remote terminal
- Access dictating systems on network. Control them by touch-tone decoding
- Programs or calculator can be used remotely. The touch-tone keypad can be used to provide numeric input to programs or the calculator from a remote site (programs are loaded by decoding touch-tone sequences).

VOICE
- Voice mail
- Voice annotated text
- Voice messages

VOICE RECOGNITION
- Transparent keyboard. Speak instead of type

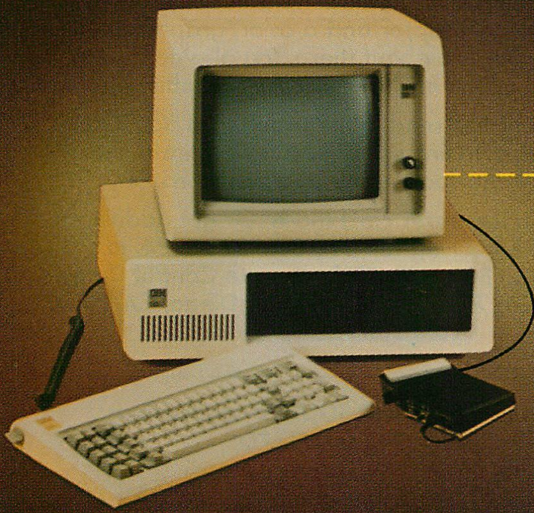
ELAN: THE MOST POWERFUL

ELAN is designed to meet your total communication needs, including computer to computer (networking), person-to-computer and person-to-person communication requirements for data and voice.

The network employs the industry-standard high speed Ethernet protocol, which permits a number of IBM PC's to be linked together by ordinary thin coaxial cable. In addition to his own computer's power, a user has the availability of other devices which are also attached to the cable - such as various printers, large disks, etc.

All versions of ELAN include an Ethernet interface and equipment to convert voice into data and back again. This enables one to give and receive spoken messages from any location. The SECRETARY is the basic system with these features.

SECRETARY $1695[1]
- Ethernet Link
- Ethernet Companion
- ELAN Software



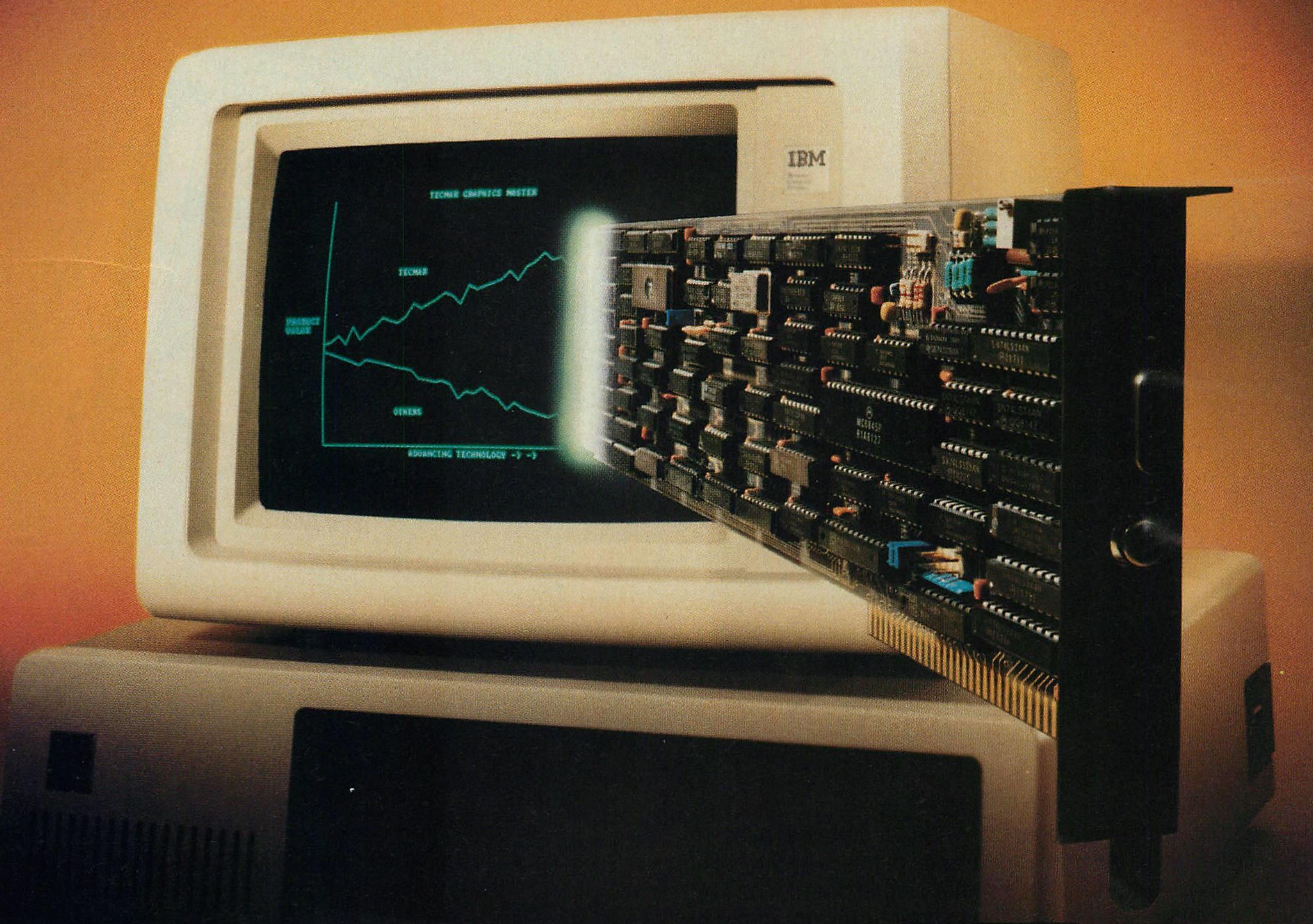
EXECUTIVE $2995[1]
- Ethernet Link
- Ethernet Companion
- Modem (300 Baud)[2]
- Voice Recognition
- Microphone
- ELAN Software

[1]With 1st MATE, 2nd MATE, or 3rd MATE in Station
[2]Option: 1200 Baud Modem
*ELAN (formerly ComNet)

CIRCLE NO. 245 ON READER SERVICE CARD

TECMAR'S GRAPHICS MASTER.™

It adds graphics to your IBM Monochrome Display, or 16 high-resolution colors to your color monitor!

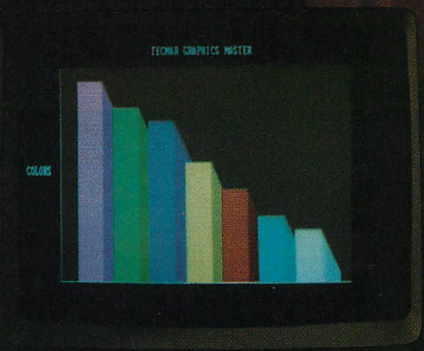


Now your IBM-PC can run monochrome or color displays with remarkably enhanced graphics... and all from this one multifunction board — no other video board needed!

With your IBM Monochrome Display, the Graphics Master™ board gives you truly high resolution graphics, allowing 640 horizontal x 350 vertical pixel display.

With other monochrome display screens you can obtain even higher resolutions — up to 640 H x 480 V, with full-page 80-character x 60-line text display.

With a color monitor, it extends your color graphics to 640 horizontal x 400 vertical 16-color interlaced display.



Graphics Master™ accepts external sync, so you can add labeling to images. You can overlay characters or other computer-generated images on a video picture using the PC-Mate™ Video Cassette Recorder Controller.

This remarkable new board fully supports all IBM advanced BASIC color graphics functions.

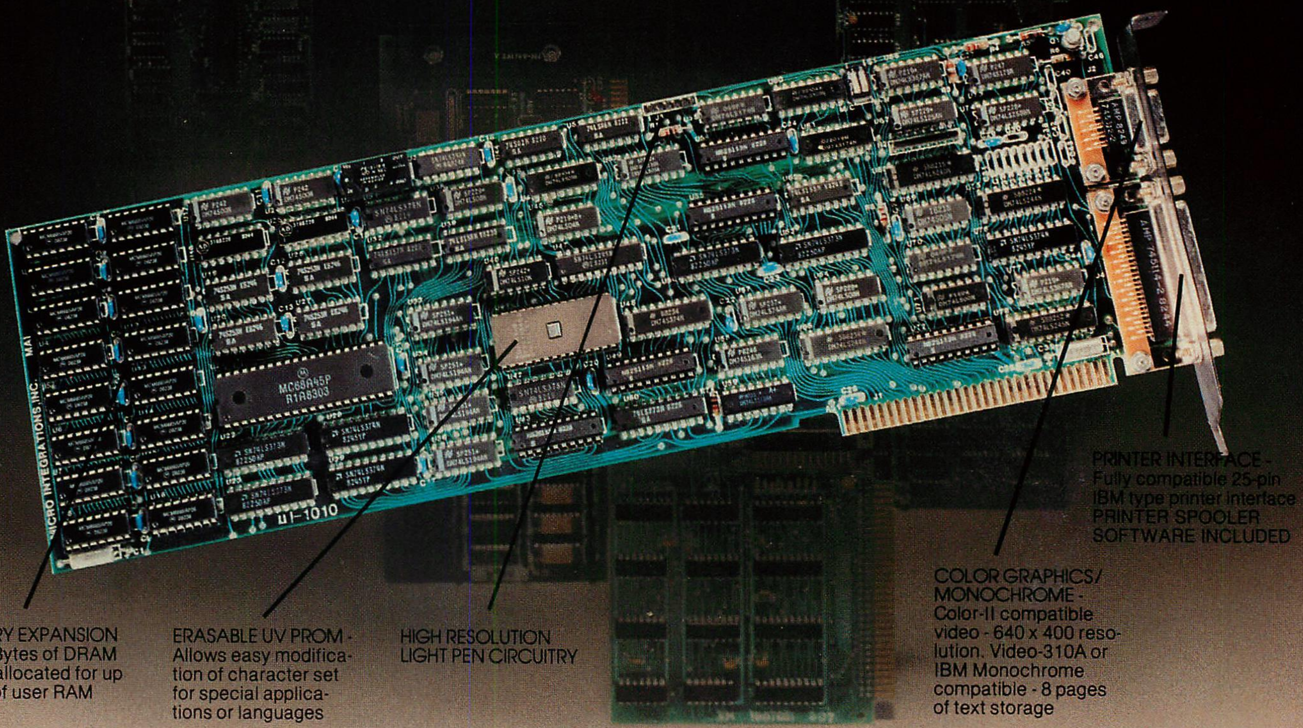
For further information about our Graphics Master™ and the largest line of options available anywhere for the IBM Personal Computer, call or write for the latest catalog of PC-Mate™ peripherals from Tecmar.

TECMAR
The Next Step

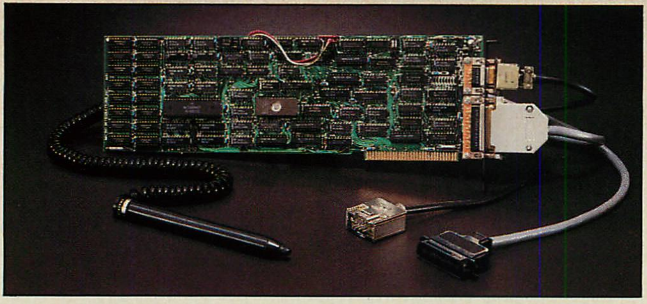
Personal Computer Products Division
23600 Mercantile Road
Cleveland, Ohio 44122
Phone 216-464-7410/Telex 241735

CIRCLE NO. 213 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Put graphics & multi function in one slot.



This IBM/PC compatible board provides memory expansion (128 KBytes of DRAM), monochrome or color video, light pen, and printer interface on a single plug-in board. The MAI board's high-density memory (up to 8 pictures storage) provides unexcelled color graphics enhanced up to 640(H) x 400(V) resolution in a wide variety of operating modes. Modes are selectable right on the board.



Now available with Halo* software for 320 x 200 16-color, 640 x 200 4-color, and 400 vertical line resolution modes. (*Halo is a registered trademark of Media Cybernetics, Inc.)

COMPARISON CHART

	COLOR		MONOCHROME	
	IBM	AMDEK	IBM	AMDEK
SLOT 1	Color Graphics Board	MAI Board	Black & White/ Parallel Board	MAI Board
SLOT 2	Printer Board			
SLOT 3	RAM Board 1 Slot Left*	3 Slots Left*	RAM Board 2 Slots Left*	3 Slots Left*

*When Using Disk Controller

Just circle the reader service number, or call direct for complete technical specifications and prices.

2201 Lively Blvd. • Elk Grove Village, IL 60007
(312) 364-1180 TLX: 25-4786

AMDEK

REGIONAL OFFICES: Calif. (714) 662-3949 • Texas (817) 498-2334

CIRCLE NO. 230 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Amdek . . . your guide to innovative computing!

put increasing emphasis on sales to major corporations via its in-house sales staff, accustomed as it is to making big dollar sales to major accounts. Until now, the attitude was that there was not sufficient dollar volume in selling PCs to justify an IBM salesperson's time and effort. That was when the PC was introduced, at a price of just over $1,000. But now, with the typical hard disk system selling for $6,000 to $7,000, and companies talking about buying hundreds of machines at a time, the IBM salespeople are getting back into the act.

Large corporations are looking at the PC and its look-alikes as both workstations for their larger systems and stand-alone systems. United Technologies Corp., in Hartford, CT, for instance, negotiated a one-shot $10 million purchase of PCs that involved 1,100 machines that will be installed around the country. General Electric Information Systems Co. in Rockville, MD, arranged a transaction whereby it resells the PC as a front end for its 750-city international timesharing network. And Travelers Insurance recently placed an order for 10,000 machines to be delivered during a two-year period, setting a record.

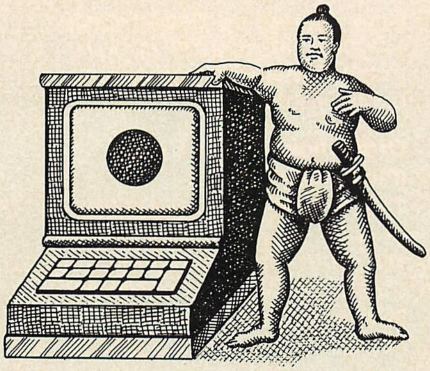
The acceptance of the PC by data-processing managers is changing the order of personal computer sales to large companies: instead of onesey-twosey surreptitious purchases by department managers, there is high-volume procurement. The soon-to-be-released local networking system and the rumored multi-user version of the PC by IBM is expected to make the PC even more attractive to large companies.

IBM Moves into Robotics

IBM currently holds less than 5 percent of the U.S. robotics market but is expected soon to make a strong bid to become the leader. It is interesting to note that IBM's Systems Product Division, located in Boca Raton, FL, is the same division that produces the PC-XT. There's a nice circularity here: The PC is being used in several of the robotic systems currently being marketed by IBM, and the Boca Raton production line that produces the PC-XT is, in turn, an in-house robotics laboratory. The plant is so highly automated, some say, that only ten minutes of human labor is invested in assembling a system.

Are the Japanese Coming?

The Japanese have been trying to penetrate the U.S. computer market now for several years. Their success record to date leaves something to be desired: an estimated less than 2 percent of the computer market, mostly in smaller minicomputers. In the personal computer marketplace its success has been relegated mostly to the components and peripherals area—printers, disk drives, etc. However, it is expected to make a strong effort in the near future in the portable and PC-compatible areas.



Dominated in the early days by American companies like Apple and Commodore, Japan now manufactures virtually all of the personal computers sold there. IBM, until 1979, was the number one computer supplier in Japan, but has been displaced by Fujitsu, which is followed closely by five other large Japanese computer companies. IBM is still fighting hard by way of cooperative ventures. To date, it has entered into agreements with Matsushita Electric to produce a personal computer specifically for the Japanese market.

While Apple has seen its foreign business falter, IBM today does 45 percent of its total business outside the U.S., accounting for 37 percent of its profits. And IBM now has 150,000 employees abroad, compared to 215,000 in the U.S. However, it should be pointed out that IBM has not met with the same success marketing the PC in Europe and Great Britain as it has here in the U.S. It was late introducing the product so that some IBM look-alikes became available before the IBM-PC. Also, a number of dealer distribution problems developed, which necessitated IBM's changing its dealer organization.

The Clash of the Titans

IBM's next big market push appears to be in the area of communications. This is actually part of its overarching scheme for the office-of-the-future, which will be totally paperless, with computerized record keeping and networks carrying messages from one desktop workstation (a PC, naturally) to another. IBM is also moving into competition with AT&T because these systems in many instances will be using telephone lines to communicate. Thus IBM recently acquired a 15 percent interest in Rolm, a manufacturer of advanced PBX systems using computerized switchboards capable of handling both voice and data traffic. Also, last year IBM won an $18 million contract to upgrade the British telephone system. It's currently performing a similar task for West Germany.

AT&T, on the other hand, has been successful in freeing itself of the heavy hand of government regulation and is moving aggressively into the computer business. Its ini-

tial thrusts have been in the area of licensing its multi-user, multi-tasking UNIX operating system and computers for use by telephone companies. However, AT&T, via its American Bell subsidiary, is expected shortly to introduce microcomputers that will compete directly with the PC and IBM minicomputer systems. There is no doubt that AT&T has resources—human, technological, and financial—comparable to those of IBM. The question is whether it can develop an equally comparable sales and service organization. The coming battle between these two colossi will take the next few years to develop; I hope to keep you posted on the fight, round by round.

IBM Moves to Dominate the Market

IBM, which entered the computer market in 1952 about six years after the business was born, rose, in 1956 to have 85 percent of the U.S. computer business. The U.S. government felt that this constituted a virtual monopoly, and in early 1969 filed a massive antitrust suit charging monopolistic and anticompetitive practices. The suit dragged on in the courts (costing both IBM and the government several hundred million dollars) while IBM held back its marketing efforts. By January, 1982, when the government decided that the case no longer had any merit, the IBM share of the computer market had dwindled to 40 percent.

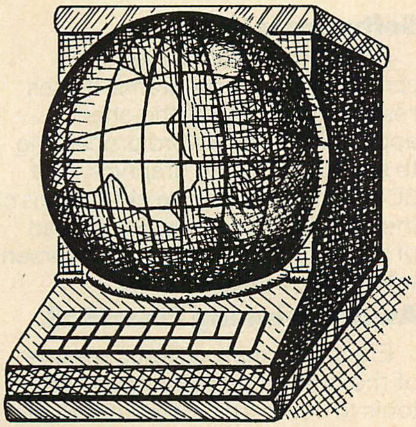
With this load off its back, IBM has become much more aggressive: Introducing new products and lowering prices, the company has become a very tough competitor. No sooner has a competitor brought out an improved IBM plug-compatible product at a lower price, than IBM has upgraded its product and/or lowered its prices. These tactics have already forced one plug-compatible manufacturer into bank-

ruptcy and several others onto the ropes. The IBM plug-compatible market, which not too long ago was considered a terrific business to get into, is now shunned by startups. IBM appears to be following a similar approach in the personal computer business.

How Big Is IBM?

Last year was IBM's best year ever with sales of $34.4 billion and profits of $4.4 billion—the most profitable U.S. industrial company. It already has an estimated 21 percent of the $7.5 billion U.S. personal computer market, in other words an estimated $1.6 billion in PC business. This year's sales of personal computers by IBM are expected to far exceed those of Apple, making IBM the unquestioned dollar volume leader in the personal computer business. All this in a little more than two years. IBM's business growth rate is typically 13%.

IBM today does 40 percent of the world's computer business (in large mainframes it is some two-thirds). Number two in the field, Digital Equipment Corp. does only 20 percent of IBM's volume. IBM has 465,000 employees (215,000 in the U.S.).



Although IBM's products are generally considered to be a step behind its competitors in technology, and IBM enters a field only after competitors have proven that there is a significant market, IBM invariably achieves success via its marketing muscle and ability to provide support. In the U.S. alone IBM has 8,500 salespeople.

Last year IBM spent $3 billion on research and currently boasts 11,000 patents. It spends $500 million on in-house employee training. In the last six years it has spent about $10 billion upgrading its manufacturing facilities. IBM is now the largest manufacturer in the world of IC logic and 64K memory chips (all used in its own machines) and is expected to be the first company in volume production of the new 256K RAM chips.

Unix for the PC

UNIX, the multi-tasking, multi-user operating system developed by Bell Labs is already being made available by five companies for the IBM-PC! Mark Williams of Chicago, Whitesmiths Ltd. of Concord, MA, Sritek Inc. of Cleveland, Quantum Software Systems of San Jose, and Lantech Systems of Dallas. Not only that, there are rumors that VenturCom of Cambridge, MA, and Microsoft are both porting their versions of UNIX to the PC. And to add more grist to the rumor mill, there are rumors that IBM itself will release a version in the not too distant future.

IBM Offers LAN License

At the most recent meeting of the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE) Local Area Network committee meeting (IEEE project 802 committee), IBM formally made public an offer to license its token-ring LAN technology, for a one-time charge of $2,000. The general reaction of committee members was lukewarm.

Network your PCs now, and we'll give you a first class send off.

Networking your IBM PCs with 3Com EtherSeries is one of the smartest business moves you'll ever make. It's an investment in the future that will bring your business communications into the electronics age, now. Cut your operating costs, now. For a price that makes sense, now.

EtherSeries.
The Proven Performer.

Lots of smart business people have chosen EtherSeries as their network. For good reason. Ethernet is the industry's high-performance networking standard. And EtherSeries is the most advanced, most practical Ethernet-based networking system available. Our founder, Bob Metcalfe, invented Ethernet. 3Com knows Ethernet like no other company, because 3Com *is* Ethernet.

Sharing means Savings.

Most people talk about what networking costs. EtherSeries users know what it saves. Time. And money. Here's why: add an IBM XT server or our more powerful server, and you're ready to use 3Com's EtherShare. With it, everyone on your net has access to the same disk files, while password security and locking features protect confidential company information. PC users can also share the same letter-quality printer—without ever leaving their station.

Software is the key.

EtherSeries doesn't require special software programs. It uses readily available, off-the-shelf applications, from word processing to spreadsheet and graphics. And 3Com now offers network versions of the popular VisiSeries. So instead of buying a package for each person who'll use it, you buy *one*.

Award-winning EtherMail.

Electronic mail systems are one of the hottest new communication tools to come from computer technology. 3Com's EtherMail outperforms them all. With EtherMail, users can send or receive messages at

Free Electronic Mail.

any time, day or night. A special message editor helps you compose your message quickly using sophisticated word-processing features. Then, just push a button and our award-winning EtherMail option transmits your letter or memo from PC to PC electronically. You save postage, phone charges, time and the aggravation of playing "telephone tag."

Growth Without Grief.

When you're ready to expand your network, EtherSeries won't give you any growing pains. You can link up to 1024 PCs—at any time—for $950 each. So you never pay for more capability than is needed. And it's so easy to do, you can install it yourself with just a screwdriver.

Free EtherMail.
A 90-Day Offer.

Your PC investment pays huge dividends when you link it with an EtherSeries Network. And for the next 90 days, we'll make a smart decision even smarter. Purchase a basic EtherSeries with links to three PCs and we'll give you our award-winning EtherMail software at no additional cost.

EtherSeries is available at leading computer stores. Call or write Cory Randall at 3Com for more details.

I want to take advantage of your free EtherMail offer: PTJ11-12/83

☐ Please send me more information.
☐ Have your 3Com representative call.

Name__________
Title__________
Company__________
Division__________
Address__________
City/State/Zip__________
Phone__________

Mail to: 3Com Corporation,
1390 Shorebird Way,
P.O. Box 7390, Mountain View, CA 94039
Phone (415) 961-9602.

3Com is EtherNet.

Letters to the Editor

Color Graphics

I noticed in your article by Thomas V. Hoffmann (*PC Tech Journal*, July/August, 1983) that you are highly critical of the IBM manuals. However, I feel your article does little to clear the air. It's true that it did successfully break down the board into its basic components, but your language was so technical that your detailed explanations might have well been Chinese. I cite the frequent appearance of sets of letters like "&H3D4." I realize that such sets may be easily understood by those with Ph.D.s in computer science, but to those of us who aren't as educated but are still interested in the workings of the computer, the article is far from understandable. I suggest that you continue your excellent in-depth evaluations but use simpler terms.

Amr Razzak
Timonium, MD

We agree completely that cryptic notations sometimes obscure the point. We're stuck, though, because there are no standards for the notations we need to use. The set of letters you mention is BASIC's notation for a hexadecimal value of 3D4; BASIC was chosen for the Hoffmann article because his program examples were given in BASIC. For an article about an assembly language program the value would have been written 3D4H, for C, 0X3D4, and for IBM Pascal, 16#3D4.—WF

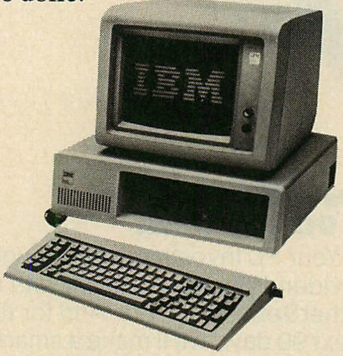
Choosing a C Compiler

The article by Bill Hunt, "How to Choose a C Compiler" (*PC Tech Journal*, July/August, 1983), indirectly brings up an important programming consideration. With the recent proliferation of C Compilers (and UNIX-like systems for that matter), there is a critical need for an official C language standard. Although the Kernighan and Ritchie book is quite extensive in its description of the C language, it still contains many ambiguities. Furthermore, a number of semi-official extensions have been added to C since the Kernighan and Ritchie book was first printed (1978). A standard set of system functions is also critical to program portability. Such standards are in the works. I hope they will be ready and widely accepted before C meets the same fate as BASIC and Pascal.

Marc MacLennan
Santa Barbara, CA

PC Keyboard

In the first issue of *PC Tech Journal*, Editor Will Fastie complains about the PC keyboard for, among other things, the placement of the function keys. Why, he wonders, did IBM put the function keys on the left instead of across the top of the keyboard as everybody else has always done.



Mr. Fastie claims that the function keys are in an "awkward position," stating that "the Control and Alt combinations (with function keys) usually require the right hand for the Alt key while the left strikes the desired function key, thus removing the hands quite far from the normal typing position.

Now really! The farthest function key from Alt is F1, only four inches away. The distance between Alt and F10 is a single inch. Mr. Fastie's hand can't reach that? What tiny hands he must have! If the function keys were across the top of the keyboard, it would be 4 inches between Alt and the closest function key, F1, and a full 12 inches to F10. Both hands WOULD be required to reach the combinations. Mr. Fastie has distorted the truth to support a prejudice. For generations, IBM has been world-renown (sic) for the brilliance of its industrial design. I find the ability to use fingers of the left hand on Alt, Cntrl, and all function keys to be a vast improvement over the across-the-top design, which is pointless unless the keyboard is integral with the display. My hand is always close to normal typing position.

If function keys can be exactly below the display of their function on the monitor, then there is a reason for the across-the-top design. IBM has followed federal guidelines for computer design, based on studies that demonstrate that detached keyboards create less user fatigue. This detachment eliminates the need for top keys and frees the designer to place the function keys where they can be operated with one hand with Control and Alt.

PC Tech Journal is a much needed publication, if it is accurate, but Mr. Fastie's curious reasoning certainly raises some doubts.

Owen Findsen
Cincinnati, OH

Errata

We received several letters regarding the programs that accompanied the article "A Diversionary Benchmark," in Vol. 1 No. 1 of the TECH JOURNAL. We provided both BASIC and a Pascal versions of the program (page 194), but the Pascal versions contained a typographical error. The correct version follows.

COHERENT™ IS SUPERIOR TO UNIX* AND IT'S AVAILABLE TODAY ON THE IBM PC.

Mark Williams Company hasn't just taken a mini-computer operating system, like UNIX, and ported it to the PC. We wrote COHERENT ourselves. We were able to bring UNIX capability to the PC with the PC in mind, making it the most efficient personal computer work station available at an unbelievable price.

For the first time you get a multi-user, multitasking operating system on your IBM PC. Because COHERENT is UNIX-compatible, UNIX software will run on the PC under COHERENT.

The software system includes a C-compiler and over 100 utilities, all for $500. Similar environments cost thousands more.

COHERENT on the IBM PC requires a hard disk and 256K memory. It's available on the IBM XT, and Tecmar, Davong and Corvus hard disks.

Available now. For additional information, call or write,

Mark Williams Company
1430 West Wrightwood, Chicago, Illinois 60614
312/472-6659

CIRCLE NO. 164 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Mark
Williams
Company

COHERENT is a trademark of Mark Williams Company.
*UNIX is as trademark of Bell Laboratories.

```
PROGRAM HAT;

($N+)(TURN ON NATIVE CODE GENERATION)
(R-)(TURN OFF RANGE CHECKING)
USES TURTLEGRAPHICS;

CONST
  P=160;
  Q=100;
  XP=144;
  YP=56;
  ZP=64;

VAR
  XI, YI, ZF, XF, ZT, XT, XR, YY, XPZP : REAL;
  XP2, ZI, XL, XI : INTEGER;
  FOREVER : BOOLEAN;
  A : INTEGER;

  BEGIN (** MAIN PROGRAM **)
    XR := 1.5*3.1415927;
    XF := XR/XP;
    XPZP := XP/ZP;
    XP2 := XP*XP;

    ZF := XR/ZP;
    FOREVER := FALSE;

    FOR ZI := -Q TO Q+1 DO
      BEGIN
        IF (ZI > -ZP) AND (ZI < ZP) THEN
          BEGIN
            ZT := ZI * XPZP;
            XL := TRUNC (0.5 + SQRT (XP2 - ZT*ZT));
            FOR XI := -XL TO XL DO
              BEGIN
                XT := SQRT (XI*XI + ZT*ZT) * XF;
                YY := (SIN (XT) + 0.4 * SIN (3 * XT)) * YP;
                XI := XI + ZI + P;
                YI := YY - ZI + Q;
                SETPIXEL (0, XI, YI, 2);
              END;
          END; (IF)
      END; (NEXT ZI)

      REPEAT
        A := A+1
      UNTIL FOREVER;

  END. (** MAIN PROGRAM **)
```

NEC 765 Controller

You mentioned that the NEC 765 controller can support both the 5¼-inch and 8-inch drives. How can one go about using this capability? Does this involve rewiring or changing a ROM on the disk controller board? Can this be done entirely by software as you stated using a utility package such as Henderson's JFORMAT as advertised in your journal?

Francil S. Nakayama
Phoenix, AZ 85040

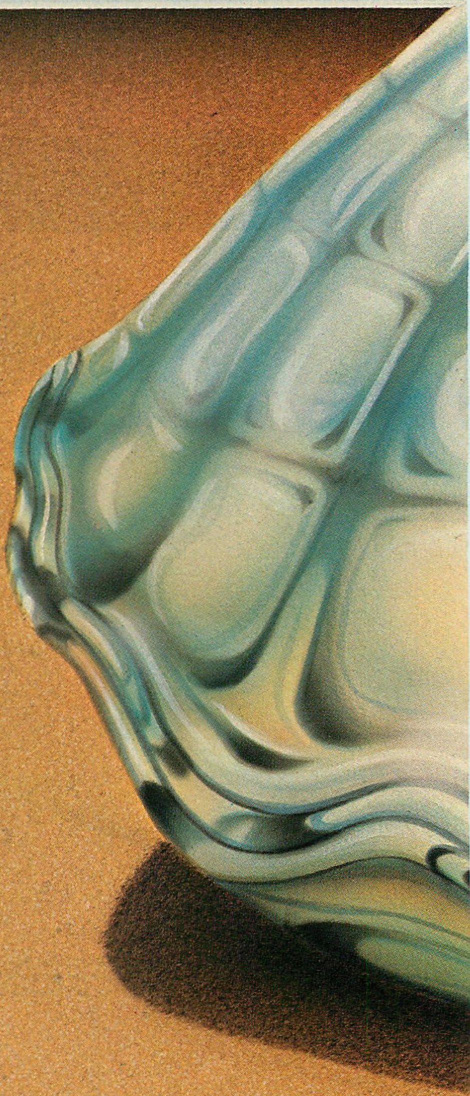
The floppy controller is under the complete control of software and can be reprogrammed to deal with 8-inch drives. A number of companies offer such upgrades for the PC; no ROM change is required. We will deal with the 765 in a future issue.—WF

SOFTWARE REVIEW

THE SHE

Three cover-ups for MS DOS: What the well-dressed operating system could sometimes use.

SUSAN GLINERT–COLE

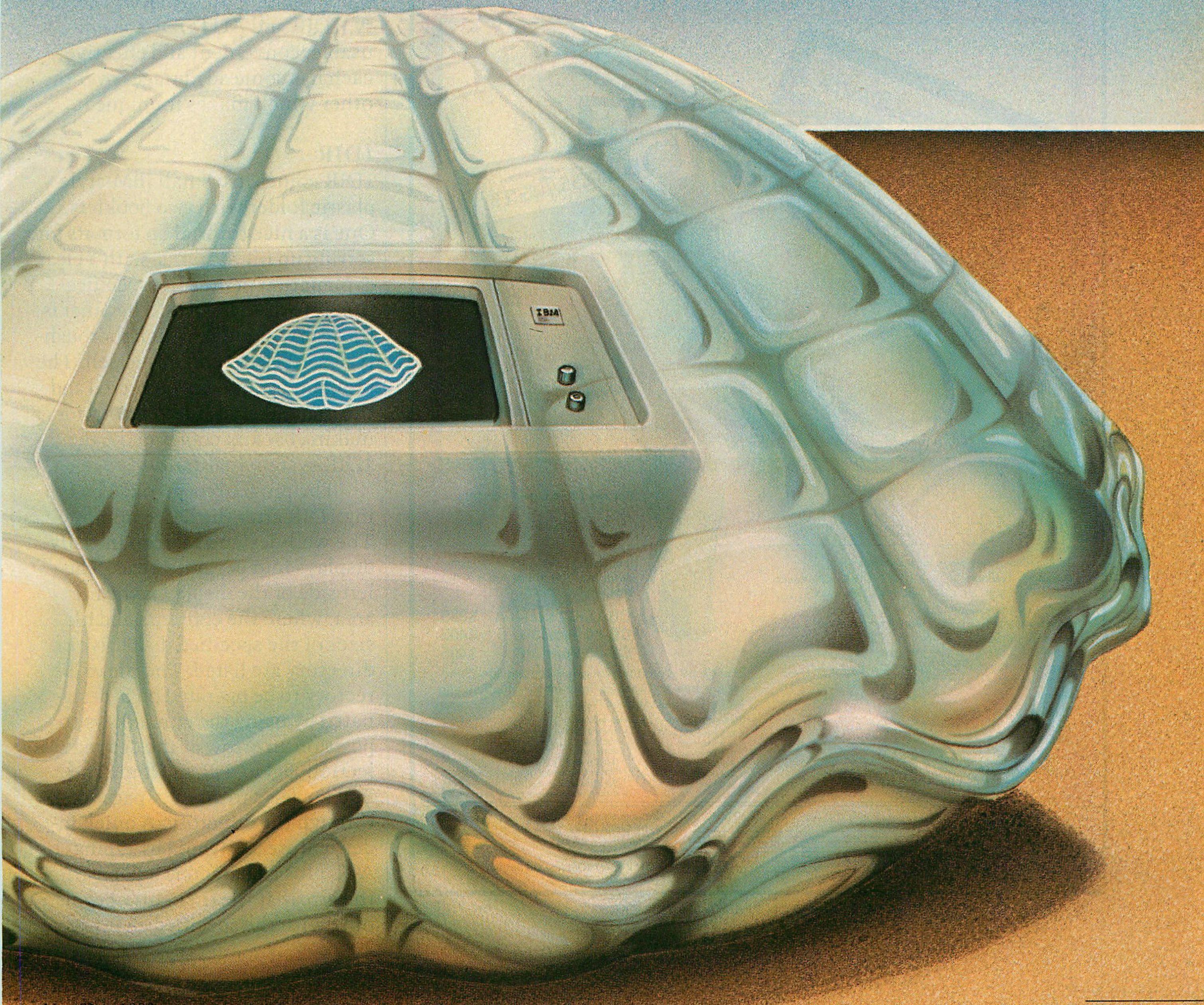


INTRODUCTION

It is a fact of life that effective use of an operating system requires a thorough study of the documentation and good memorization skills if the command syntax is to become second nature. Microsoft DOS certainly doesn't lend itself to casual users, lacking, as it does, coherent menu prompts and a well-organized manual. MS-DOS is becoming a force to be reckoned with, particularly for people who are trying to use it. Software is now beginning to appear that removes the user from direct contact with the operating system by building an interactive "shell" around it.

These products are not aimed at system developers or programmers

LL GAME



with extensive experience. Rather, they are meant to appeal to the businessman or home user who is occasionally required to interact with the operating system (to format a diskette for example). This is not to say that an expert could not benefit from the convenience provided by a shell. A programmer who is intent upon the latest piece of software will appreciate the ease with which directories may be searched and errant files located.

Typically, shells present a menu display with the various options available, such as ERASE, COPY and so on. The user merely has to position the cursor at the desired option, and press one key to execute the command. If well implemented, the shell makes it very easy to carry out commands which, if attempted directly in MS-DOS, might require a few retypings to get the syntax correct. Error recovery should be impeccable. Shells that are poorly designed present the user with a more complicated set of commands to memorize than is available with the basic operating system itself and respond to an incorrect command by tossing the user back to DOS.

Of the three shells reviewed in this article, one of them belongs, unfortunately, to the latter category. 1DIR and AUTODEX are quite usable, convenient and effective; each has some advantages over the other which makes it unique.

1DIR

1DIR comes in a small IBM-style plastic folder with two booklets. One is a nice tutorial on formats for setting up file systems, with a clear explanation of how file specifications are used in DOS. The other is the user's manual, which thoroughly describes the software itself. The program is not copy protected and the manual gives instructions for making backup copies using the 1DIR system (naturally).

The program is invoked by typing 1DIR after the DOS prompt. The well-designed screen initially displays four separate areas. The left side of the display is the file area, where the contents and file sizes of the specified disk drive or directory are listed. The file or directory to be operated on is designated by using the cursor keys to position an arrow at the desired selection. PgUp, PgDn, Home and End are used to quickly page through the directory. A quick index feature, activated by typing ALT plus a character, will position the arrow at the first entry beginning with the specified character.

The center of the screen is used for system statistics. Listed here are diskette usage in hidden and user files, space used and available on both the disk and in memory, the date and time.

There are two ways to enter a command: by moving the cursor to a command listed on the screen and pressing the enter key, or by selecting the COMPOSE mode and then typing the desired command.

The left side contains an area that displays the current state of the toggle keys (Num Lock, Caps Lock, and PrtSc) and set-up menu. This menu is used for changing the default drive, the displayed drive, initiating sorts by file name or extension and a PAUSE command toggle. After 1DIR has completed an operation, it normally requires an extra keypress to return to the 1DIR menu. This design prevents any program output on the display from being instantly replaced by the menu. A 'pause' option will toggle this feature off, if the extra keypress is not desirable.

Along the bottom of the screen is a menu displaying DOS's internal commands. These commands are invoked by positioning the cursor on the desired command and pressing the return key. Erasure requests are always followed by a warning and require a reply before they are executed.

The cursor keys are used to move around the display. An arrow is always positioned in the file area, and the command selected in the command area is displayed inside the arrow, so you are always aware of what you asked for and where you have been.

There are two ways to enter a command: by moving the cursor to a command listed on the screen and pressing the enter key, or by selecting the COMPOSE mode and then typing the desired command. The ability to enter commands not available on the menu is an excellent feature which neither AUTODEX and FileCommand have.

When 1DIR is initialized, it automatically comes up in the COMPOSE mode, with the cursor ready to accept a command. COMPOSE is always used in conjunction with another menu command: EXECUTE. In the COMPOSE mode, a DOS command may be typed out, or the many shortcuts provided by 1DIR may be used to create the command without the hazard of

typing it out by hand. For example, positioning the pointer to a file and then pressing the plus key will copy the file name on the composing line. When the command has been assembled, the command cursor is moved to EXECUTE and the return key is pressed. Commands can only be constructed in this manner from file names in the currently displayed directory. This is too bad; 1DIR would be much more powerful if provision were made to allow command composition from different directories. This option is useful nevertheless for entering more complicated commands than 1DIR can handle with its cursor keys and menu choices.

An executable file can be run simply by positioning the file pointer to the program name and moving the command cursor to RUN. This alleviates the necessity of remembering all the executable file names on a fixed disk.

If the file pointer is positioned at a directory, or subdirectory, RUN will list the contents contained therein. It is very easy to page through a complex file hierarchy with 1DIR. The only complaint about this implementation is that the name of the directory is not displayed when the contents are listed in the file area. This is a curious omission because it becomes necessary to go one level up to see what subdirectory is being shown on the screen. Even worse, 1DIR's relative position in the subdirectory hierarchy is unknown and can only be found by performing upward directory scan.

Each disk can be given an identifying name of up to six letters and each file can have a file description of up to 42 characters.

1DIR is impervious to user error; I was unable to make it crash or produce inexplicable results. An error is signaled by a single low-pitched beep. It is also perfectly logical in its operation. It doesn't get flustered when asked to display the files in drive Z; it shows you exactly what's there . . . nothing.

Autodex

The only documentation supplied with the review copy was the quick reference card. The information it contained might be adequate for an instant refresher, but did not explain many of the advanced features mentioned on the card. While AUTODEX will run in DOS 2.0, the version reviewed does not give the user access to subdirectories. This makes AUTODEX effectively useless for hard disks, although the company indicated that an updated version should be available by the time this article appears.

The display is divided between the file area and the disk area. The former contains all the file information such as disk space available, file size, date of last update, and current default and backup drives. Each disk can be given an identifying name of up to six letters and each file can have a file description of up to 42 characters. This is a good feature, but it does take a 3K bite out of the available disk space.

As in 1DIR, the current file had an arrow pointing to it that can be moved around with the cursor keys. While the pointer is positioned at a file name, various commands can be executed by typing one letter. Thus, L will list the file to the printer, R will rename the file, X will execute the program, V will view the file in Hex and ASCII and so on. The erase, backup or list commands can all be used in conjunction with the multiple (M) command, so all files can be erased at once. Erasures are prompted by a warning message, and an extra keypress insures that accidental file loss is kept at a minimum. Most of the commands have some message attendant on them, so that you are always reminded of what you intended to do or what you just did.

If an executable command requires parameters (FORMAT, for example, needs a drive specifier), the user may enter them at the prompt which follows the X command. This is a much easier way to enter information than that provided by 1DIR, where the entire command, including the file name, must be composed and then executed.

The B, or backup command, is a very useful feature that will back up the current diskette to a specified drive, and identify it with the same name.

The B, or backup command, is a very useful feature that will back up the current diskette to a specified drive, and identify it with the same name. This is less tedious than the format required for DOS of COPY X:*.* Y: and more comprehensible to infrequent users of this command.

The multiple command, M, allows users to mark files for use with backup, list and erase commands. This function is akin to the wildcard specifications of DOS, but may be used more selectively. Erasing many files on one diskette can be a chore however; it is easier to perform this function with the DOS wild card feature.

The view command is one of AUTODEX'S most convenient features. In addition to displaying text files, the program neatly outputs executable files in hexadecimal and ASCII, with the offsets displayed in the left hand column. Non-printing ASCII characters are represented as periods, and the display contents can be sent to the printer via CTRL + PrtSc.

DATABASE FACILITY

GDSS is suited to interface to any existing or user-developed databases for effective aggregation, organization and manipulation of data. The system has a large local storage capability and can accept files from either a host computer or other source. Once loaded into GDSS's own internal database, subschema or views developed by multiple users from a common file can be interrogated interactively through the use of a powerful query language, which allows the user to select or sort particular items as well as perform mathematical computations on the results.

MENU STRUCTURE

GDSS offers easy-to-use menu-driven software, enabling the user to design charts quickly. Customized menus may also be developed by the user for specific applications providing the ultimate in flexibility. In addition, the command file structure can store frequently used formats for production mode operations making the system a high-speed graphics report generator whereby hardcopy is completely automatic.

EASY TO USE CHART BUILDING TOOLS

Digitizer Tablet

GDSS offers unlimited format styles, including bubbles, scattergrams, 3-dimensional bars, and multiplex formats. Layouts, overlays of equal or different sized graphs, rotations, split screen and multiple graphs on the same screen are also possible. In addition, new formats can be customized through the use of the graphic editor and optional digitizer tablet. This enables the user to edit and modify the graph as well as design elements of any shape or size.

ARITHMETIC OPERATIONS

GDSS provides immediate support in the process of analyzing large amounts of data to extract trends, and, in general, support the complex decision making processes. Numerous arithmetic, statistical and logical operations are available for these analyses.

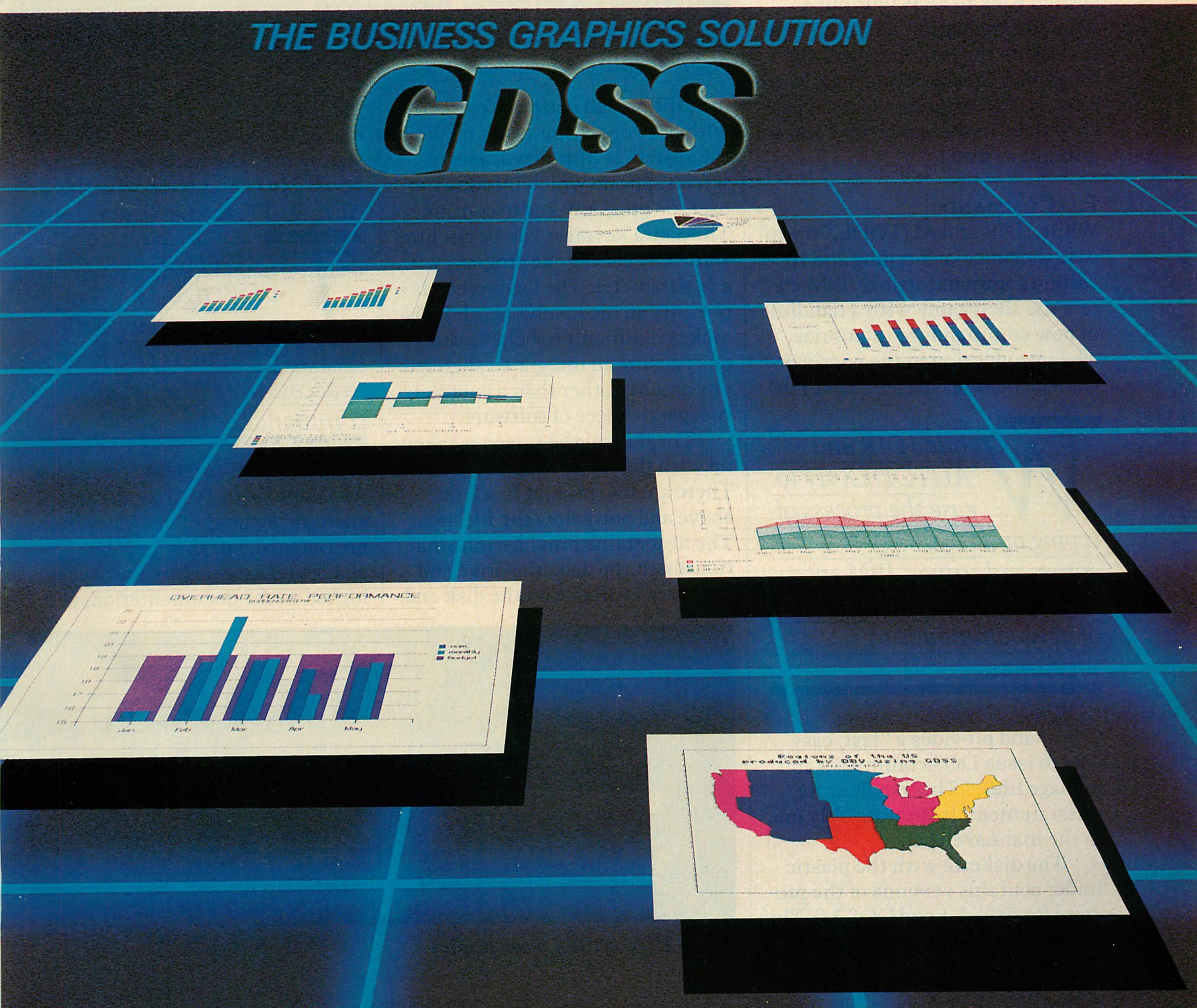
DEVICE INDEPENDENCE

GDSS is totally input/output device independent — the system can accept input from many sources and produce output on a variety of graphics hardcopy devices from single line printers to high resolution film recorders. GDSS currently runs on the IBM PC, Convergent Technologies, Burroughs, NCR, Altos and Victor hardware.

DEMO DISKETTE OFFER

No other business graphics package offers all the features of GDSS. To illustrate this, our demo diskette and User Manual are available for your review at $35.00. This amount will be applied to your purchase of GDSS. Please call or write for further information:

DBV
Data Business Vision, Inc.
3510 Dunhill Street, Suite B
San Diego, California 92121
619/450-1557



CIRCLE NO. 251 ON READER SERVICE CARD

The disk area has five functions which can be executed by positioning the cursor to the desired command and pressing RETURN. One keystroke enables you to sort by name, type, size or date, gives a printout of all the files on the default disk with related information, obtains date and time and exits to DOS.

AUTODEX exits to DOS whenever it perceives something unusual. There is no recovery from disk errors, and the program is relatively easy to crash. Specifying a nonexistent drive confuses it, and some honest errors on my part threw the system back to DOS without a word of explanation. Listing a non-text file to the printer causes the program to freeze, requiring a warm reboot. Disk error messages appear embedded in the screen text and are difficult to read.

FileCommand

While 1DIR and AUTODEX try to ease the process of typing and recalling command strings, IBM enters the shell game with a handful of new commands to memorize. The introduction to the poorly organized manual suggests that File-

While 1DIR and AUTODEX try to ease the process of typing and recalling command strings, IBM enters the shell game with a handful of new commands to memorize.

Command provides a "fast, easy way to issue DOS commands and manage files." This is a definite misstatement. It isn't the only one in the manual either.

The diskette with the plastic folder contains versions of the program for DOS 1.1 and DOS 2.0. This arrangement is not as convenient as

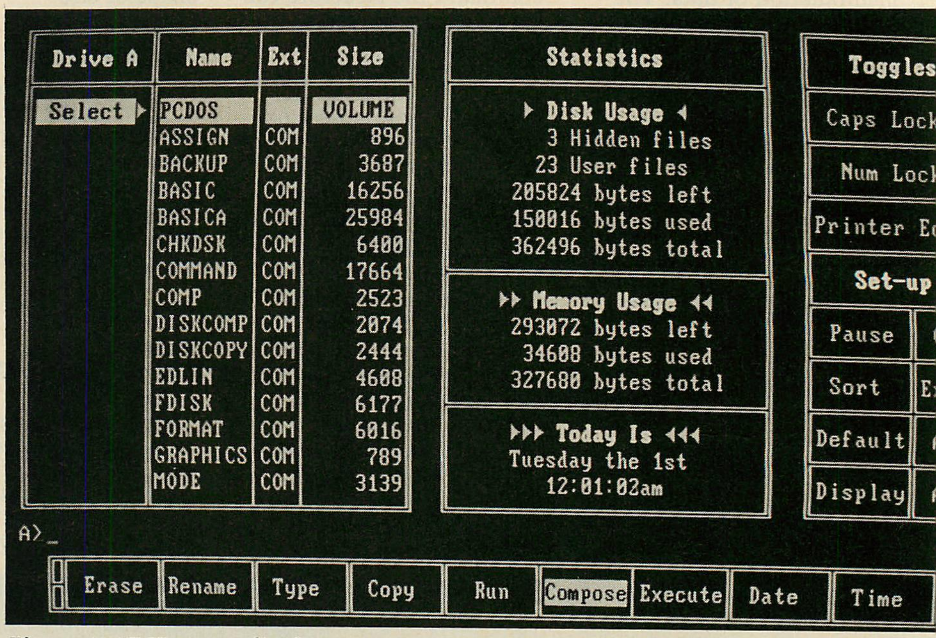


Figure 1: 1DIR menu display

in 1DIR, which performs perfectly with both operating systems. When the system is initialized, a logo screen appears which informs the user to "press any key to continue." This extra keypress can be circumvented by calling the program with a /q parameter. The logo screen is not only an inconvenience, but also makes it difficult to believe that one is using an integrated shell environment, rather than a completely separate piece of software.

The bulk of the screen is taken up with the file description area. There are two prompt lines: one above and one below the file area. The header line provides information about the disk, the drive and the space available on the disk and in memory. The bottom prompt displays the main function key assignments. The function keys may be used in conjunction with the ALT, SHIFT, and CTRL keys to

The function keys may be used in conjunction with the ALT, SHIFT and CTRL keys to access over 40 different commands.

access over 40 different commands. ALT-alphabet keys may also be customized by the user. They come preassigned, but they may be changed. Assignments are not catalogued in the documentation; you

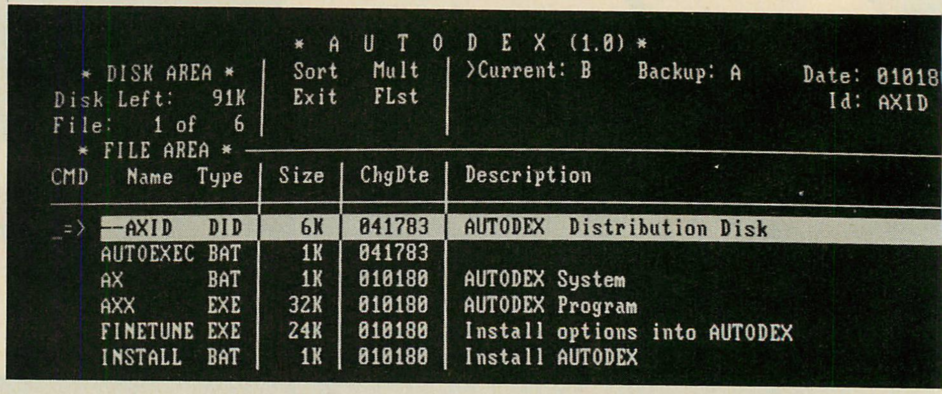
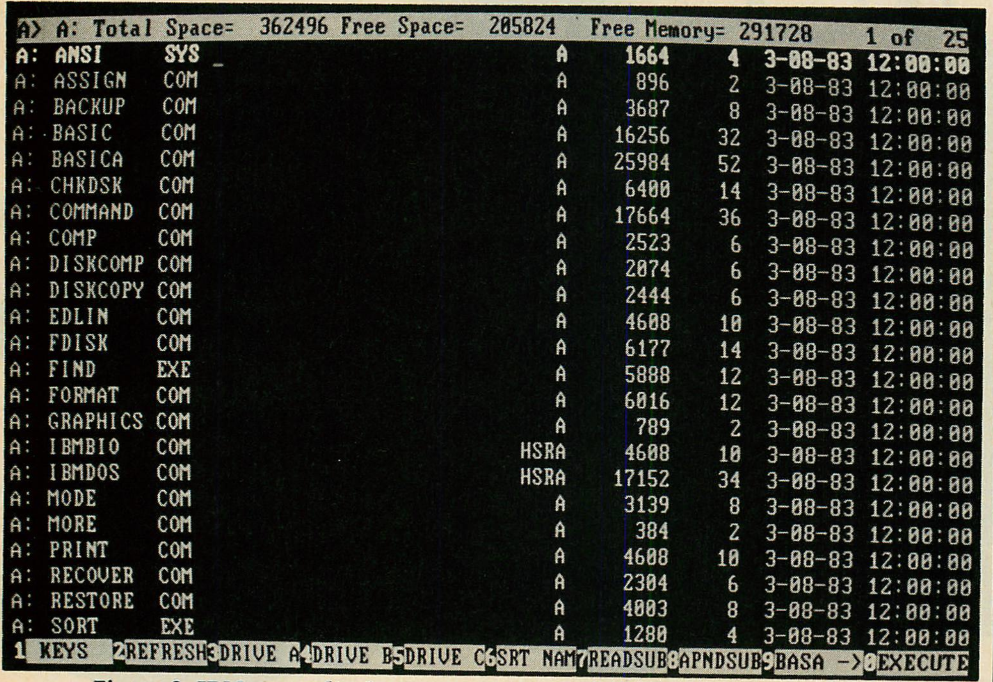


Figure 2: AUTODEX menu display

view key assignments by hitting function key #1.

The file description area lists the files on the diskette, along with their various attributes, such as file size, hidden or system, number of sectors the file occupies, and the date and time the file was last updated. The DOS 2.0 version also indicates whether the file has been updated since the fixed disk was last backed up. There are no column headers on the screen to remind you of what all this information is. If you have been away from the program for a while, it is necessary to reread the manual to recall which column is which.

The command structure itself is knotty.


A> A: Total Space= 362496 Free Space= 205824 Free Memory= 291728 1 of 25

A:	ANSI	SYS	A	1664	4	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	ASSIGN	COM	A	896	2	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	BACKUP	COM	A	3687	8	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	BASIC	COM	A	16256	32	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	BASICA	COM	A	25984	52	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	CHKDSK	COM	A	6400	14	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	COMMAND	COM	A	17664	36	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	COMP	COM	A	2523	6	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	DISKCOMP	COM	A	2074	6	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	DISKCOPY	COM	A	2444	6	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	EDLIN	COM	A	4608	10	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	FDISK	COM	A	6177	14	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	FIND	EXE	A	5888	12	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	FORMAT	COM	A	6016	12	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	GRAPHICS	COM	A	789	2	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	IBMBIO	COM	HSRA	4608	10	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	IBMDOS	COM	HSRA	17152	34	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	MODE	COM	A	3139	8	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	MORE	COM	A	384	2	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	PRINT	COM	A	4608	10	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	RECOVER	COM	A	2304	6	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	RESTORE	COM	A	4003	8	3-08-83	12:00:00
A:	SORT	EXE	A	1280	4	3-08-83	12:00:00

1 KEYS 2REFRESH 3DRIVE A 4DRIVE B 5DRIVE C 6SRT NAM 7READSUB 8APNDSUB 9BASA -> 0EXECUTE

Figure 3: IBM menu display

The cursor keys are used to run a highlighted line up and down the list of files. A prompt on the top line tells the user what line the cursor is on; this information is of dubious worth and the space on the prompt line could have been used to better effect.

The general idea behind FileCommand is to position the cursor in the command area, which is the free space between the file name and the remaining file data, and then type the command. This must be followed by a CTRL + RETURN. Alternatively, the plus key on the numeric keypad may be used to enter the command. If either combination is held down too long, the program retreats transiently to DOS. Control can be passed back to the program by hitting the RETURN key.

The command structure itself is knotty. All commands are prefaced by a (/), and then executed with the additional keystrokes mentioned above. Unlike 1DIR and AUTODEX, commands are not executable through a menu. The commands themselves are confusing and do not always work as expected. The r command is variously referred to as a Replace, Refresh, Return and Remove command. In addition, syntax rules must always be kept in mind as well; /r/ is not the same as /r, which in turn differs from /r filespec.

The /p command is supposed to display information on paths; this did not work in the version reviewed here. Path information is obtained by typing the same syntax as found in DOS—e.g., level1/level2/level3. The same information is displayed too, making one wonder what advantages FileCommand has over the bare operating system.

It is possible to append directory listings to each other on the display (there is no alteration on the disk) with the /a command. The number of directories which can be so appended must be specified with the /fn parameter if more than the default number is desired. The default is 8, which means, curiously, that 7 files may be appended to the current directory, for a total of 8.

The biggest drawback of FileCommand is that programs may not be directly executed from the display if they are not in the default directory. This is a problem found in DOS 2.0 which 1DIR handles automatically by changing the directory before executing the requested program. FileCommand claims that any file with a .COM or .EXE extension may be executed from the display, but this feature didn't work in the review copy without a manual change to the default directory.

The biggest drawback of FileCommand is that programs may not be directly executed from the display if they are not in the default directory.

Final Considerations

AUTODEX and 1DIR provide considerable conveniences and enhancements not offered by MS DOS, but both exact a price for these available features. AUTODEX is very fast and allows the user to stroll through a file with a few keystrokes. It substitutes in a small

SOFTCON
NEW ORLEANS
La Superdome
Feb 21-23, 1984
Booth 1151

Leading the new generation in word processing...

Textra leaves behind the costly and complicated word processors of yesterday.

Leading in performance.
Most of today's word processors were converted to work on the IBM PC from their designs for yesterday's machines. If this seems like a step backwards, it is.
Textra was designed to take advantage of the speed and power in your IBM PC and the result is clear—a word processor that helps you work faster with less effort.

Leading in learning.
Learning to use Textra is easy too!
Our highly acclaimed tutorial is actually a film on disk, rolling by on your screen. You can pause, change speeds, even fast forward or rewind, (and for the first time, have fun while learning to use a software program).

Leading in price.
Let's face it. The days of the $495 word processor are numbered. There is simply no reason to pay that much now that Textra is here.

Take a closer look.
See for yourself how easy Textra makes word processing. Ask your dealer for a demonstration today, or order directly from us. Send $95 with the confidence of a money back guarantee, or $3 for a full Test Disk. (Visa/MC, COD accepted)

Textra also works with the PC XT and leading compatibles.
Textra requires PC DOS (any version), 128 K, and a monochrome or color monitor.

Textra and the A² Software logo are trademarks of Ann Arbor Software.
© 1983, Ann Arbor Software, All rights reserved.

TEXTRA

*A² Software
*Ann Arbor Software, 407 N. Main Street
P.O. Box 7345, Ann Arbor, MI 48107
Phone: 313-769-9088

Textra Jr. 39.95

**An outstanding text editor.
An outstanding price.**

Ideal for:
program editing • simple word processing • dBase II™programming • works with Visicalc,™ Supercalc,™ Lotus 1-2-3™

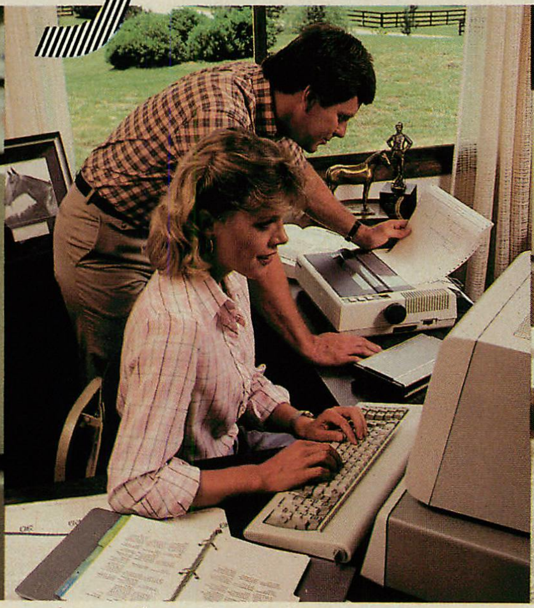
P.S. You can upgrade to Textra at anytime for the difference in price.

TM = Manufacturers trademark.

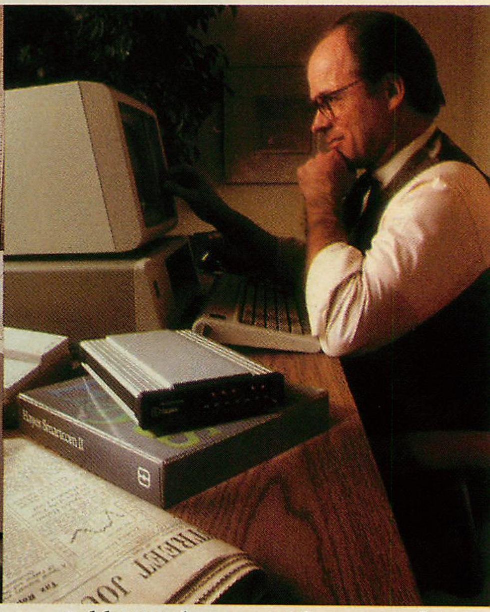
CIRCLE NO. 228 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Hayes
Your computer's telephone.

What will counteract NDC 74-0054-60?



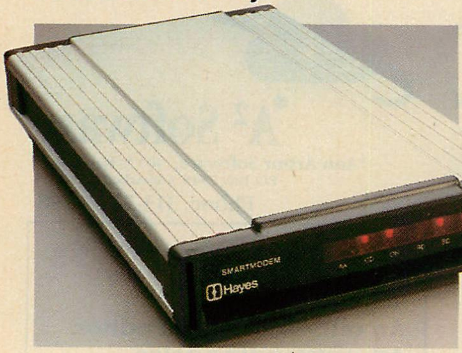
Gary: The pedigrees for next week's auction are as follows...



Sold 1000 shares at 33 for net profit of 6000. Richard.

Wouldn't it be great if you could use your IBM®PC to tap into vast resource libraries across the country? To transfer files to your partner, upstate? Or from your broker, down the street?

It's possible. All you need is a modem, to connect your computer to others. Down the hall. Or thousands of miles away.



Hayes Smartmodem. Think of it as your computer's telephone. Hayes Smartmodem 300, and the faster Smartmodem 1200, allow you to communicate over ordinary phone lines.

But any modem will send and receive data. Smartmodems also dial, answer and disconnect calls. Automatically. And without going through the telephone receiver, making them far superior to acoustic coupler modems.

Choose your speed; choose your price. The lower-priced Smartmodem 300 is ideal for local data swaps and communicates at 300 bps. For longer distance and larger volumes, Smartmodem 1200 operates at baud rates of 300 or 1200, with a built-in selector that automatically detects transmission speeds.

Both work with rotary dials, Touch-Tone® and key-set systems; connect to most time-sharing systems; and feature an audio speaker.

Smartmodem 1200B is also available as a plug-in board. Developed specifically for the PC, it comes packaged with Hayes' own communications software, Smartcom II.™

Smartcom II. We spent a lot of time developing it, so you can spend less time using it. Smartcom II prompts you in the simple steps required to create, send, receive, display, list, name and re-name files. It even receives data completely unattended—especially helpful when you're sending work from home to the office, or vice versa.

If you need it, there's always "help." This feature explains prompts, messages, etc. to make communicating extra easy.

With Smartcom II, it is. Case in point: Before you communicate with another system, you need to "set up" your computer to match the way the remote system transmits data. With Smartcom II, you do this only once. After that, parameters for 25 different remote systems are stored in a directory on Smartcom II.

Calling or answering a system listed in the directory requires just a few quick keystrokes.

You can store lengthy log-on sequences the same way. Press one key, and Smartcom II automatically connects you to a utility or information service.

Hayes®

way for a file management program by providing disk labels and file descriptions, and easing the chore of making backup disks. On the other hand, error recovery is not very good, although familiarity with AUTODEX's foibles would minimize the frequency of fatal blunders. The program is also bulky, occupying about 53,000 bytes of disk space plus an extra 3K for the header file. This almost requires it to be placed on a separate diskette and takes away from its use as a resident utility. Finally, AUTODEX is very expensive at $150. If the error trapping were improved and the tree-structured directories of DOS 2.0 supported, this product would be worth the price.

AUTODEX and 1DIR provide considerable conveniences and enhancements not offered by MS DOS, but both exact a price for these features.

1DIR performs flawlessly and provides a simple way to traverse subdirectories. Files can be executed from any level. It is not necessary to change the default directory as in FileCommand and AUTODEX did not support hierarchical directory structures. It is also small enough, at 9700 bytes, to be resident on most diskettes. This feature makes it function more as a real shell around the operating system, rather than as an auxiliary program. 1DIR appears slower than both AUTODEX and FileCommand as the screen is redrawn each time the menu is reentered (after a program has been executed, for example). As long as the user remains within the menu area, 1DIR executes the commands as rapidly as the other two shells.

At $96, 1DIR is not inexpensive, but the price may be worth any number of retypings, bad command errors and misplaced files.

FileCommand has neither the pleasant ability to view a file that AUTODEX does, nor does it allow execution from any subdirectory, as 1DIR will.

FileCommand does have some features not available in 1DIR and AUTODEX such as directory append and the ability to exclude certain files from the displayed listing. The cost exacted for these functions is the time required to learn and then type the complicated commands. FileCommand has neither the pleasant ability to view a file that AUTODEX does, nor does it allow execution from any subdirectory, as 1DIR will. While FileCommand is priced competitively at $35 and has a reasonable file size of 15,000 bytes, it does not perform as described in the manual and certainly does not alleviate the problem of complicated command entry.

1DIR
Bourbaki Inc.
431 Main Street
Boise, ID 83702
208–342-5849
Circle 460 on Reader Service Card

AUTODEX
AutoDex
1035 Santa Barbara Street
Santa Barbara, CA 93101
800–839-2246, ext. 279
Circle 461 on Reader Service Card

FileCommand
IBM
Sales and Service
P.O. Box 1328-C
Boca Raton, FL 33432
Circle 462 on Reader Service Card

The Chaplin character licensed by Bubbles, Inc., S.A.

The best software for the IBM Personal Computer. Could it be yours?

Attention, all programmers. Here's a chance to reach the top.

If you've written software that's completed and runs on the IBM Personal Computer, we could be interested in publishing it.

(We also could be interested if it runs on *another* computer. If we select your software, we'll ask you to adapt it to our system.)

But be advised.

Our expectations are great.

Because the software we publish must be good enough to complement IBM Personal Computer hardware. In fact, the more you take advantage of all our hardware capabilities (see the box at right), the more interested in your software we become.

Think about incorporating color graphics into your program, for example.

Use sound. Consider the power of our keyboard and remember to utilize the ten programmable function keys.

In all cases, we're interested in "friendly" software—with emphasis on quality and wide appeal. Programs with the greatest chance of being published must be easy to use, offer a better way to accomplish a task and provide something special to the user.

What kinds of programs? All kinds.

Education. Entertainment. Personal finance. Data management. Self improvement. Games. Communications. And yes, business.

We select programs that will make the IBM Personal Computer an even more useful tool for modern times.

IBM PERSONAL COMPUTER SPECIFICATIONS

User Memory
64K-640K bytes

Microprocessor
16-bit, 8088

Auxiliary Memory
2 optional internal diskette drives, 5¼" 160KB/180KB or 320KB/360KB per diskette

Keyboard
83 keys, 6 ft. cord attaches to system unit
10 function keys
10-key numeric pad

Diagnostics
Power-on self testing
Parity checking

Display Screens
Color or monochrome
High-resolution
80 characters x 25 lines
Upper and lower case

Operating Systems
DOS, UCSD p-System, CP/M-86†

Languages
BASIC, Pascal, FORTRAN, MACRO Assembler, COBOL

Printer
All-points-addressable graphics capability
Bidirectional
80 characters/second
18 character styles
9 x 9 character matrix

Permanent Memory
(ROM) 40K bytes

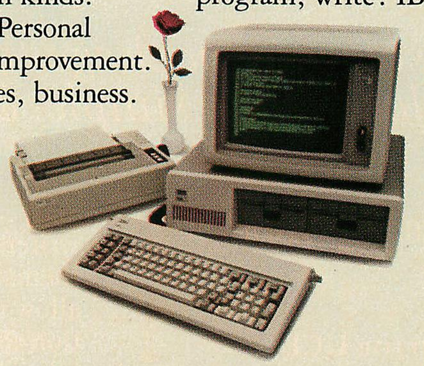
Color/Graphics
Text mode:
16 colors
256 characters and symbols in ROM
Graphics mode:
4-color resolution: 320h x 200v
Black & white resolution: 640h x 200v
Simultaneous graphics & text capability

Communications
RS-232-C interface
SDLC, Asynchronous, Bisynchronous protocols
Up to 9600 bits per second

So, if you think your software is the best, consider submitting it. If it's accepted, we'll take care of the publishing, the marketing and the distribution. All you have to do is reap the benefits of our royalty terms. And you're free to market your program elsewhere *at any time* even if you license it to us.

We're offering the ladder. Think about taking the first step.

For information on how to submit your program, write: IBM Personal Computer, External Submissions, Dept. 765 PC, Armonk, New York 10504.



The IBM Personal Computer
A tool for modern times

CIRCLE NO. 152 ON READER SERVICE CARD

For more information on where to buy the IBM Personal Computer, call 800-447-4700. In Alaska or Hawaii, 800-447-0890.

UCL
A USER COMMAND LANGUAGE

Amid a blitz of software packages claiming to be "integrated," our author pleads for a simple, consistent user interface.

Eliezer Naddor

The Need for UCL

The time has come for the computing community to agree on a generally accepted User Command Language—a minimal set of commands and command formats easily grasped by programmers, manual writers and, foremost, by users themselves. Such a language should allow the user to obtain information about the commands themselves, about the data used by the program, and about other sources of

Eliezer Naddor is a professor of mathematical sciences at The Johns Hopkins University.

data and their formats. The commands should allow the user control over the amount and format of the information supplied. And there should also also be commands providing examples of the precise format of designated commands.

I realize that for certain applications and for novice users, the use of menus, pointers, and special keys may be suitable as command languages. However, this article will not concern itself with such languages.

An Existing UCL

I have been designing, coding, and implementing computer programs since 1955 for a very wide range of applications. During the last few years I have found it necessary to develop a UCL for most of my larger programs, which have been used by many students and also in industrial applications. I will first present several illustrations of my UCL and then discuss its general structure. Each command illustrated is given in the precise format expected by the program. It is then followed by a description of the action expected by the program.

HELP - Provide brief helpful information

EXA,HELP - Provide examples of the precise format for the command HELP.

HELP,COMMANDS - List all the available command roots.

SYS,FRENCH.DAT - Read the system data in file FRENCH.DAT.

FIND/FRE/FIL,RX:1930, VEND:2001 = 2999 - Find the frequency of occurrence of vendors 2001 to 2999 for patients who were prescribed the drug 1930. Display the results on the terminal and also print them in the next file in the series FIN.01, FIN.02, etc.

SIMULATE/6,SZ,-1-2,4,100.2,1-10,96-100 - Simulate an inventory system with an SZ policy using reorder points from -1 to 2 and an order level of 4. The simulation should cover 100 periods and the outputs should use printing option 2. The pertinent information should be printed for periods 1 to 10 and for periods 96 to 100. Six sets of simulations should be run.

The applications covered by these commands include a multiple choice quiz, a database manager, an inventory simulation, a game, an editor, and a mathematical programming program.

DIS/10,ROW,2,4,COL,5,10 - Display the values in rows 2 to 4 and in columns 5 to 10. Print the first 10 characters of the title of each row.

PLAY*,3,2,1.5,4 - Play a chinese checkers game with four players using a teleray as a terminal. The time limits for the players are respectively 3, 2, 1.5, and 4 seconds.

RENUMBER LIS 3000-3199/200 STEP 5 - Renumber program lines 3000 to 3199. The new line numbers should start at 200 and increment in steps of 5. List the new program lines as they are renumbered.

MAX/DUAL,TAB,FULL - Find the maximum of the current linear programming problem and display details of the simplex tables arising during the solution process. Also give the solution of the dual problem.

The applications covered by these commands include a multiple choice quiz (SYS,FRENCH.DAT), a database manager (FIND), an inventory simulation (SIMULATE), a game (PLAY), an editor (RENUMBER), and a mathematical programming program (MAX). All were initially programmed in BASIC on time-sharing systems using dialects developed by Dartmouth, Hewlett Packard, Digital Equipment, IBM, and University of Waterloo. Many of them now also run on microcomputers (IBM-PC, Apple, TI-99/4, and TRS-80).

A Proposal for a Standard UCL

The format of most commands illustrated above is

WORD/Q1/Q2/ . . . /Qm,P1,P2,. . .,Pn

where WORD is the command root (e.g., HELP, EXAMPLE, DISPLAY, or FIND), Q1, Q2, ..., Qm are command qualifiers (e.g., FREQUENCY, FILE, 6, and DUAL), and P1, P2 ..., Pn are command parameters (e.g., COMMANDS, FRENCH.DAT, RX:1930, and 96-100). The qualifiers, if any, are separated by slashes (/) and the parameters, if any, are separated by commas (,).

In the process of implementing my programs on the IBM-PC, I reviewed this command format and consulted with others on its possible generalization.

David Naddor, a software engineer in Atlanta, made the following suggestions:

- Either commas (,) or spaces ( ) should be accepted as parameter separators in the command (e.g., EXA DIS or EXA,DIS).

- If a qualifier or parameter contains a space ( ) or a comma (,), then it should start and end with a quote (e.g., "Thomas Jefferson").

- A quote is either the quotation mark (") or an apostrophe (') (e.g., FIND 'Doe, John', and FIN/OR "'", "'").

- If a closing quote is missing, then it is assumed to follow the last character of the command (as on the IBM-PC in the command RUN "UCL).

- Two or more consecutive spaces or commas, not within quotes, are considered as a single parameter separator.

A UCL Parsing Algorithm

David not only proposed these generalizations, but he also coded a routine for parsing any command in this UCL format and for checking it. Figure 1 lists the code and figure 2 gives several outputs using the code.

The variables in the code are the following:

L$ The command string to be parsed
NUM The number of separate strings in L$
C$() The array containing NUM separated strings
P A pointer to the next quote
Q$ The quotation mark (")
Q The location of the next quote
Q2 The location of the next apostrophe (')
D The location of the next separator
D2 The location of the next comma (,)
C$ The current quote symbol
S$ The current separated string

Most application programs should include a minimal set of seven command roots that will have universal meaning.

Figure 1: David Naddor's UCL Parsing Algorithm

```
3000 PRINT "Command line? ";:LINE INPUT L$:NUM=0:Q$=CHR$(34)
3100 P=1:IF L$="" THEN 3900
3200 Q=INSTR(P,L$+Q$ ,Q$ ):Q2=INSTR(P,L$+"'","'"):IF Q2<Q THEN Q=Q2
3300 D=INSTR(P,L$+",",","):D2=INSTR(P,L$+" "," "):IF D2<D THEN D=D2
3400 IF Q>=D THEN 3500
3410 C$=MID$(L$,Q,1):L$=LEFT$(L$,Q-1)+MID$(L$,Q+1):P=INSTR(P,L$,C$)
3420 IF P=0 THEN D=LEN(L$)+1 ELSE L$=LEFT$(L$,P-1)+MID$(L$,P+1):GOTO 3200
3500 S$=LEFT$(L$,D-1):L$=MID$(L$,D+1):IF S$>"" THEN NUM=NUM+1:C$(NUM)=S$
3510 GOTO 3100
3900 PRINT "NUM =";NUM:FOR I=1 TO NUM:PRINT I,C$(I):NEXT:PRINT:GOTO 3000
```

Figure 2: Input and Output Illustrations

```
Command line? TEST1/QUA1/QUA2/QUA3,PAR1,PAR2
NUM = 3
 1            TEST1/QUA1/QUA2/QUA3
 2            PAR1
 3            PAR2

Command line? TEST2/QUA1 PAR1 PAR2 PAR3,PAR4
NUM = 5
 1            TEST2/QUA1
 2            PAR1
 3            PAR2
 4            PAR3
 5            PAR4

Command line? "TEST 3" "PAR 1",'PAR 2' 'PAR 3'
NUM = 4
 1            TEST 3
 2            PAR 1
 3            PAR 2
 4            PAR 3

Command line? TEST4:FIND/OR NAME:"Thomas Jefferson" NAME:'Doe, John
NUM = 3
 1            TEST4:FIND/OR
 2            NAME:Thomas Jefferson
 3            NAME:Doe, John

Command line? TEST5     "'",,,'"""'    "No end
NUM = 4
 1            TEST5
 2            '
 3            """
 4            No end
```

The location of the next quote is found in line 3200. Note that if there is no next quote, then its location is assumed to be at the end of the command string. The location of the next separator is found in line 3300. If none is found, it is also assumed to be at the end of the string.

If a quote is found, then it is removed in line 3410 and the location of the pointer to the matching quote is ascertained. If found, then it is removed in line 3420 and the search continues for the next quote in line 3200. If a matching quote is not found then the separator is assumed to be at the end of the string (line 3420).

Whenever the location of the next separator (D) precedes that of the next quote (Q) (line 3400), or whenever there is no matching quote, then the current separated string, S$, is examined. If it is a null string (the case of two or more consecutive separators), then it is ignored. Otherwise, NUM is increased and C$(NUM) is determined (line 3500).

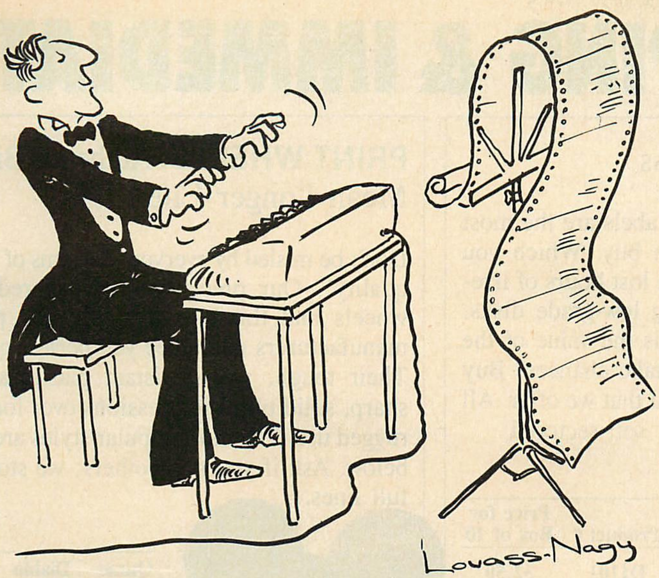
There are five illustrations of the algorithm in figure 2. In TEST1 the separator is the comma. In TEST2 it is either a space or a comma. In TEST3 we see how the quote is used and removed. Both the quotation mark and the apostrophe are illustrated.

TEST4 shows that the quote need not be at the beginning of a separated string. It also illustrates a case where there is no matching quote. Finally in TEST5 we see that several consecutive separators are considered as a single separator.

This elegant algorithm also shows the great power of BASIC's string handling capabilities.

A Minimal Set of UCL Command Words

Most application programs should



•NEW PRODUCTS•

Before Johann Sebastian Bach developed a new method of tuning, you had to change instruments practically every time you wanted to change keys. Very difficult.

Before Avocet introduced its family of cross-assemblers, developing micro-processor software was much the same. You needed a separate development system for practically every type of processor. Very difficult and very expensive.

But with Avocet's cross-assemblers, a single computer can develop software for virtually any microprocessor! Does that put us in a league with Bach? You decide.

The Well-Tempered Cross-Assembler

Development Tools That Work

Avocet cross-assemblers are fast, reliable and user-proven in over 3 years of actual use. Ask NASA, IBM, XEROX or the hundreds of other organizations that use them. Every time you see a new microprocessor-based product, there's a good chance it was developed with Avocet cross-assemblers.

Avocet cross-assemblers are easy to use. They run on any computer with CP/M* and process assembly language for the most popular microprocessor families.

5¼" disk formats available at no extra cost include Osborne, Xerox, H-P, IBM PC, Kaypro, North Star, Zenith, Televideo, Otrona, DEC.

Turn Your Computer Into A Complete Development System

Of course, there's more. Avocet has the tools you need from start to finish to enter, assemble and test your software and finally cast it in EPROM:

Text Editor VEDIT -- full-screen text editor by CompuView. Makes source code entry a snap. Full-screen text editing, plus TECO-like macro facility for repetitive tasks. Pre-configured for over 40 terminals and personal computers as well as in user-configurable form.

CP/M-80 version $150
CP/M-86 or MDOS version $195
(when ordered with any Avocet product)

EPROM Programmer -- Model 7128 EPROM Programmer by GTek programs most EPROMS without the need for personality modules. Self-contained power supply ... accepts ASCII commands and data from any computer through RS 232 serial interface. Cross-assembler hex object files can be down-loaded directly. Commands include verify and read, as well as partial programming.

PROM types supported: 2508, 2758, 2516, 2716, 2532, 2732, 2732A, 27C32, MCM8766, 2564, 2764, 27C64, 27128, 8748, 8741, 8749, 8742, 8751, 8755, plus Seeq and Xicor EEPROMS.

Avocet Cross-assembler	Target Microprocessor	CP/M-80 Version	•CP/M-86 IBM PC, MSDOS** Versions•
•XASMZ80	Z-80		
•XASM85	8085		
XASM05	6805		
XASM09	6809		
XASM18	1802		$250.00 each
XASM48	8048/8041		
XASM51	8051	$200.00 each	
XASM65	6502		
XASM68	6800/01		
XASMZ8	Z8		
XASMF8	F8/3870		$300.00 each
XASM400	COP400		
XASM75	NEC 7500	$500.00	
Coming soon: XASM68K...68000			

(Upgrade kits will be available for new PROM types as they are introduced.)

Programmer $389
Options include:
• Software Driver Package --
• enhanced features, no installation
• required.
• CP/M-80 Version .... $ 75
• IBM PC Version .... $ 95
RS 232 Cable .... $ 30
8748 family socket adaptor ... $ 98
8751 family socket adaptor ... $174
• 8755 family socket adaptor ... $135

• **G7228 Programmer by GTek** -- baud
• to 2400 ... superfast, adaptive program-
• ming algorithms ... programs 2764 in one
• minute.

• Programmer $499

• Ask us about Gang and PAL programmers.

• **HEXTRAN Universal HEX File Con-**
• **verter** -- Converts to and from Intel,
• Motorola, MOS Technology, Mostek,
• RCA, Fairchild, Tektronix, Texas
• Instruments and Binary formats.

• Converter, each version $250

Call Us

If you're thinking about development systems, call us for some straight talk. If we don't have what you need, we'll help you find out who does. If you like, we'll even talk about Bach.

CALL TOLL FREE 1-800-448-8500
(In the U.S. except Alaska and Hawaii)

VISA and Mastercard accepted. All popular disc formats now available -- please specify. Prices do not include shipping and handling -- call for exact quotes. OEM INQUIRIES INVITED.

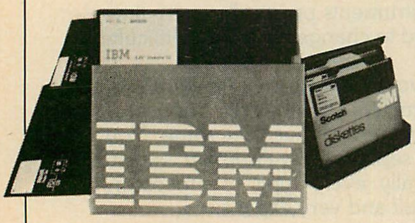
*Trademark of Digital Research **Trademark of Microsoft

AVOCET SYSTEMS INC.™
DEPT. 983-PCT
804 SOUTH STATE STREET
DOVER, DELAWARE 19901
302-734-0151 TELEX 467210

CIRCLE NO. 103 ON READER SERVICE CARD

ONE STOP SHOPPING & IMMEDIATE

DISKETTES: The Best Names in the Business



Bargain-priced mystery labels are the most expensive disks you can buy. Which you already know if you have lost hours of irreplaceable work by using low-grade disks. The real value of disks is the value of the work on them, so why take chances? Buy only the best, which is all that we offer. All the following are 5 1/4", soft-sectored:

Brand	Description	Product #	Price for Box of 10
IBM	Single Sided Double Density	D1101	32.50
IBM	Double Sided Double Density	D1102	42.50
3M	Single Sided Double Density	D1501	27.50
3M	Double Sided Double Density	D1502	38.50
Maxell	Single Sided Double Density	D2001	32.00
Maxell	Double Sided Double Density	D2002	45.50
Memorex	Single Sided Double Density	D2301	28.50
Memorex	Double Sided Double Density	D2302	38.50
TDK	Single Sided Double Density	D2801	32.00
TDK	Double Sided Double Density	D2802	45.50
Verbatim	Single Sided Double Density	D3201	29.25
Verbatim	Double Sided Double Density	D3202	40.00

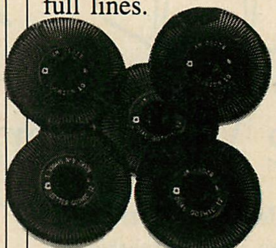
RIBBONS: We Outfit All the Popular Printers

No matter which of the top printers you have interfaced to your PC, we have what you need. Our low prices afford frequent changes to keep your hard copies from fading away. Don't be stranded with an overworked ribbon when that important report comes along. Always be ready to make a good impression. Order several today:

Printers	Model	Description	Product #'s	Price
Epson (IBM)	MX-80		R0301	9.25
Epson	MX-100		R0302	13.50
Diablo		HyType I Nylon	R1001	6.50
Diablo		HyType I Multi-Strike	R1002	5.35
Diablo		HyType II Nylon	R1003	6.90
Diablo		HyType II Multi-Strike	R1004	6.35
Qume		Nylon	R1501	5.35
Qume		Multi-Strike	R1502	4.50
NEC	8023		R2201	9.90
NEC	Spinwriter 5500-7700		R2202	5.95
Okidata	Series 80, 82, 83		R2501	3.25
Okidata	Microline 84		R2502	6.50
Radio Shack	Ricoh Daisywheel II		R3001	6.90
Radio Shack	Line Printer VI & VIII		R3002	8.90
SCM	TP-1 Daisy	12104 Multi-Strike	R3601	9.45
SCM	Wheel	12195 Nylon Fabric Black	R3602	4.45

PRINT WHEELS: Authentic Brands Mean Longer Life

Don't be misled by everyone's claims of "letter quality". Our precision-manufactured print wheels and thimbles from the top printer manufacturers guarantee you *perfect* quality. Their tough, wear-resistant plastic assures sharp, solid black impressions over long and rugged use. The most popular styles are listed below. Ask if you need others; we stock the full lines.



	Qume Brand	Diablo Brand	NEC
Price for Each	7.75	7.75	16.75
Type Fonts	**Product #'s**		
Courier 10	W1001	W2001	W3001
Courier 10A Legal		W2002	W3002
Courier 12	W1003		
Courier 72		W2004	W3004
Pica 10	W1005	W2005	W3005
Elite 12		W2006	W3006
Prestige Elite 12	W1007	W2007	
Prestige Elite Legal 12A			W3008
Letter Gothic Legal 12	W1009		
Dual Gothic Legal 12		W2010	
Dual Gothic 12B			W3011
Manifold 10		W2012	

DATA CARTRIDGES: Top Quality 3M Brand

For backing up hard disks, nothing matches the speed and density of tape streaming. These remarkable cartridges from 3M, as little as pocket size, copy enormous quantities of data in minutes; a job which can take hours using floppies. They are pre-tested, certified, and guaranteed for five years!

3M Part #	Our Product #	Price
DC 100 A	C0100	18.65
DC 300 A	C0300	24.95
DC 300 XL	CX300	28.45

Corporate Accounts Welcome: Use the accompanying card to establish credit.

DELIVERY FOR ALL YOUR SUPPLIES

LABELS: Pressure Sensitive and Non-Smearing

We have all the variations that your mailing list program might need. Easily lifted and firmly affixed for no peeling at corners, and no smudging when you press them on envelopes and correspondence. Perfect for labeling and organizing anything in your office.

Size: All labels are standard 3 1/2" by 15/16"

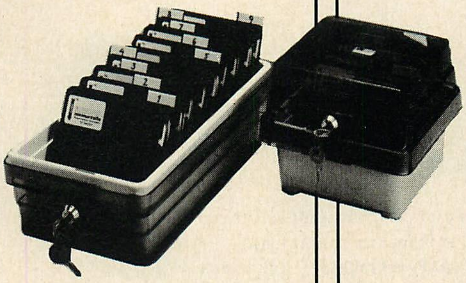
Style	Quantity	Product #	Price
1 across	5000	**L0001**	**12.50**
2 across	10000	**L0002**	**21.90**
3 across	15000	**L0003**	**30.00**
4 across	20000	**L0004**	**37.50**

PAPER: A Mix of Weights and Measures to Match All Your Needs

We stock full-size boxes and convenient Mini-Packs to fit all your likely requirements. "Green bar" stock alternates a horizontal half-inch pale green stripe with a half-inch of white to help the eye align along a row of printing. "Perforated" lets you tear off the vertical pin-feed holes and yields perfect 8 1/2" by 11" pages for correspondence, filing, and notebooks. 20 lb is full thickness and bright white. 15 lb is perfect for higher volume economic printing, and packs more to the inch. Use your printer for multiple copies. At little more than a penny a page, it beats the cost of photocopies!

Size	Type	Quantity	Weight	Product #	Price
Full Box					
14 7/8" by 11"	White	2500 sheets	20 lb	**P1420**	**42.50**
14 7/8" by 11"	Green Bar	2500 sheets	20 lb	**P2420**	**42.50**
14 7/8" by 11"	White	3400 sheets	15 lb	**P1415**	**45.50**
14 7/8" by 11"	Green Bar	3400 sheets	15 lb	**P2415**	**45.50**
9 1/2" by 11"	White/Perforated	2500 sheets	20 lb	**P1920**	**32.00**
Mini-Packs					
14 7/8" by 11"	Green Bar	1000 sheets	20 lb	**P0420**	**25.50**
9 1/2"by 11"	White/Perforated	1000 sheets	20 lb	**P0920**	**19.50**

DISKETTE HOLDERS: Make Extra Protection a Standard Practice



The microscopic surfaces of the best disks need all the protection you can give them. Don't risk hours of work to spills, dust, or smoke particles. Insist that your disks be stored in our sturdy plastic containers, and, as a bonus, organize your workplace.

Our Lock-Box line has a clear plastic cover and comes with two keys to discourage borrowing and unauthorized browsing. The Color-Coders make for easy classification of your categories of work. All sizes are for the PC's 5 1/4" diskettes.

Type	Capacity	Product #	Price
Lock-Box	Each box, 35 disks	**V1035**	**44.50**
Lock-Box	Each box, 85 disks	**V1085**	**29.75**
Color-Coder	Each box, 10 disks	**V2001**	**2.95**
Color-Coder	Set of 5 (5 colors)	**V2005**	**13.95**
Flip 'n File	60 disks	**V3001**	**25.00**

CLEANING KITS: Easy Preventive Maintenance You Can Perform

Mysterious read and write errors lead to costly and disruptive service calls. Avoid them by keeping the vital read and record heads on your disk drives pristene. No disassembly. Just moisten the disk with cleaning fluid, and slip it into the drive. Nothing more to it. Works for single- or dual-sided disks. Kits include separate cleaning fluid and disks, or fluid-impregnated disks.

Brand	Product #	Price
FD-05 Kit	**C1001**	**32.50**
Verbatim Kit	**C0500**	**10.00**
" (10 extra disks)	**C0510**	**17.25**
3M Kit	**C1201**	**28.75**
Head Kit	**C1501**	**15.75**

We are your supply line. Just call . . .

1-800-722-7263

1-212-834-0170 (in New York State, use the 212 number)

. . .or fill out the order card and mail.

MINIMUM ORDER $20.00 When ordering by phone, please have ready all the information requested on the order card.

FIRST QUALITY SUPPLIES FOR LESS

There's more than fits on these pages! For a catalog of our entire product line, tick the appropriate box on the card and mail.

P.O. BOX C-773
DEPT 11-A
PRATT STATION
BROOKLYN, N.Y. 11205-9916

PC ANNEX

CIRCLE NO. 216 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Figure 3: The Commands HELP and EXAMPLE

```
UCL.BAS version 83/05/22

---------------------------------------------------------------------
[1] 05-22-1983 15:57:49                                          [1]
UCL? HELP

The available commands are:

COMPUTE   DISPLAY   EXAMPLE   HELP
GET       NEW       SAVE      STOP

(Use EXA ALL for detailed examples of all commands.)

---------------------------------------------------------------------
[2] 05-22-1983 15:57:51                                          [2]
UCL? EXA ALL

COM/ADD ROW 2,3 4    [Add rows 2 and 3 and put in row 4]
COM/DIV COL 3,1 6    [Divide column 3 by 1 and put in 6]]
COM/MAX ROW 5,4 6    [Put in row 6 the max of row 5 and 4]
 (Available operations: ADD, SUB, MUL, DIV, MIN, and MAX)

DIS ALL              [Display all elements]
DIS ELE 5,2          [Display element in row 5, column 2]
DIS,ROW 2-5          [Display elements in rows 2 to 5]
DIS,COL,7            [Display elements in column 7]
DIS ROW 2-4 COL 3-7  [Display rows 2 to 4, columns 3 to 7]
DIS FOR              [Display the current format]

EXA HEL              [Examples of the command HELP]
EXA NEW              [Examples of the command NEW]
EXA ALL              [Examples of all commands]

GET A                [Get data set A in DATA statements]
GET TAX.DAT          [Get data from file TAX.DAT]

HEL COM              [Show the names of all commands]
HEL ARI              [Describe the arithmetic operations]
HEL ALL              [Show all the HELP messages]

NEW ELE 3,2 7        [Set element in row 3 column 2  to 7]
NEW ELE              [Prompt for setting new elements]
NEW ROW 3-5          [Prompt for new elelments in rows 3 to 5]
NEW COL 1            [Prompt for new elements in column 1]
NEW ALL              [Prompt for all new elements]
NEW FOR ###.#        [New format is ###.##]
NEW FOR "#,###.##"   [New format is #,###.##}

SAV FINAL.DAT        [Save data in file FINAL.DAT]

STOP                 [Stop running of the program]
STO ABC              [Chain to program ABC]
---------------------------------------------------------------------
```

include a minimal set of seven command roots that will have universal meaning. They are as follows:

HELP, EXAMPLE, GET, DISPLAY, NEW, SAVE, and STOP.

HELP - Provides the names of all available command roots and an illustration of how to obtain examples of all commands.

EXAMPLE - Provides several illustrative examples of the precise format for the designated command root.

GET - Loads data into appropriate variables and/or arrays. The data may be in the DATA statements of the program or in a designated file.

DISPLAY - Outputs to the terminal designated portions of the data and/or results of computations.

NEW - Prompts the user for new data or for changes in portions of the current data.

SAVE - Saves the current data in a designated file. The format in which the data is saved must conform to the format used in reading the data with the command GET.

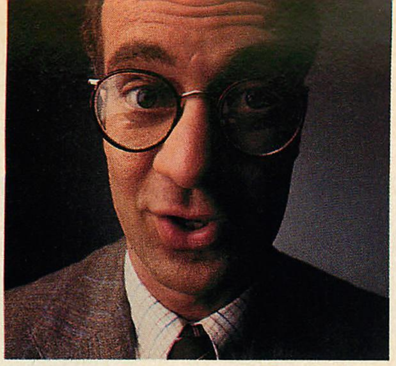
STOP - Terminates the running of the program and, optionally, chains to a designated new program.

I hope also that we can agree to use these precise words, just as the commands COPY,DIR, and RENAME seem to have become standard words for operating systems, and LIST, DELETE, and RENUM are standard commands in BASIC. In particular I would hope that HELP, EXAMPLE, and STOP be used as explained above.

I hope that we can agree to use these precise words, just as the commands COPY, DIR, and RENAME seem to have become standard words for operating systems, and LIST, DELETE, and RENUM are standard commands in BASIC.

To illustrate the use of UCL in a non-trivial application, I prepared a program called UCL.BAS, which includes some of the rudiments of a spread sheet. (The listing follows this article.) In addition to the seven standard commands proposed earlier, an eighth command, COMPUTE, is employed in the program. The heart of the application is a table with rows and columns. Values are initially placed in the table by means of the GET and NEW commands, and they can be shown on the terminal with DISPLAY.

The COMPUTE command allows arithmetic computations to be performed on two designated rows (or columns) and places the result in a designated row (or column). It



"GET IBM 3270, 3780 AND HASP COMMUNICATIONS—ADDING A ONE-BOARD PROCESSOR TO MY PC?"

"YOU CAN WITH PERSYST."

The Persyst DCP/88. The only compatible front end communications processor that can support a range of IBM communications.

It's a Persyst exclusive. The DCP/88 distributed communications processor. A one-board computer that can be configured by software to handle communications between a PC and another computer system.

In fact, the DCP/88 enables the IBM or TI PC to support a range of sophisticated IBM communications—all with just one processor.

So it gives corporate users unprecedented, low-cost flexibility to incorporate the PC into virtually any environment.

Convert any PC into an IBM 3270 terminal. An IBM 2780/3780 RJE workstation. Or a HASP/RJE workstation—instantly.

Just combine the DCP/88 with Persyst software—and you can connect your PC to any compatible host mainframe or minicomputer.

PC/3270 enables your PC to emulate an IBM 3274 Cluster control unit and 3278 terminal, supporting up to four additional devices. Including a printer and three other PCs functioning as 3278 terminals.

PC/3780 converts your PC into a 2780/3780 remote job entry terminal that can send and receive batch files to and from the host.

And with PC/HASP, your PC instantly becomes a full-function HASP/RJE workstation that can support up to seven input and seven output multi-leaved job streams concurrently.

Capability to support your communications needs now. And in the future.

Because the DCP/88 supports bisync, SDLC, HDLC and async protocols, it is the only communications processor you'll ever have to buy.

Use it to connect your PC to an expanding network of IBM communications. Configure your system to meet virtually any communications need—without adding another piece of hardware. Or expense.

All of which makes the DCP/88 as practical as it is powerful.

The Persyst Coax/3278. Still another way to expand your IBM communications.

Here's another fast way to incorporate the PC into existing SNA or bisync data processing installations.

The Coax/3278. A single-slot expansion board that converts your PC into an IBM 3278 display terminal. And with its high-speed coaxial port, you can connect the PC directly to IBM 3274 or 3276 cluster controllers.

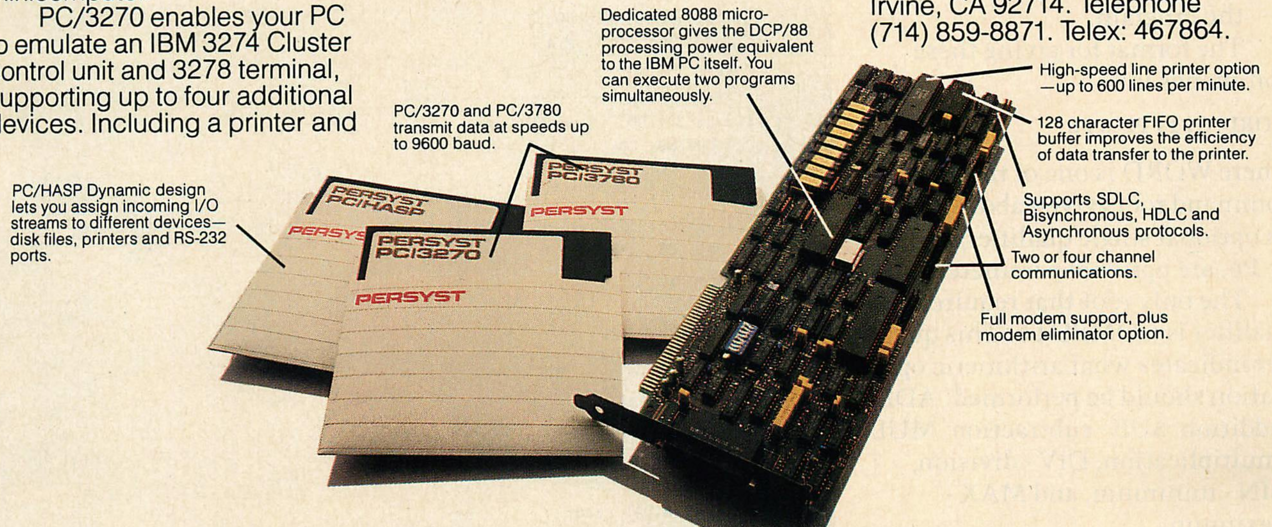
Sophisticated communications products for the corporate user. Insist on Persyst.

Persyst communications products are designed to make corporate information systems more powerful. And more efficient.

Write or call Persyst today for complete information.

PERSYST™

Persyst Products, Personal Systems Technology, Inc., 15801 Rockfield Blvd., Suite A, Irvine, CA 92714. Telephone (714) 859-8871. Telex: 467864.



THE DCP/88™ BY PERSYST.

CIRCLE NO. 184 ON READER SERVICE CARD

requires one of six qualifiers that determine the desired operation: ADD - addition, SUB - subtraction, MUL - multiplication, DIV - division, MIN - minimum, and MAX - maximum.

The Commands in Program UCL.BAS

The set of command roots and their principal uses in UCL.BAS are the following:

COMPUTE - Carry out arithmetic computations using two designated rows (or columns) and place the results in a third designated row (or column)

DISPLAY - Display on the terminal the content of a designated range of rows and/or a designated range of columns.

EXAMPLE - Provide examples of the precise format of the designated command.

GET - Get a table of numbers currently in the DATA statements of the program or in a designated file.

HELP - Provide brief information on the designated topic.

NEW - Prompt for getting a new table, or for changing designated current rows (or columns).

SAVE - Save the current table of values in a format suitable for subsequent retrieval with the command GET.

STOP - Terminate the running of the program.

The format for giving these commands is

WORD/Q1 P1 P2 ... Pn

where WORD is one of the eight command roots given above, Q1 is an optional single qualifier, and P1, ..., Pn, are optional parameters.

The only root that requires a qualifier is COMPUTE. This qualifier indicates what arithmetic operation should be performed: ADD - addition, SUB - subtraction, MUL - multiplication, DIV - division, MIN - minimum, and MAX - maximum.

Figure 4:

The Commands GET, DISPLAY, COMPUTE, and SAVE (Set A)

```
[3] 05-22-1983 15:58:09                                          [3]
UCL? GET A
Data set A ready
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[4] 05-22-1983 15:58:15                                          [4]
UCL? DIS ALL

Data set = A  Rows = 3  Cols = 5  Title = Stores and items

   Col   1       2       3       5
Row
  1     20      35      12      59
  2      8      20       4      60
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[5] 05-22-1983 15:58:30                                          [5]
UCL? COM/ADD ROW 1,2,5
 Done
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[6] 05-22-1983 15:58:56                                          [6]
UCL? DIS,ROW 5

   Col   1       2       3       5
Row
  5     28      55      16     119
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[7] 05-22-1983 15:59:10                                          [7]
UCL? SAVE A.DAT
Data set A.DAT ready
```

Figure 5:

The Commands GET, DISPLAY, COMPUTE, and SAVE (Set B)

```
[8] 05-22-1983 15:59:33                                          [8]
UCL? GET B
 Data set B ready
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[9] 05-22-1983 15:59:41                                          [9]
UCL? DIS ALL
Data set = B  Rows = 4  Cols = 3  Title = Quantity, cost, price

   Col   1       2       3
Row
  1      3       4       7
  2      6      12.50   18
  3      3      25.35   35.75
  4     12      15      28.15
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[10] 05-22-1983 15:59:50                                        [10]
UCL? COM/MUL COL 1,2 4
 Done
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[11] 05-22-1983 16:00:21                                        [11]
UCL? COM/MUL COL 1,3 5
 Done
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[12] 05-22-1983 16:00:40                                        [12]
UCL? DIS COL 4-5

   Col   4       5
Row
  1     12      21
  2     75     108
  3     76.05  107.25
  4    180     337.80
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[13] 05-22-1983 16:00:57                                        [13]
UCL? SAVE B.DAT
 Data set B.DAT ready
```

Figure 6:
The Commands GET and DISPLAY (SETS A.DAT and B.DAT)

```
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[14] 05-22-1983 16:01:16                                        [14]
UCL? GET A.DAT

 Data set A.DAT ready
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[15] 05-22-1983 16:01:32                                        [15]
UCL? DIS ALL

Data set = A.DAT  Rows = 5  Cols = 5  Title = Stores and items

   Col   1      2      3      5
Row
  1     20     35     12     59
  2      8     20      4     60
  5     28     55     16    119
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[16] 05-22-1983 16:01:42                                        [16]
UCL? GET B.DAT

 Data set B.DAT ready
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[17] 05-22-1983 16:02:06                                        [17]
UCL? DIS ALL

Data set = B.DAT  Rows = 4  Cols = 5  Title = Quantity, cost, price

   Col   1      2      3      4      5
Row
  1      3      4      7     12     21
  2      6     12.50  18     75    108
  3      3     25.35  35.75  76.05 107.25
  4     12     15     28.15 180    337.80
---------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Figure 7:
The Commands NEW, FORMAT, COMPUTE, DISPLAY, and STOP

```
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[18] 05-22-1983 16:02:17                                        [18]
UCL? NEW,FOR "###,###.##"

 ###,###.## noted
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[19] 05-22-1983 16:02:45                                        [19]
UCL? COM/MUL COL 4,5 6

 Done
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[20] 05-22-1983 16:03:05                                        [20]
UCL? DIS COL 4-6

   Col       4          5          6
Row
  1         12         21        252
  2         75        108      8,100
  3         76.05     107.25   8,156.36
  4        180        337.80  60,804.00
---------------------------------------------------------------------
[21] 05-22-1983 16:03:10                                        [21]
UCL? STOP
---------------------------------------------------------------------
```

The number of parameters varies from command to command. COMPUTE requires four parameters; DISPLAY and NEW need one to four; EXAMPLE, HELP, and STOP may be used without parameters or with one parameter; and GET and SAVE need one parameter. The command EXAMPLE ALL gives examples of all command formats, exactly as the program expects them. It should be noted that parameters may be separated either by spaces or by commas, and that single or double quotation marks may be used when a space or a comma is part of a single parameter.

The following notation and conventions apply to program UCL.BAS.

The Table of Numbers - The value of the element of row R and column C is V(R,C). Rows range from 0 to R9 and the columns from 0 to C9.

Arithmetic Operations - When a command is given for computations involving rows R1 and R2, and the result to be put in row R3, then the program computes

V(R3,C) = V(R1,C) @ V(R2,C) for C = 1 to C9,

where @ depends on the designated qualifier (e.g., @ is + for ADD, it is * for MUL, and is the minimum operation for MIN). Similarly, for columns C1, C2, and C3 the computation is

V(R,C3) = V(R,C1) @ V(R,C2) for R = 1 to R9.

Row 0 and Column 0 - These are used only when the command DISPLAY is given. If V(R,0) equals zero, then the values V(R,C) are not displayed for all designated columns. That is, in this case the values of row R are not displayed. Similarly, if V(0,C) is zero, then the values in column C are not displayed.

Printing Format of Numbers - When values are displayed then integers are given without decimal points. Non-integers are displayed

Figure 8: File B. DAT

```
"B.DAT",4,5,"Quantity, cost, price"
1,1,1,1,1,1
1,3,4,7,12,21
1,6,12.5,18,75,108
1,3,25.35,35.75,76.05,107.25
1,12,15,28.15,180,337.8
```

Figure 9: Early Section of UCL.BAS

```
405 CO$="    COM DIS EXA GET HEL NEW SAV STO"
415 PO$="    ELE ROW COL ALL FOR"
425 FO$="###,###.######"
426 F1$="####.##"
427 F2$="####   "
```

Figure 10: Middle Section of UCL.BAS

```
  1015 ON 1+CO GOTO 900,1300,2700,1800,2000,1800,1200,2070,9999
  1020 REM          UCL COM  DIS  EXA  GET  HEL  NEW  SAV  STO

Since CO equals 6, the following statements are executed:

      1200 PO=INSTR(PO$," "+LEFT$(C$(2),3))/4
      1205 ON 1+PO GOTO 900,2100,2200,2300,2400,2600
      1210 REM          UCL ELE  ROW  COL  ALL  FOR

At this point, then, UCL.BAS proceeds to
      2600 T$=C$(3)
      2605 IF INSTR(FO$,T$)=0 THEN M$="Bad format" : GOTO 900
      2610 F1$=T$ : F2$=T$ : J=INSTR(T$,".")
      2615 IF J>0 THEN F2$=LEFT$(F1$,J-1)+SPACE$(LEN(F1$)-J+1)
      2620 M$=T$+" noted" : GOTO 900
```

according to a format specified by the user. Initially, the format (which is used by PRINT USING) is "####.##".

Illustrative Inputs and Outputs

Figures 3 to 8 give illustrations of several commands used in program UCL.BAS, and of the corresponding responses. All commands given are legal commands, otherwise the response is usually "Bad UCL".

Before prompting the user for a command, the program prints a panel number, a date, and the current time. In figures 3 to 7 we duplicated the panel number and added a dividing line between panels. These are not part of the output - they are provided only as an aid to the reader.

Panels [1] and [2] in figure 3 illustrate the commands HELP and EXAMPLE. In the examples note the use of the space character and the comma as separators. Also note the use of the quotation marks in the command NEW FOR "#,###.##". In the absence of these quotation marks, the command would have been interpreted as having four strings instead of the intended three.

Figure 4 shows several commands associated with data set A, which is in the DATA statements of UCL.BAS. Note that the elements in row 3 and in column 4 are not displayed, because V(3,0) and V(0,4) are both zero. The command in panel [5] causes the addition of the values in rows 1 and 2, and placement of the results in row 5, as can be verified in panel [6]. Finally, the new table of values is stored in file A.DAT (panel [7]).

Panels [8] to [13] of figure 5 deal with data set B, which is also in the DATA statements of UCL.BAS. Note how the values are printed in panels [9] and [12] - integers are printed without decimal points, and non-integers are printed with two digits after the decimal point. The multiplication of the respective columns can easily be verified (panels [9] to [12]).

The purpose of the illustrations in figure 6 is to show that the data stored earlier are correctly retrieved. Note the following convention used in UCL.BAS for the GET command: If the parameter does not include a period (.), then the set is assumed to be in DATA statements; but if a period is included, then the parameter signifies the name of a disk file. Incidentally, the content of the file B.DAT is given in figure 8.

In figure 7 we show how one can change the format for displaying numbers. Note that 76.05 * 107.25 equals 8156.3625 but is displayed as 8,156.36 because of the format specified in panel [18].

Some Coding Methods in UCL.BAS

A number of coding methods used in program UCL.BAS, described below, show how the program interprets the commands given by the user.

The user's command in panel [18] of figure 7 will be used as an illustrative example. In this panel the command is

NEW,FOR "###,###.##"

Using David Naddor's parsing algorithm UCL.BAS ascertains the values: C$(1) = "NEW",C$(2) = "FOR", and C$(3) = "###,###.##".

String constants are defined in an early section of UCL.BAS, as seen in figure 9. Where CO$ contains the command roots, PO$ contains parameter words, FO$ is for checking formats, F2$ is the initial format for integer values, while F1$ is for non-integers. After the user gives his command, the statement

1010 CO = INSTR9CO$," " + LEFT$(C$(1),3))/4

returns the value 6 for CO, which is used in the next step, shown in figure 10.

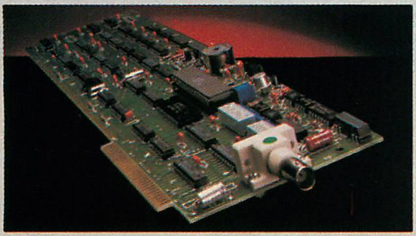
The T$ shown in figure 10 is a temporary variable which that "###,###.##". Because this string is within F0$, it is a legal format. Otherwise the user would have received the message "Bad format." Next a check is made to determine whether the desired format contains a period. If it doesn't, then both F1$ and F2$ are equated to T$. Otherwise (as in our example) F2$

Share and share alike.

With SCS PCnet™... a true, low-cost network for IBM Personal Computers.

Share and grow with PCnet from Santa Clara Systems . . . the true local area network for the IBM Personal Computer (PC) and its MS-DOS operating System. PCnet allows the sharing of hard disks, floppy disks, letter-quality printers, modems, and internal memory by all networked PCs. So you can add new dimensions of capability to your system while reducing your per station costs!

True network news
With its proprietary, on-board intelligence, PCnet permits direct communication between all PCs in your network. If one goes down, the others don't. Unlike other network products, a dedicated disk server is not necessary, saving you money. In fact, no extra hardware is required to add more stations; just one PCnet board for each and you're set. Plus, PCnet is transparent to all IBM and compatible software.



Service for thousands
You have plenty of room to grow. And, as you add more users, your peripheral resource power and memory capacity increase linearly. For all that it offers, PCnet is surprisingly easy to install. Just plug a PCnet board into an I/O slot of each IBM PC you want to include in your network. Then tap into the standard coaxial cable—offered in lengths of more than one mile with PCnet!

The extras you'll like
You'll appreciate the specialized network utilities available with PCnet. Like print spooling, multi-tasking, and file-locking. Plus the ability to communicate with IBM PC look-alikes. In addition, the Pascal Bubble™ is supported under MS DOS.

Full customer support
Only Santa Clara Systems offers you worldwide support with PCnet. A full 90-day warranty. *And a complete line of hard-disk storage products tailor made for use with the PCnet,* featuring up to a ½ gigabyte of storage per PC and removable Winchester cartridges for backup.

See the difference sharing can make in your business. Our starter kit has everything you need to network two PCs right away—two PCnet boards, cable, and documentation. For more information, call or write us today!

Santa Clara Systems, Inc.

1860 Hartog Dr., San Jose, CA 95131
(408) 287-4640 / Telex: 176309 SCS SNJ

PCnet is a registered trademark of Orchid Technology
Pascal Bubble is a registered trademark of DATALEX

CIRCLE NO. 197 ON READER SERVICE CARD

is given the appropriate integer format.

And here is the coding for printing some value V (as in panel [20] of figure 7) which uses the formats F1$ and F2$:

```
2760 IF V=INT(V) THEN T$=F2$ ELSE T$=F1$
2762 PRINT USING T$;V;
```

Structure of Program UCL.BAS

The line numbers used in the coding discussed here follow a special structure, which I have found useful in many applications. It can be seen in the program UCL.BAS, which follows this article. The program listing is only a summary. The xxx stands for ADD, SUB, etc. More details on this structure and its application in a variety of diverse areas is the subject of another article.

LISTING UCL.BAS

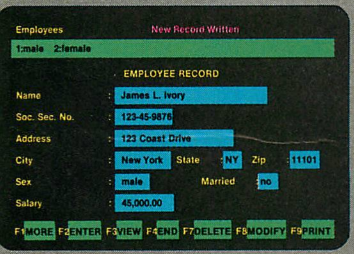
Start	Command	Purpose
100		Preliminaries
200		User function
300		Dimensions
400		String constants
900		Message via M$
1000		User command
1200	NEW	New data or change in data
1300	COMPUTE	Arithmetic computations
1700	HELP	Brief helpful information
1800	EXAMPLE	Examples of commands
2000	GET	Get data set
2070	SAVE	Save data set
2100	NEW ELEMENT	Prompt for new value(s) of element(s)
2200	NEW ROW	Prompt for new values of row(s)
2300	NEW COLUMN	Prompt for new values of column(s)
2400	NEW ALL	Prompt for a new data set
2600	NEW FORMAT	Change format
2700	DISPLAY	Display value(s) of data
3100	COM/xxx ROW	Do type xxx computations on rows
3200	COM/xxx COLUMN	Do type xxx computations on columns
9400		Extract qualifier
9600		Parsing algorithm
9700		Panel, date, and time
9800		Error routine
9900		DATA statements
9999	STOP	Terminate running or chain

DATAEASE™

The Complete System To Organize Your Business The Way You Want It

You can start using it in minutes, and within hours have a complete application.

It is Easy to Use:



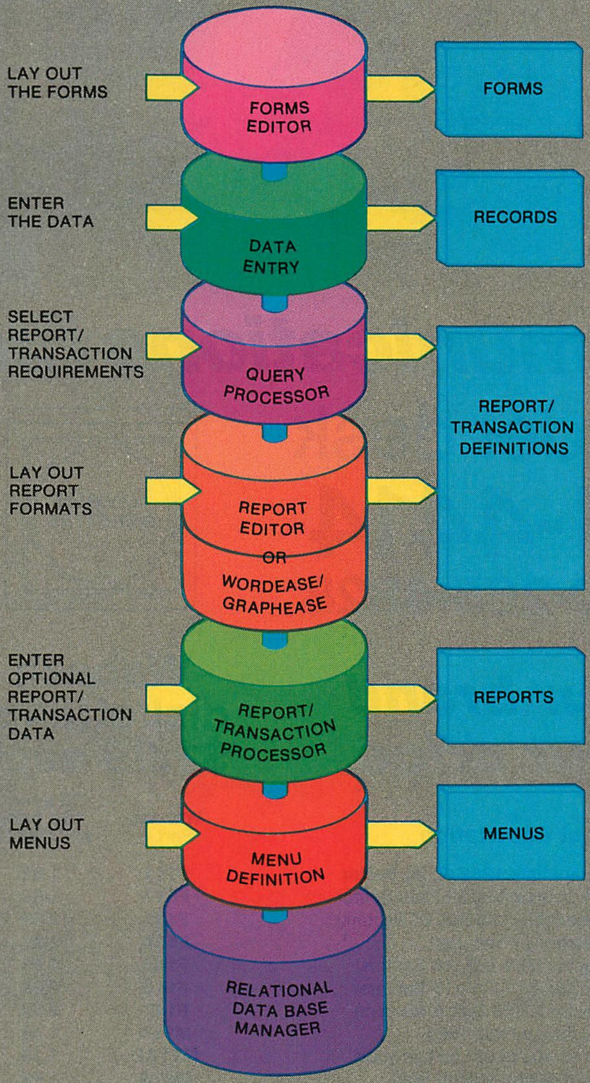
- Fully menu driven to remove the guesswork.
- Full use of function keys with the assignments always displayed. All cursor movement and editing functions on the keyboard are supported.
- Provides full color support and screen style customization.

System Features:

- A list of users can be kept, with passwords and security levels.
- The print style is customizable.
- Data can be interchanged with mainframe computers, other data bases or spreadsheet programs.
- Data base back-up and restore functions are integrated to reduce errors.

System Requirements:

- Available on IBM-PC, DEC Rainbow, TI Professional, Victor 9000, and other 16 bit computers.
- Supports floppy or hard disk drives.
- Supports all popular printers.



It Provides A Complete Range of Features:

- Lay out your forms on the screen. Define data-entry fields anywhere by answering simple questions. Revise the forms any time without losing data.
- Easy, fast and accurate way to fill-in the forms and enter, view or revise records.
- The reports or transactions requirements are defined in the English-like query language by answering simple questions. Select records any number of ways, combine any number of forms per report, perform calculations, get totals, sub-totals, or statistical summary. For complete transaction processing, delete, modify or enter records.
- Reports are automatically formatted in several ways, or specify your own format using the Report Editor.
- To format a report complete with text, data, and graphs; use the optional WORDEASE™ word-processor or the GRAPHEASE™ graphics facility.
- Display or print the report output, or take it to your spreadsheet, word processing, or graphics programs.
- Organize the access to your forms and reports by setting up your own menus.
- The underlying Relational Data Base Manager provides efficient storage and retrieval of records. It uses B-tree indices for efficient accessing of records, and cache memory to retain the most recently used disk sectors to reduce disk access by 50 percent.

These are Some of the DATAEASE Applications:

Inventory Control	Accounting	Medical Office Systems	Social Sciences
Personnel Management	Order Processing	Real Estate	Bibliography
Job Accounting	Market Analysis	Agriculture	Library Management
Mailing List	Financial Portfolio	Distribution Management	School Records

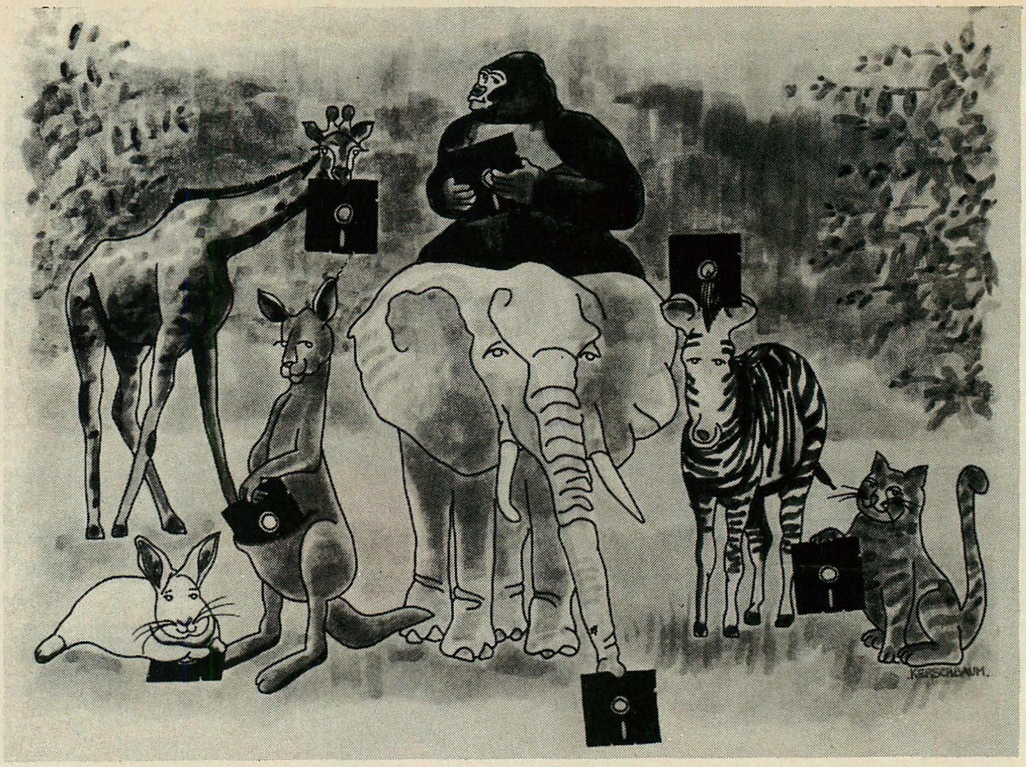
Software Solutions, Inc.

305 Bic Drive, Milford, CT 06460 • (203)877-9268 • (800)243-5123

For information, please write or call. Dealer inquiries welcome.

Diskette Users...

When you've heard from all the animals in the diskette zoo, but you need fast delivery and high quality diskettes...

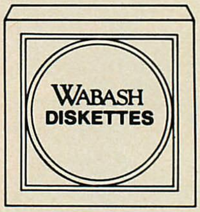


Call Communications Electronics

Diskette order desk

800-521-4414

In Canada 800-265-4828



Choose your brand
Choose your price

Wabash diskettes for as low as **$1.29 each**

Ultra diskettes for as low as **$1.39 each**

Product Description	Wabash Part #	CE quant. 100 price per disk ($)	Ultra Part #	CE quant. 100 price per disk ($)
8" SSSD IBM Compatible 128B/S, 26 Sector	F111	1.89	81726	1.99
8" SSSD Shugart Compatible, 32 Hard Sector	F31A	1.89	———	———
8" SSDD IBM Compatible (128 B/S, 26 Sectors)	F131	2.39	81701	2.49
8" DSDD Soft Sector (Unformated)	F14A	2.99	82701	3.19
8" DSDD Soft Sector (256 B/S, 26 Sectors)	F144	2.99	———	———
8" DSDD Soft Sector (512 B/S, 15 Sectors)	F145	2.99	———	———
8" DSDD Soft Sector (1024 B/S, 8 Sectors)	F147	2.99	82708	3.19
5¼" SSSD Soft Sector w/Hub Ring	M11A	1.49	50001	1.79
5¼" SSSD Same as above but bulk product	M11AB	1.29	00153	1.39
5¼" SSSD 10 Hard Sector w/Hub Ring	M41A	1.49	50010	1.79
5¼" SSSD 16 Hard Sector w/Hub Ring	M51A	1.49	50016	1.79
5¼" SSDD Soft Sector w/Hub Ring	M13A	1.79	51401	1.89
5¼" SSDD Same as above, but bulk product	M13AB	1.59	00096	1.59
5¼" SSDD Soft Sector Flippy (use both sides)	M18A	2.69	———	———
5¼" SSDD 10 Hard Sector w/Hub Ring	M43A	1.79	51410	1.89
5¼" SSDD 16 Hard Sector w/Hub Ring	M53A	1.79	51416	1.89
5¼" DSDD Soft Sector w/Hub Ring	M14A	2.69	52401	2.79
5¼" DSDD Same as above, but bulk product	M14AB	2.49	00140	2.49
5¼" DSDD 10 Hard Sector w/Hub Ring	M44A	2.69	52410	2.79
5¼" DSDD 16 Hard Sector w/Hub Ring	M54A	2.69	52416	2.79
5¼" SSDD Soft Sector w/Hub Ring (96 TPI)	M15A	2.59	51801	2.59
5¼" DSDD Soft Sector w/Hub Ring (96 TPI)	M16A	3.69	52801	3.69
5¼" Fileware Diskette for Apple® Lisa Computer	———	———	———	———

For more information about this brand call:

6 year warranty
For more info on Wabash call
800-323-9868
In Illinois 312-593-6363

Lifetime warranty except bulk
For more info on Ultra call
408-728-7777
Monday-Friday 9 am-4 pm PT

CE...your best source for diskettes

For you the diskette buyer, it's a jungle out there. There are so many different brands to choose from, you need to go on a safari to find a good brand at a reasonable cost. Fortunately, CE has already hunted for the best diskettes and offers you an excellent choice at a CE price. To save you even more, CE also offers bulk product where 100 diskettes are packed in the same box without envelopes or labels. Since we save packaging costs, these savings are passed on to you. Diskette envelopes are also available from CE.

Other Useful Computer Accessories

When the read/write heads on your computer are dirty, that can cause you a lot of grief. Now...with CE **Head Cleaning Diskettes**, you can clean the read/write heads on the diskette drives yourself in just 30 seconds. Each kit contains two head cleaning diskettes, and enough solution for 30 cleanings. Order # 5-CLE for 5¼" drives and order # 8-CLE is for 8" drives. Only $25.00 each. Also available from CE are **3M data cartridges**. The DC100A data cartridge is a small version of the DC300A data cartridge. The DC100A contains 140 feet of 0.150" tape in a package measuring 2.4 x 3.2 x 0.5 inches. Cost is $14.00 each. The DC300A is a pre-loaded tape cartridge containing 300 feet of one mil thick by ¼" computer tape. The DC300A costs $18.00 each. The DC300XL is an extra length data cartridge with 450 feet of tape. It is the same size and interchangeable with the DC300A. The DC300XL provides a total storage capacity of 34.5 million bits at 1600 BPI. The cost of the DC300XL is $22.00 each. If you need **extra mini-diskette envelopes**, CE sells super strong and tear resistant Tyvek® envelopes for $12.00 per 100 pack. Use order # TE-5 for a 100 pack of 5¼" diskette envelopes. **Smith-Corona TP-1 letter quality printers** are available in serial or parallel versions for only $529.00 each.

Quantity Discounts Available

Our diskettes are packed 10 disks to a carton and 5 or 10 cartons to a case. The economy bulk pack is packaged 100 disks to a case without envelopes or labels. Please order only in increments of 100 units for quantity 100 pricing. With the exception of bulk pack, we are also willing to accommodate your smaller orders. Quantities less than 100 units are available in increments of 10 units at a 20% surcharge above our 100 unit price. **Quantity discounts** are also available. Order 300 or more disks at the same time and deduct 1%; 500 or more saves you 2%; 1,000 or more saves 3%; 2,000 or more saves 4%; 5,000 or more saves 5%; 10,000 or more saves 6%; 50,000 or more saves 7%, 100,000 or more saves 8%, 500,000 or more saves 9% and 1,000,000 or more disks earns you a 10% discount off our super low quantity 100 price. Almost all our diskettes are immediately available from CE. Our efficient warehouse facilities are equipped to help us get you the quality product you need, when you need it. If you need further assistance to find the flexible diskette that's right for you, call the appropriate manufacturers compatibility hotline telephone number listed at the bottom of this ad. **Dealer inquiries invited.**

Buy your diskettes from CE with confidence

To get the fastest delivery from CE of your computer products, we recommend you phone your order directly to our Computer Products Division and charge it to your credit card. Be sure to calculate your price using the CE prices in this ad. Written purchase orders are accepted from approved government agencies and most well rated firms at a 30% surcharge for net 30 billing. For maximum savings, your order should be prepaid. All sales are subject to availability, acceptance and verification. All sales are final. All prices are in U.S. dollars. Prices, terms and specifications are subject to change without notice. Out of stock items will be placed on backorder automatically unless CE is instructed differently. Minimum *prepaid* order is $50.00. Minimum *purchase order* $200.00. All shipments are F.O.B. CE warehouse. No COD's. Non-certified and foreign checks require bank clearance.

For **shipping charges** add $8.00 per 100 diskettes and/or any fraction of 100 8-inch diskettes, or $6.00 per 100 diskettes and/or any fraction of 100 5¼-inch mini-diskettes. For cleaning kits, add $3.00 per kit. For tape data cartridges, add $1.00 per cartridge. For envelopes, add $3.00 per pack of 100 envelopes. For printers add $20.00 each for U.P.S. ground shipping and handling in the continental U.S. For Canada, Puerto Rico, Hawaii, Alaska, or APO/FPO delivery, shipping charges are *three* times continental U.S. rates.

Mail orders to: Communications Electronics, Box 1002, Ann Arbor, Michigan 48106 U.S.A. If you have a Visa or Master Card, you may call and place a credit card order. Order toll-free in the U.S. Dial 800-521-4414. In Canada, order toll-free by calling 800-265-4828. If you are outside the U.S. or in Michigan dial 313-973-8888. Telex anytime 810-223-2422. Order today.

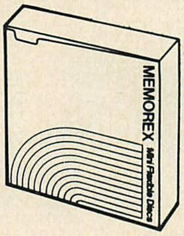
 Ad #102783

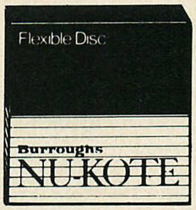
COMMUNICATIONS ELECTRONICS™

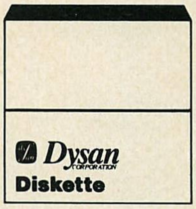
Computer Products Division

818 Phoenix □ Box 1002 □ Ann Arbor, Michigan 48106 U.S.A.
Call TOLL-FREE 800-521-4414 or outside U.S.A. 313-973-8888

MasterCard VISA







3M diskettes for as low as $1.94 each

3M Part #	CE quant. 100 price per disk ($)
8SSSD	1.94
8SSSD-32	1.94
8SSDD	2.49
8DSDD	3.14
——	——
——	——
8DSDD-1024	3.14
——	——
——	——
——	——
——	——
5SSDD-RH	1.94
——	——
——	——
5SSDD-10RH	1.94
5SSDD-16RH	1.94
5DSDD-RH	2.69
——	——
5DSDD-10RH	2.69
5DSDD-16RH	2.69
5SSDD-96RH	2.79
5DSDD-96RH	3.74
5APPLE-FW	4.34

Lifetime warranty
For more info on 3M call
800-328-9438
In Minnesota 612-736-9524

Memorex diskettes for as low as $1.94 each

Memorex Part #	CE quant. 100 price per disk ($)
3062	1.94
3015	1.94
3090	2.49
3102	3.14
——	——
——	——
3104	3.14
——	——
——	——
——	——
——	——
3481	1.94
——	——
——	——
——	——
——	——
3491	2.69
——	——
——	——
——	——
——	——
3501	3.74
——	——

5 year warranty
For more info on Memorex call
800-538-8080
In California 800-672-3525

Burroughs diskettes for as low as $2.09 each

Burroughs Part #	CE quant. 100 price per disk ($)
FD-101	2.09
FD-105	2.09
FD-108	2.64
FD-109	3.29
FD-110	3.29
FD-111	3.29
FD-112	3.29
——	——
——	——
——	——
——	——
MFD-11	2.09
——	——
——	——
MFD-12	2.09
MFD-13	2.09
MFD-14	2.84
——	——
MFD-15	2.84
MFD-16	2.84
MFD-20	2.94
MFD-23	3.89
——	——

1 year warranty
For more info on Burroughs call
800-448-1422
Monday-Friday 9am-4pm ET

Dysan diskettes for as low as $2.99 each

Dysan Part #	CE quant. 100 price per disk ($)
800501	2.99
800618	2.99
800605	3.89
800803	4.59
——	——
——	——
800839	4.59
801184	2.99
——	——
801186	2.99
801185	2.99
801187	3.19
——	——
——	——
801014	3.19
801188	3.19
802060	3.89
——	——
802062	3.89
802061	3.89
800439	3.89
802067	4.49
——	——

1 year warranty
For more info on Dysan call
800-552-2211
In California 408-970-6096

CIRCLE NO. 252 ON READER SERVICE CARD

An Inside Look at Microsoft Basic on the IBM PC

Knowing how BASIC does what you tell it to do will help you write faster BASIC programs and build powerful programming tools.

ROBERT METZGER

Everyone likes to get the inside story on an interesting subject. BASIC users are no exception. While this article won't present stolen documents from IBM or MicroSoft, it will present the fruits of careful detective work. If you're interested in knowing how BASIC does what you tell it to, read on. Not only will you satisfy your curiosity, you'll learn how to write faster BASIC programs and build powerful programming tools as well. And if you are looking for a real scoop, you will find the very first announcement of four features that probably will be in the next release of MicroSoft BASIC on the IBM PC.

What is BASIC? It's a family of related programming languages. The version used on the IBM PC is just one of many BASIC dialects. How do you use BASIC? You must have your BASIC program translated from the version of BASIC you are using into instructions that your machine can execute. In the case of the IBM PC, that means the machine language of the Intel 8088 processor. This article explains how one BASIC-to-8088 translator works.

COMPILERS VERSUS INTERPRETERS

There are two kinds of programs that translate from one programming language to another: compilers and interpreters. Actually, today's pure compilers and pure interpreters are endangered species. Many translators are hybrids, either mostly compiler or mostly interpreter. IBM provides both an interpreter and a compiler for BASIC on the PC. In this article we will explore how the BASIC interpreter works.

The difference between an interpreter and a compiler is that, al-

Robert Metzger is education manager for the mainframe software vendor, I.P. Sharp Associates in Rochester, NY. He has a bachelor's degree in mathematics and a master's degree in theology.


IBM
Personal Computer

though they both translate your BASIC program into 8088 machine code, an interpreter takes one statement at a time, translates it, and executes it, while a compiler translates all of the statements at once.

Interpreters and compilers each have advantages and disadvantages. When a program line is not often executed, compiling is no more efficient than interpreting. On the other hand, if the same program line is executed over and over, the total number of machine instructions is minimized by compiling. The reason that compiled code runs faster is that the repetitive translation is eliminated.

The main purpose of the lexical scan is to break up the text into "atoms" or "tokens." A token can be a keyword (like PRINT), a number (like 123), and so on. Tokens are groups of characters that form a logical unit.

Interpreters have two other major advantages. They are a lot easier to write than compilers. This fact is reflected in the difference in prices IBM charges for the BASIC interpreter and compiler. The best reason to use an interpreter is that it makes program development much easier.

How Basic Executes Statements

As explained above, the BASIC interpreter translates one statement at a time and then executes it. Actually, the translation is done in two steps. When you type in a program, preliminary processing is done to make the actual translation process run faster. This preliminary work is often called the "lexical scan" (the root lex refers to words, and this scan looks for words).

How do we know that Microsoft BASIC does a lexical scan? If we use PEEK to display a program text that is stored in memory, it does not look like what you have typed in. The variable names and remarks are there, but just about everything else is changed. More about this later.

The main purpose of the lexical scan is to break up the text into "atoms" or "tokens." A token can be a keyword (like PRINT), a number (like 123), and so on. Tokens are groups of characters that form a logical unit.

After you have typed a line, the computer goes through your entry character by character from left to right. When a word is found, it is looked up in a table to determine whether it is a keyword. If it is, it is replaced with a special byte. If a number is found, the interpreter determines whether it is an integer, single-precision, or double-precision number and converts it to the internal representation of that form. Many interpreters place variable names in a special table, and replace the name in the text with a pointer to the table. The PC interpreter leaves variable names alone and stores them directly with the value of the variable when it is assigned.

The lexical scan uses a technique known as "transition diagrams" or "finite state machines" to analyze the text. The difference between the two is mostly whether you like to draw tables or networks. I will discuss finite state machines, but the same principles apply if you draw diagrams.

Figure 1: Sample Finite State Machine to Scan Numbers

INPUTS	STATES Start	Whole	Part	Sign	Power	Nosign	Constant
digit	whole	whole	part	whole	power	ERROR	constant
.	part	part	ERROR	part	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR
+ -	sign	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR
D E	ERROR	power	power	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR
% ! #	ERROR	OK	OK	ERROR	OK	ERROR	ERROR
&	Nosign	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR
H O	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR	constant	ERROR
end	ERROR	OK	OK	ERROR	OK	ERROR	OK

The initial state is Start. If the string "-12.34E6" is analyzed using this table, the process will go as follows.

STATE	INPUT	NEW STATE
Start	-	Sign
Sign	1	Whole
Whole	2	Whole
Whole	.	Part
Part	3	Part
Part	4	Part
Part	E	Power
Power	6	Power
Power	END	OK

The technique is both simple and powerful. The computation is represented by a table in which the rows refer to classes of inputs characters, and the columns refer to states. The computation begins in a pre-defined initial state. It processes inputs one at a time by selecting the position in the table corresponding to the current state and the new input. That position in the table will specify what state to go to next, and what action to take, if any. If the diagram approach is used, the inputs are nodes, the state changes are arcs, and actions can be associated with the arcs.

The finite state machine shown in figure 1 will correctly analyze strings that represent numeric constants. The entire lexical scan table is, of course, much bigger.

When you have finished typing your program, you are ready to run it. Now the interpreter will make a syntax analysis pass through each line as it is executed. Lines that are not executed do not go through syntax analysis, and those that are executed more than once go through it every time they are executed. Once again the interpeter goes through the text of the line (now in internal form) byte by byte, from left to right. When the syntax analyzer finds an operation to perform (like adding two numbers), it calls a subroutine to do the work. This is quite different from a compiler, which usually generates actual machine instructions as it identifies operations. But because most compilers are actually hybrids, some operations are set up as subroutine calls to the run-time library of standard subroutines.

It would be possible to disassemble the machine code of the BASIC interpreter, and reconstruct the exact finite state machines or tran-

sition diagrams used for lexical and syntax analysis. But because the practical benefits of such an analysis are hard to see, the remainder of this article concentrates on areas that can be applied to constructing programs.

How Data Is Stored

Now we need to look at how things are actually stored by BASIC. The architecture of the 8088 processor divides memory up into 64K segments. The interpreter is in one segment, your program in another. The implementers of this BASIC chose to use these limits as a part of the design of their program. This is the reason that BASIC can't make use of more than 64K of RAM, regardless of much memory you actually have on your machine.

Within the segment devoted to your program, are seven areas:
1) *interpreter work area,*
2) *actual program text,*
3) *scalar variables,*
4) *array variables,*
5) *free space,*
6) *string space,*
7) *execution stack.*

We will discuss each of these in turn, leaving program storage for last, as it is the most complicated.

The interpreter work area, shown in figure 2, contains a lot of miscellaneous data needed for the intepreter to operate. Some of the values it contains are listed below.

Figure 2: Interpreter Work Area

	OFFSET	LENGTH
Line number currently being executed	02E	2
Line number of last error	347	2
Keyboard buffer empty?	06A	1
Random seed	F79	2

The interpreter work area (see figure 3) also contains pointers that define the start and end of all other areas. To see the actual values of these pointers (which change during program execution), you can use the function
DEF FNPTR(X) = PEEK(X) + 256∗PEEK(X + 1).
For example, PRINT FNPTR (&H30) shows the location of the beginning of the program text.

Figure 3: Pointers in the Interpreter Work Area

Pointer Stored at	Points to
030 (HEX)	start of program text
356	end of program text
358	start of scalar variables
35A	start of array variables
35C	start of free space
32F	end of string space
30A	start of string space
02C	end of execution stack
	(start of execution stack is always the highest memory location in BASIC's segment, unless altered by CLEAR)

The scalar area contains all variables without dimensions. The variables are stored in the order that they are assigned. The first to be assigned is at the beginning of the scalar area, the last to be assigned is at the end. The amount of space used by the variable depends on its data type and the length of its name.

Figure 4: Fields in a Scalar

Field Size in Bytes	Contents of Field
1	Data Type
2	First two letters of name
1	Count of additional letters in name
0 to 38	Remaining letters in name
2 to 8	Value of variables Integer - 2 bytes String - 3 bytes Single - 4 bytes Double - 8 bytes

The first three fields in a scalar entry (figure 4) have the same length, regardless of the data type and name. The data type byte is the same as the number of bytes needed to represent the value, i.e., data type 2 is integer.

How are the data values represented? Integers are stored with the less significant byte at the lower address. Fifteen bits are used to store the number, and one is used to store the sign.

Strings are not actually stored in the scalar area. Instead, one byte indicates the length of the string, and two bytes are used to point to the value of the string in the string space. Because only one byte is used to store the string length, strings can only be up to 255 characters long.

Single and double precision floating point numbers have essentially the same format, although double precision allows more digits to be represented. The exponent of the floating point number is stored at the highest (right-most) address. The exponent is stored as an unsigned integer ranging from 0 to 255. To get the actual exponent, subtract 128. The fraction is stored with the bytes of least significance at the lowest (right-most) address. The sign of the fraction is the leftmost bit in the right-most byte of the fraction. Twenty three bits are available in double precision.

The following example illustrates the way scalar variables are stored. Figure 5 shows a BASIC statement and the resulting scalar area after its execution. Note that the type indicator suffixes (i.e., per-

The architecture of the 8088 processor divides memory up into 64K segments. The interpreter is in one segment, your program in another. This is the reason that BASIC can't make use of more than 64K of RAM.

cent) are not stored in the scalar area, but rather in the program text. Also, the letters after the first two are stored as 128 plus their ASCII values.

The array variable comes immediately after the scalar variables area. This means that every time a new scalar is created, the entire array area has to be moved to make room. The values of the elements of an array are stored in the same way

Figure 5: Storage of Scalar Variables

The values are listed in hexadecimal, and are explained in the following diagram.

```
024100007B00 03424200035310
04434301C300007687 08444402C4C40000000000007687
```

Type	Name	Extra Letters	Rest of Name	Value	--or--	String Length	String Pointer
02 integer	4100 A	00		7B00			
03 string	4242 B B	00				03	5310
04 single	4343 C C	01	C3 C	00007687			
08 double	4444 D D	02	C4C4 D D	0000000000007687			

Figure 6: Array Variable

Field Size in Bytes	Contents of Field
1	Data type
2	First two letters of name
1	Count of additional letters in name
0 to 38	Remaining letters in name
2	Number of bytes use to store this array
1	Number of dimensions
2	Length of each dimension (2 bytes per dimension)

Figure 7: Beginning Memory Entry

Name	Type	Extra Letters	Bytes Stored	No. of Dims.	3rd Dim.	2nd Dim.	1st Dim.
4142 A B	02 int	00	7F00	03	0500	0400	0300

as those of scalars. But extra information must also be stored. Figure 6 shows the structure of an array.

The dimension lengths are stored backwards, i.e., from the right-most to the left-most. The elements follow the dimension lengths. They are stored in column major order. This means that all of the elements of a given column will be next to each other in memory. Then all of the columns of a given plane will be next to each other, and so on.

If we created an array with DIM AB%[3,4,5] and assigned it values, the beginning of its memory entry would look like figure 7.

While new scalar and array definitions reduce free space from the low address end of BASIC's memory segment, new string definitions reduce the free space from the opposite direction. Strings are added as they are used until all the free space is gone. Then BASIC attempts to create free space by removing all the strings that are no longer pointed to by scalar or array variables. This is what computer scientists commonly refer to as garbage collection.

The execution stack keeps track of subroutine calls and related matters, which put a process on hold. Use of GOSUB, FOR-NEXT, and PAINT will put entries on this stack. If the stack space is exhausted, the message OUT OF MEMORY is entered. Use the CLEAR statement to increase the size of the stack if necessary. The default size is 512 bytes.

How Programs Are Stored

Each program line begins with a delimiter byte. This is always an ASCII 0, except for the first line of the program. Here it is ASCII 255 (&HFF) if the program is not protected, and ASCII 254 (HFE) if it is protected. The remainder of a protected program is encrypted when it is on diskette, but follows the format described below when it is in memory. Following the delimiter byte comes a 2-byte integer, which points to the delimiter byte that starts the next statement. After the forward pointer comes the line number, also stored as a 2-byte integer. Both of these numbers are in the low-byte first, high-byte last order used by the 8088. The last part of the line is the statement text,

Figure 8: Changes Made in First Lexical Scan

1) Convert lower case letters to upper case.

2) Convert keyword names (like PRINT) to 1 byte tokens, including a prefix byte where necessary.

3) Convert symbolic operators (like + or =) to 1 byte tokens.

4) Convert numeric constants (like 1.234) to the proper internal representation, including a prefix byte where necessary. The following forms are used.

CONSTANTS	INTEGERS	FLOATING POINT
single decimal digit	line numbers	single precision
single byte	hex or octal	double precision
	decimal	

Figure 9: Commonly Used Initializations

```
10 DEFINT A-Z:DEF SEG:OPTION BASE 1
20 SCREEN 2:OUT &H985,12:KEY OFF:CLS
```

Hex	ASCII	Meaning	Hex	ASCII	Meaning
FF		start program	00		start line
5810		next line pointer	7410		next line pointer
0A00		line 10	1400		line 20
AD		token DEFINT	C8		token SCREEN
20	blank		20	blank	
41	A		13		number 2
EA		token -	3A	:	
5A	Z		9C		token OUT
3A	:		20	blank	
97		token DEF	0C		hex constant
20	blank		8509		985H
534547	SEG		2C	,	
3A	:		0F		1 byte number
B8		token OPTION	0C		12
20	blank		3A	:	
42415345	BASE		C9		token KEY
20	blank		20	blank	
49	1		DD		token OFF
			3A	:	
			C0		token CLS

Table 1: Internal Representation of BASIC Statements

Value	Meaning	Note
0-9,16,27,30	no meaning[a]	
10,13	Line Feed, New Line[a]	
11	prefix for 2 byte octal constant	
12	prefix for 2 byte hexadecimal constant	
14	prefix for 2 byte line number	
15	prefix for 1 byte decimal constant	
17-26	single decimal digit constant	
28	prefix for 2 byte integer	
29	prefix for 4 byte floating point	
31	prefix for 8 byte floating point	
32,44,58,59	delimiters: blank , : ;	
33,35-38	data type indicators: ! # $ % &	
34	quote begins string constants	
39	apostrophe[b]	
40,41,91,93	parentheses and brackets ( ) [ ]	
42,43,45,47, 60-62,92,94	arithemetic and comparison operators:[c] * + - / < = > \ ^	
46	period (in names only)	
48-57	digits: 0123456789[c]	
63,64,95,96, 123-127	unused characters:[d] ? @ _ ` { | } ~ delete	
65-90	upper case letters: A-Z	
97-122	lower case letters: a-z[d]	
128-255	keyword tokens and prefix bytes	

[a] *These will never occur in the internal representation.*

[b] *Apostrophe beginning a remark is converted to a colon followed by the REM keyword byte, but is still displayed as an apostrophe.*

[c] *These will only appear with this value in DATA statements, remarks, and string constants, and a few odd statements like OPTION.*

[d] *These can only occur in DATA statements, remarks, and string constants.*

Table 2: Cassette BASIC Commands, Statements, Keywords, Functions, Operators

			160	A0	WIDTH	192	C0	CLS	224	E0	
129	81	END	161	A1	ELSE	193	C1	MOTOR	225	E1	
130	82	FOR	162	A2	TRON	194	C2	BSAVE	226	E2	
131	83	NEXT	163	A3	TROFF	195	C3	BLOAD	227	E3	
132	84	DATA	164	A4	SWAP	196	C4	SOUND	228	E4	
133	85	INPUT	165	A5	ERASE	197	C5	BEEP	229	E5	
134	86	DIM	166	A6	EDIT	198	C6	PSET	230	E6	>
135	87	READ	167	A7	ERROR	199	C7	PRESET	231	E7	=
136	88	LET	168	A8	RESUME	200	C8	SCREEN	232	E8	<
137	89	GOTO	169	A9	DELETE	201	C9	KEY	233	E9	+
138	8A	RUN	170	AA	AUTO	202	CA	LOCATE	234	EA	-
139	8B	IF	171	AB	RENUM	203	CB		235	EB	*
140	8C	RESTORE	172	AC	DEFSTR	204	CC	TO	236	EC	/
141	8D	GOSUB	173	AD	DEFINT	205	CD	THEN	237	ED	^
142	8E	RETURN	174	AE	DEFSNG	206	CE	TAB(	238	EE	AND
143	8F	REM	175	AF	DEFDBL	207	CF	STEP	239	EF	OR
144	90	STOP	176	B0	LINE	208	D0	USR	240	F0	XOR
145	91	PRINT	177	B1	WHILE	209	D1	FN	241	F1	EQV
146	92	CLEAR	178	B2	WEND	210	D2	SPC(	242	F2	IMP
147	93	LIST	179	B3	CALL	211	D3	NOT	243	F3	MOD
148	94	NEW	180	B4		212	D4	ERL	244	F4	\
149	95	ON	181	B5		213	D5	ERR	245	F5	
150	96	WAIT	182	B6		214	D6	STRING$	246	F6	
151	97	DEF	183	B7	WRITE	215	D7	USING	247	F7	
152	98	POKE	184	B8	OPTION	216	D8	INSTR	248	F8	
153	99	CONT	185	B9	RANDOMIZE	217	D9	'	249	F9	
154	9A		186	BA	OPEN	218	DA	VARPTR	250	FA	
155	9B		187	BB	CLOSE	219	DB	CSRLIN	251	FB	
156	9C	OUT	188	BC	LOAD	220	DC	POINT	252	FC	
157	9D	LPRINT	189	BD	MERGE	221	DD	OFF	253	FD	***
158	9E	LLIST	190	BE	SAVE	222	DE	INKEY$	254	FE	***
159	9F		191	BF	COLOR	223	DF		255	FF	***

modified as described below.

When BASIC performs the first (lexical) scan of the line, it makes the changes shown in figure 8 to those portions of the text that are not part of a remark, a string constant, or a DATA statement. Table 1 lists the meaning of each possible ASCII value when it is found in the internal representation of a BASIC statement. Tables 2, 3, and 4 give the keyword interpretations of the one and two-byte tokens. The short program shown in figure 9 illustrates some commonly used initializations. Many of the features of program storage are demonstrated. The internal representation of the program is listed below it.

Table 3: Cassette BASIC Functions

129	81	LEFT$	142	9E	ATN	154	AA	HEX$
130	82	RIGHT$	143	9F	FRE	155	AB	LPOS
131	83	MID$	144	A0	INP	156	AC	CINT
132	84	SGN	145	A1	POS	157	AD	CSNG
133	85	INT	146	A2	LEN	158	AE	CDBL
134	86	ABS	147	A3	STR$	159	AF	FIX
135	87	SQR	148	A4	VAL	160	C0	PEN
136	88	RND	149	A5	ASC	161	C1	STICK
137	89	SIN	150	A6	CHR$	162	C2	STRIG
138	9A	LOG	151	A7	PEEK	163	C3	EOF
139	9B	EXP	152	A8	SPACE$	164	C4	LOC
140	9C	COS	153	A9	OCT$	165	C5	LOF
141	9D	TAN	154	AA	HEX$			

How to Investigate the Interpreter

How did I find the information presented in this article? It really wasn't very hard. I began by reading the documentation on the internals of BASIC provided by the IBM manuals. Pages i-2 through i-5 in the BASIC manual and page 3-23 of the technical reference provided some useful data on the way basic uses memory. I also reviewed two books on the subject so I would know what to be looking for. *Writing Interactive Compilers and Interpreters* by P. J. Brown (Wiley, 1979) was quite helpful. *Implementing BASICS* by William and Patricia Payne also provided useful information.

Next, I wrote a program that would dump a BASIC program stored on a diskette to a printer. What I needed to see were the numerical values of each byte, as well as the ASCII character that corresponded to it. I wanted both decimal and hexadecimal numbers in order to spot relationships more easily. The program I wrote is shown in listing 1. It prints the information for 8 bytes on each line. The ASCII character is listed only if it is printable (i.e., its ASCII value is greater than 31).

Once I finished my program, I ran it with a number of program files and started to inspect carefully the output. I followed the standard form of inductive reasoning: Inspect the data, organize the data, devise a hypothesis, prove the hypothesis. Inductive reasoning (working from particular facts to general conclusions) is an important part of the debugging process. In my case, of course, I had many hypotheses to devise and prove regarding different aspects of how

Proving (or disproving) a hypothesis is no less important than the other step; programmers doing debugging sometimes slight it.

BASIC programs are stored.

Proving (or disproving) a hypothesis is no less important than the other steps, though programmers doing debugging sometimes slight it. The steps I took varied with the hypothesis. In the case of BASIC's reserved words, once I decided that they were stored as a single byte, and could have a prefix, I used the program listed in listing 2. It's a rather odd bird: a self-modifying program. If you RUN it, and then LIST it, you will see that line 180 will be transformed from a long literal to a rather nonsensical line. That line will contain all the reserved words related to a given prefix byte. The PREFIX variable set on line 110 can be changed to suit your needs. Tables 1 through 4 were developed using this program. (Note

Table 4: Disk and Advanced BASIC

STATEMENTS		FUNCTIONS
129 81 FILES	144 90 COM	129 81 CVI
130 82 FIELD	145 91 CIRCLE	130 82 CVS
131 83 SYSTEM	146 92 DRAW	131 83 CVD
132 84 NAME	147 93 PLAY	132 84 MKI$
133 85 LSET	148 94 TIMER	133 85 MKS$
134 86 RSET	149 95 IOCTL	134 86 MKD$
135 87 KILL	150 96 MKDIR	
138 PUT	151 97 SHELL	
137 89 GET	152 98 VIEW	
138 8A RESET	153 99 PMAP	
139 8B COMMON	154 9A ERDEV	
140 8C CHAIN	155 9B CHDIR	
141 8D DATE$	156 9C RMDIR	
142 8E TIME$	157 9B ENVIRON	
143 8F PAINT	158 9E WINDOW	

1. *Values 253, 254, and 255 in table 2 are prefix bytes. This means that when BASIC encounters one of them, it knows it must interpret the following byte in a special way.*

253 means that the next byte denotes a Disk or Advanced BASIC function (table 4).
254 means that the next byte denotes a Disk or Advanced BASIC keyword (table 4).
255 means that the next byte denotes a Cassette BASIC function (table 3).

2. *Cassette BASIC statements and commands have values 129-202. As the BASIC manual says, "The distinction between a command and a statement is largely a matter of tradition." They are distinguished from keywords, functions, and operators in that statements and commands can begin a BASIC expression, but the other three cannot. Some statements can also be keywords (INPUT, KEY, ON). ELSE is a hybrid between a statement and a keyword, but is included in the statement category.*

3. *Cassette BASIC keywords have values 204-210,215,221. These words are always part of an expression begun with a statement.*

4. *Cassettte BASIC operators have values 230-244. In BASIC the distiniction between operators and functions is based on whether the operands are placed between the symbol (operator) or after the symbol, enclosed in parentheses (function).*

5. *Some Cassette BASIC functions are in table 2, others in table 3. With the exception of LEFT$, RIGHT$, and MID$, all functions in table 3 take one argument and return one result. This explains why FRE and POS must be given dummy arguments. It does not explain why they were put in this class. A possible explanation is that a future version of BASIC will attach meanings to the argument. The precedent is LPOS, whose argument in Cassette BASIC is a dummy, but which has meaning in Disk or Advanced BASIC.*

6. *The functions in table 2 are a varied lot. Some take no arguments (ERL, ERR, CSRLIN, INKEY$), others one argument (VARPTR), or two arguments (STRING$, INSTR, POINT). Also included in this section of this table is that anomalous operator NOT, which only needs one operand.*

7. *There are several keywords which differ only in a trailing special character.*

INPUT	*PRINT*	*VARPTR*	*WRITE*
INPUT$		*VARPTR$*	
INPUT#	*PRINT#*		*WRITE#*

As you can see from table 2, there are not separate entries for each of these words. Instead, the word is stored as one byte, and the special character is a second byte. This explains why BASIC does not allow you to use names of your own which only differ from a reserved word by a trailing special character.

8. *The special words that are not stored with a 1–byte token (AS, SEG, BASE) are stored just like variable names.*

9. *Note that there are four statements which are totally undocumented in the BASIC manual revisions for DOS 2.0:*
ERDEV, IOCTL, SHELL, ENVIRON
These work NOW, and will probably be an official part of the next release of BASIC. You read it here first!

ENVIRON is the BASIC analog to the DOS 2.0 SET command. Try ENVIRON("COMSPEC= A: COMMAND.COM") and read about it on page 10-21 of the DOS manual.

SHELL is the BASIC analog to the DOS configuration command of the same name. Try SHELL ("A: COMMAND.COM"). You can read more about it on page 9–10 in the new DOS manual.

IOCTL is the BASIC analog to the DOS function 44H, which is called with interrupt 21H. Try IOCTL(filenum) = value. You can read about the DOS version on page D-39 of the DOS 2.0 manual.

ERDEV is a new event class. Try ON ERDEV GOTO 20. The name probably stands for DEVice ERror, and I expect it to be used together with IOCTL. Since each of these commands is undocumented, and may have unwanted side effects, I recommend caution in using them.

that you may want to increase the BASE variable on line 210 to get past the DATA and REM reserved words, if PREFIX = 32.)

The suggestions in the section on optimizing programs started out as hunches. They too had to be verified. My approach was simple: Take a set of statements and write them using the suggestion, and not using it; then run each of these two sets of statements a number of times and keep track of the time required to execute them. I used the program shell listed in listing 3 to do this. This program outline can be used for timing any pair of algorithms.

How to Optimize Basic Programs

In general, a more concise program will run faster. Obviously, there are lots of cases where a totally different approach to a program, although it results in a longer program, will run more quickly. Even so, to optimize the performance of a program, one important consideration is minimizing the number of characters that BASIC must interpret. Note that the object is to minimize the number of characters in the internal representation of the program, not simply the number of characters displayed by LIST.

An important method for increasing efficiency is to search for algorithms that do less work. *Writing Efficient Programs* by Jon Smith (Prentice Hall, 1982) is an excellent resource for learning how to do this.

Another method is to exploit special knowledge about the execution behavior of the interpreter, or of the hardware. The BASIC manual suggests using integer counters for FOR-NEXT loops. In order to make such suggestions, you must understand the architecture of the hardware, and the way particular parts of the interpreter are implemented. While this information is helpful, it cannot be developed by the methods I have used in this article. What follows in this section is

information on how to optimize programs based on knowledge about the way programs are stored and interpreted.

> *There is one suggestion for optimizing BASIC programs listed in the BASIC manual that does not yield any time savings: "Combine statements where convenient to take advantage of the 255 character statement length."*

While the following methods yield some marginal performance improvements, they also reduce the readability of the program.

1. Omit unnecessary blanks. Blanks before and after delimiters like () [] , ; : and operators like + − * \Λ ‡ ⟨ ⟩ can safely be omitted.

2. Omit unnecessary parentheses. Make sure that you understand the precedence rulers of BASIC.

3. Convert relational operators written with two symbols into their single symbol opposites. This can be done by inverting tests and branching on false conditions, rather than true ones.

Symbol Pair	Opposite
=⟨ ⟨=	⟩
=⟩ =⟩	⟨
⟨⟩ ⟩⟨	=

4. Reduce Boolean expressions to their simplest form. DeMorgan's laws can be used to distribute the negation NOT over AND and OR.

Expression	Equivalent
(NOT X) AND (NOT Y)	NOT X OR Y
(NOT X) OR (NOT Y)	NOT X AND Y

5. Use shorthand notations
a) "LET" is unnecessary in assignment statements.
b) "#" is not needed in front of a file number when using statements like CLOSE and FIELD
c) The loop counter does not need to be included in a "NEXT" statement.

6. Use variable names of two characters or less.

7. If a value is truly constant, use a constant rather than assign it to a variable. Constants are directly accessible in the program text, but variables must be searched for in the scalar or array areas.

8. Assign data to variables directly, rather than use READ and DATA if the data will be read repeatedly. Constants are converted to internal form when you enter the program, but numbers in DATA statements are converted each time they are READ.

9. Assign variables in the order of their frequency of use. Putting the most used variables first minimizes the time spent searching the scalar and array areas.

10. Use the single quote (') to place remarks at the end of a line rather than using a separate statement.

Micro Mythology

There is one suggestion for optimizing BASIC programs listed in the BASIC manual that does not yield any time savings: "Combine statements where convenient to take advantage of the 255–character statement length." The evidence just doesn't support this advice.

How to Create Self-Modifying Programs

As it stands, BASIC only allows numbers and strings as responses to INPUT and LINE INPUT. There are circumstances in which it is desirable to allow the user to enter BASIC statements that will be evaluated by the program. Given the information presented in this article, you can do just that.

What would you use such a feature for? What if you were writing a plotting package and wanted to allow the user to specify an equation to plot? Or if you were developing a financial analysis package and wanted to allow the user to specify how certain values were to be calculated?

The program in listing 4 implements this idea. It takes a literal string as input. This string should be a valid BASIC statement. The statement can contain parentheses, arithmetic operators (+ − * / \ ^), numeric constants, and 10 arithmetic functions (SGN,ABS,INT,SQR,EXP,LOG,SIN,COS,TAN,ATN). The string is transformed into the internal representation of the statement. It is then poked into the definition of a defined function, which can be evaluated as often as needed.

How to Create Powerful Programming Tools

The prograam that allows a user to enter BASIC expressions as input writes BASIC programs in their internal format. There are a number of programming tools that read BASIC programs in their internal format. Because programs can be saved in ASCII format, why do this? There are two reasons: ease of use and efficiency.

By writing programming tools that work directly on BASIC programs in internal format, you

> *A little bit of esoteric knowledge can be put to quite practical use in programming the IBM PC in BASIC. This article has given you the tools for exploring the interpreter further on your own if you choose.*

eliminate the extra steps of loading the program, saving a second copy in ASCII format, and deleting the extra copy when done. BASIC has already done a lot of processing for you. The text is more compact, so less data needs to be processed. The keywords have already been located, so you don't need to look them up in a table. The line numbers have been distinguished from nu-

meric constants, and string constants. You may choose to list any combination of these. After initializing, the program asks you for the name of the file you want to work on. Then it analyzes the text, printing out the number of the line being processed as it goes. The sorting is done with the Quicksort algorithm. The printout shows the objects you requested, along with the line numbers on which they occur.

SUMMARY

A little bit of esoteric knowledge can be put to quite practical use in programming the IBM PC in BASIC. This article has given you the tools for exploring the interpreter further on your own if you choose. This implementation of BASIC serves its users well. Now that you understand how it works on the inside, it can serve you even better.

LISTING 1 INSIDE MICROSOFT BASIC

```
10 PRINT "FILE NAME?" : LINE INPUT F$
20 OPEN F$+".BAS" FOR INPUT AS #1
30 TEXT$=INPUT$(8,#1)
40 FOR I=1 TO 8 : C=ASC(MID$(TEXT$,I,1))
50 IF C>31 AND C<128 THEN C$=CHR$(C) ELSE C$=" "
60 PRINT USING "### \\ !  ";C;HEX$(C);C$;
70 NEXT I : GOTO 30
80 CLOSE
```

LISTING 2 INSIDE MICROSOFT BASIC

```
10 DEF SEG : DEFINT A-Z
20 OFFSET=PEEK(&H30)+256*PEEK(&H31)
30 FOR I=3500 TO 32767
40 IF 64=PEEK(I) THEN 50 ELSE 90
50 IF 64=PEEK(I+1) THEN 60 ELSE 90
60 IF 64=PEEK(I+2) THEN 70 ELSE 90
70 IF 64=PEEK(I+3) THEN 80 ELSE 90
80 START=I-1 : GOTO 110
90 NEXT I
100 IF I>=32767 THEN 170
110 PREFIX=32 ' OR 253,254,255
120 BASE=128
130 FOR I=0 TO 224 STEP 2
140 POKE START+I,PREFIX
150 POKE START+I+1,BASE+I\2
160 NEXT
170 END
180 PRINT "@@@@
```

LISTING 4 INSIDE MICROSOFT BASIC

```
10 L.=1000 ' change as needed
20 DEF FNT(X$)=3600*VAL(LEFT$(X$,2))+60*VAL(MID$(X$,4))+VAL(RIGHT$(X$,2))
30 T.=FNT(TIME$)
40 FOR I.=1 TO L.
50 ' fill with statement set 1
60 NEXT : PRINT FNT(TIME$)-T.
70 T.=FNT(TIME$)
80 FOR I.=1 TO L.
90 ' fill with statement set 2
100 NEXT : PRINT FNT(TIME$)-T.
```

LISTING 3 INSIDE MICROSOFT BASIC

```
10 DEFINT A-Z : DEF SEG
20 ' the BASIC statement will go into the next line
30 DEF FNF(X)=||'
40 ' setup keyword list
50 DIM K$[10],K[10]
60 FOR I=1 TO 10 : READ K$[I],K[I] : NEXT
70 DATA SGN,132,ABS,134,INT,133,SQR,135,EXP,139,LOG,138
80 DATA SIN,137,COS,140,TAN,141,ATN,142
90 ' get string, loop thru characters
100 INPUT "ENTER YOUR FUNCTION: ";E$ : L=LEN(E$) : X$=""
110 FOR I=1 TO L : C$=MID$(E$,I,1) : A=ASC(C$)
120 IF C$="(" OR C$=")" THEN X$=X$+C$ : GOTO 540 ' copy parentheses
130 ' is it an arithmetic operator?
140 P=INSTR("+-*/^",C$)
150 IF P>0 THEN X$=X$+CHR$(232+P) : GOTO 540
160 IF C$="\" THEN X$=X$+CHR$(244) : GOTO 540
170 ' is it a name?
180 IF A<65 OR A>90 THEN 290 ' letter?
190 N$=C$
200 FOR J=1 TO LEN(E$)-I : C$=MID$(E$,I+J,1) : A=ASC(C$)
210 IF NOT (A>64 AND A<91) OR (A>47 AND A<58) OR C$="." THEN 230 'end of name?
220 N$=N$+C$ : NEXT
230 I=I+J-1
240 ' is it a keyword?
250 FOR J=1 TO 10
260 IF N$=K$[J] THEN X$=X$+CHR$(255)+CHR$(K[J]) : GOTO 540 ' prefix, keyword
270 NEXT
280 X$=X$+N$ : GOTO 540
290 ' is it a number?
300 IF (A>47 AND A<58) OR C$="." THEN 320 ' digit or point?
310 PRINT "INVALID EXPRESSION: "+E$ : STOP
320 ' get the entire number
330 N$=C$
340 FOR J=1 TO LEN(E$)-I : C$=MID$(E$,I+J,1) : A=ASC(C$)
350 IF NOT (A>47 AND A<58) OR C$="." THEN 370 ' end of number?
360 N$=N$+C$ : NEXT
370 I=I+J-1
380 ' is it well-formed?
390 N#=VAL(N$) : IF 0<>N# OR N$="0" THEN 410
400 PRINT "INVALID EXPRESSION: "+E$ : STOP
410 ' convert to proper form
420 IF N#<>INT(N#) THEN 480 ELSE N=VAL(N$) ' integer or decimal number?
430 ' integers
440 IF 1=LEN(N$) THEN X$=X$+CHR$(N+17) : GOTO 540 ' single decimal digit
450 IF N>=0 AND N<256 THEN X$=X$+CHR$(15)+CHR$(N) : GOTO 540 ' single byte
460 IF ABS(N)>32768! THEN 480 ELSE A=VARPTR(N)
470 X$=X$+CHR$(28)+CHR$(PEEK(A))+CHR$(PEEK(A+1)) : GOTO 540 ' two bytes
480 ' floating point
490 N!=VAL(N$)
500 ' single precision if less than 7 digits, double otherwise
510 IF LEN(N$)>8 THEN A=VARPTR(N#) : C=8 ELSE A=VARPTR(N!) : C=4
520 IF C=4 THEN X$=X$+CHR$(29) ELSE X$=X$+CHR$(31) ' floating point prefixes
530 FOR J=0 TO C-1 : X$=X$+CHR$(PEEK(A+J)) : NEXT
540 NEXT I
550 ' find the place to put the expression
560 A=PEEK(&H30)+256*PEEK(&H31) ' start of program text
570 FOR I=A TO 32767
580 IF 124=PEEK(I) AND 124=PEEK(I+1) THEN 600 ELSE NEXT ' find ||
590 STOP
600 FOR J=1 TO LEN(X$) : POKE I+J-1,ASC(MID$(X$,J,1)) : NEXT ' store statement
```

LISTING 5 INSIDE MICROSOFT BASIC

```
10 ' BASIC program cross reference
20 GOSUB 110 ' initialize
30 GOSUB 280 ' ask user
40 GOSUB 360 ' start up
50 GOSUB 420 ' identify tokens
60 GOSUB 1190 ' sort tokens
70 GOSUB 1360 ' print tokens
80 END
90 '
100 ' *** INITIALIZE ***
110 DEFINT A-Z : DEF SEG : OPTION BASE 1
120 A=0:C$="":T$="":C=1:I=0:J=0:K=0:L=0:M=0:X=0:Y=0:Z=0:B=0:D=0:H=0
130 T1$=CHR$(1) : T2$=CHR$(2) : T3$=CHR$(3) : T4$=CHR$(4) : T5$=CHR$(5)
140 DIM S[20,2]
150 DIM CK$[124] : FOR I=1 TO 124 : READ CK$[I] : NEXT
160 DATA END,FOR,NEXT,DATA,INPUT,DIM,READ,LET,GOTO,RUN,IF,RESTORE,GOSUB,RETURN,R
EM,STOP,PRINT,CLEAR,LIST,NEW,ON,WAIT,DEF,POKE,CONT,"?","?",OUT,LPRINT,LLIST,"?",
WIDTH,ELSE
170 DATA TRON,TROFF,SWAP,ERASE,EDIT,ERROR,RESUME,DELETE,AUTO,RENUM,DEFSTR,DEFINT
,DEFSNG,DEFDBL,LINE,WHILE,WEND,CALL,"?","?","?",WRITE,OPTION,RANDOMIZE,OPEN,CLOS
E,LOAD,MERGE,SAVE,COLOR
180 DATA CLS,MOTOR,BSAVE,BLOAD,SOUND,BEEP,PSET,PRESET,SCREEN,KEY,LOCATE,"?",TO,T
HEN,TAB(,STEP,USR,FN,SPC(,NOT,ERL,ERR,STRING$,USING,INSTR,"'",VARPTR,CSRLIN,POIN
T,OFF,INKEY$,"?","?"
190 DATA "?","?","?","?","?",">","=","<","+","-","*","/","^","AND","OR","XOR","E
QV","IMP","MOD","\","?","?","?","?","?","?","?","?"
200 DIM CF$[37] : FOR I=1 TO 37 : READ CF$[I] : NEXT
210 DATA LEFT$,RIGHT$,MID$,SGN,INT,ABS,SQR,RND,SIN,LOG,EXP,COS,TAN,ATN,FRE,INP,P
OS,LEN,STR$,VAL,ASC,CHR$,PEEK,SPACE$,OCT$,HEX$,LPOS,CINT,CSNG,CDBL,FIX,PEN,STICK
```

```
,STRIG,EOF,LOC,LOF
220 DIM DK$[30] : FOR I=1 TO 30 : READ DK$[I] : NEXT
230 DATA FILES,FIELD,SYSTEM,NAME,LSET,RSET,KILL,PUT,GET,RESET,COMMON,CHAIN,DATE$
,TIME$,PAINT,COM,CIRCLE,DRAW,PLAY,TIMER,IOTCTL,MKDIR,SHELL,VIEW,PMAP,ERDEV,CHDIR
,RMDIR,ENVIRON,WINDOW
240 DIM DF$[6] : FOR I=1 TO 6 : READ DF$[I] : NEXT
250 DATA CVI,CVS,CVD,MKI$,MKS$,MKD$
260 RETURN
270 '
280 ' *** ASK USER ***
290 INPUT "FILE NAME";X$ : OPEN X$ FOR INPUT AS #1 : M=LOF(1)
300 DIM S$[M\2],P[M\2] ' adjust if low on memory
310 PRINT "EACH OF THESE CAN BE LISTED:" : PRINT "KEYWORDS, VARIABLES, LINE NUMB
ERS, NUMBERS, STRINGS": INPUT "LIST (K,V,L,N,S)";Y$
320 Z$="KVLNS"
330 FOR I=1 TO LEN(Y$) : O[INSTR(Z$,MID$(Y$,I,1))]=-1 : NEXT
340 RETURN
350 '
360 ' *** START UP ***
370 PRINT "ANALYZING"
380 FOR I=1 TO 3:GOSUB 1520:NEXT
390 GOSUB 1520 : B=A : GOSUB 1520 : L=B+256*A
400 PRINT STR$(L); : RETURN
410 '
420 ' *** IDENTIFY TOKENS ***
430 GOSUB 1520:IF EF THEN 1170
440 IF A<128 THEN 630
450 ' *** KEYWORDS ***
460 IF A=143 THEN 550 ' REMARK?
470 IF A=132 THEN 590 ' DATA?
480 IF A<253 THEN X=252 ELSE X=A:GOSUB 1520
490 ON X-251 GOTO 500,510,520,530
500 T$=CK$[A-128]:GOTO 540 ' Cassette keyword
510 T$=DF$[A-128]:GOTO 540 ' Disk function
520 T$=DK$[A-128]:GOTO 540 ' Disk keyword
530 T$=CF$[A-128]:GOTO 540 ' Cassette function
540 T$=T1$+T$:GOTO 1140
550 ' *** REMARK ***
560 T$="":GOSUB 1520:IF A<>217 THEN T$=T$+C$
570 GOSUB 1520:IF 0=A THEN GOSUB 1640 ELSE T$=T$+C$:GOTO 570
580 GOTO 1160
590 ' *** DATA ***
600 T$=""
610 GOSUB 1520:IF 0=A THEN GOSUB 1640 ELSE T$=T$+C$:GOTO 610
620 GOTO 1160
630 IF A<65 OR A>90 THEN 680
640 ' *** NAME ***
650 T$=C$
660 GOSUB 1520:IF(A>64 AND A<91)OR(A>47 AND A<58)OR A=46 OR A=33 OR A=35 OR A=36
 OR A=37 THEN T$=T$+C$:GOTO 660 ELSE GOSUB 1640
670 T$=T2$+T$:GOTO 1140
680 IF A<>14 THEN 720
690 ' *** LINE NUMBER ***
700 GOSUB 1520:B=A:GOSUB 1520:T$=STR$(B+256*A)
710 T$=T3$+T$:GOTO 1140
720 IF A<>34 THEN 770
730 ' *** LITERAL CONSTANT ***
740 T$=C$
750 GOSUB 1520:T$=T$+C$:IF A=34 THEN 760 ELSE 750
760 T$=T5$+T$:GOTO 1140
770 IF A<17 OR A>26 THEN 810
780 ' *** 1 DECIMAL DIGIT CONSTANT ***
790 T$=STR$(A-17)
800 T$=T4$+T$:GOTO 1140
810 IF A<>15 THEN 850
820 ' *** 1 BYTE INTEGER CONSTANT ***
830 GOSUB 1520:T$=STR$(A)
840 T$=T4$+T$:GOTO 1140
850 IF A<>28 THEN 890
860 ' *** 2 BYTE SIGNED INTEGER ***
870 GOSUB 1520:B=A:GOSUB 1520:T$=STR$(B+256*A)+"%"
880 T$=T4$+T$:GOTO 1140
890 IF A<>29 THEN 940
900 ' *** 4 BYTE FLOATING POINT ***
910 T$="":X=VARPTR(N!)
920 FOR I=0 TO 3:GOSUB 1520:POKE X+I,A:NEXT:T$=STR$(N!)+"!"
930 T$=T4$+T$:GOTO 1140
940 IF A<>31 THEN 990
950 ' ***** 8 BYTE FLOATING POINT *****
960 T$="":X=VARPTR(N#)
970 FOR I=0 TO 7:GOSUB 1520:POKE X+I,A:NEXT:T$=STR$(N#)+"#"
980 T$=T4$+T$:GOTO 1140
990 IF A<>11 AND A<>12 THEN 1030
1000 ' *** 2 BYTE HEX/OCTAL INTEGER ***
1010 GOSUB 1520:B=A:GOSUB 1520:T$=STR$(B+A*256)+"&"
1020 T$=T4$+T$:GOTO 1140
1030 IF A=32 OR A=35 OR A=40 OR A=41 OR A=44 OR A=45 OR A=58 OR A=59 OR A=91 OR
A=93 THEN 1160
1040 IF A<>0 THEN 1090
1050 ' *** END OF LINE ***
1060 GOSUB 1520 : GOSUB 1520 : GOSUB 1520 : B=A : GOSUB 1520 : L=B+256*A
1070 IF L<>0 THEN PRINT STR$(L); : GOTO 1160 ELSE 1170
1080 ' *** OTHER ***
1090 IF A>47 AND A<58 THEN STOP ' ASCII digits are impossible
1100 IF A>96 AND A<122 THEN STOP ' lower case letters are impossible
1110 IF A<11 OR A=13 OR A=15 OR A=16 OR A=30 THEN STOP ' impossible
1120 STOP ' A wasn't an ASCII value
1130 ' *** STORE TOKEN ***
1140 IF NOT O[ASC(LEFT$(T$,1))] THEN 1160
1150 K=K+1:S$[K]=T$:P[K]=L
1160 GOTO 430
1170 RETURN
1180 '
1190 ' *** SORT TOKENS ***
1200 PRINT:PRINT "SORTING"
1210 D=1:S[D,1]=1:S[D,2]=K
1220 WHILE D>0:L=S[D,1]:H=S[D,2]:D=D-1
1230 IF L>=H THEN 1340
1240 I=L:J=H:X=H
1250 WHILE(I<J)AND(S$[I]<=S$[X]):I=I+1:WEND
1260 WHILE(J>I)AND(S$[J]>=S$[X]):J=J-1:WEND
1270 IF I<J THEN SWAP S$[I],S$[J]:SWAP P[I],P[J]:GOTO 1250
1280 IF I<>H THEN SWAP S$[I],S$[H]:SWAP P[I],P[H]
1290 IF(I-L)>=(H-I)THEN  1320
1300 D=D+1:S[D,1]=L:S[D,2]=I-1
1310 D=D+1:S[D,1]=I+1:S[D,2]=H:GOTO 1340
1320 D=D+1:S[D,1]=I+1:S[D,2]=H
1330 D=D+1:S[D,1]=L:S[D,2]=I-1:GOTO 1340
1340 WEND : RETURN
1350 '
1360 ' *** PRINT LISTING ***
1370 C=0:FOR I=1 TO K:IF LEN(S$[I])>C THEN C=LEN(S$[I])
1380 NEXT
1390 CR$=CHR$(13) : M=K : K=0 : P$=CR$ : DIM L[100]
1400 FOR I=1 TO M:T$=MID$(S$[I],2)
1410 IF P$=T$ THEN K=K+1:L[K]=P[I]:GOTO 1480
1420 IF P$=CR$ THEN K=1:P$=T$:L[K]=P[I]:GOTO 1480
1430 IF K=1 THEN 1460
1440 FOR X=1 TO K:FOR Y=X TO K:IF L[X]>L[Y] THEN SWAP L[X],L[Y]
1450 NEXT:NEXT
1460 LPRINT:LPRINT LEFT$(P$+SPACE$(C),C);:FOR J=1 TO K:LPRINT L[J];:NEXT
1470 K=1:P$=T$:L[K]=P[I]
1480 NEXT
1490 LPRINT:LPRINT LEFT$(P$+SPACE$(C),C);:FOR J=1 TO K:LPRINT L[J];:NEXT:LPRINT
1500 RETURN
1510 '
1520 ' *** GET CHAR, ADVANCE CURSOR ***
1530 IF LB AND C=LEN(B$) THEN EF=-1:RETURN
1540 IF C<=LEN(B$) THEN 1610 ' chars in buffer?
1550 P$=B$ ' save previous buffer
1560 IF M>J+128 THEN 1590 ' more full blocks left?
1570 C=1:B$="" ' accumulate last partial block
1580 WHILE NOT EOF(1):B$=B$+INPUT$(1,#1):WEND:LB=-1:GOTO 1610
1590 P$=B$:B$=INPUT$(128,#1)
1600 C=1:J=J+128
1610 C$=MID$(B$,C,1):A=ASC(C$):C=C+1:RETURN
1620 '
1630 ' *** RETRACT CURSOR ***
1640 IF C=1 THEN B$=P$:C=255 ELSE C=C-1
1650 RETURN
```

SQL on the IBM PC

A system that follows faithfully the SQL relational standard in both syntax and functionality.

Clyde W. Holsapple

Structured Query Language/Data System (SQL/DS), an IBM data base management tool, is the present-day standard for relational systems. It allows data to be organized into tables and then processed by means of high-level commands furnished in a structured query language. Since 1982, SQL/DS has been available on mainframes; now there's a microversion of the system for the IBM personal computer, called Knowledge Manager (Knowledge Man). This system faithfully follows the SQL relational standard in both syntax and functionality.

The descriptions that follow illustrate highlights of SQL on the IBM Personal Computer. Variations between mainframe SQL/DS and the micro SQL embodied in KnowledgeMan are noted. Variations that do exist between KnowledgeMan's structured query language and SQL/DS are primarily the result of KnowledgeMan features that are unavailable in SQL/DS. Readers familiar with one or more of the commonplace micro file handlers (such as dBase) will readily observe that the SQL data handling commands are quite different and considerably more powerful than those of file handlers.

Data Organization

Data is organized into tables such as those shown in figure 1. Each column represents a field. For instance, the SUPPLIER table has six fields which are useful in characterizing suppliers. Each row in a table is a record, consisting of a data value for each of the table's fields. The SUPPLIER table shows five records, each one describing a particular supplier.

As figure 1 illustrates, relationships between rows in one table and rows in another table are established by means of a field repeated in both tables. For instance, the fact that a suppplier identification field exists in both the SUPPLIER and QUOTE tables implies that particular supplier records are related to particular quotation records. Suppose we want to find the names of suppliers who supply part number 342. From the QUOTE table, all supplier identifiers (SID) for part 342 can be found. These are compared to supplier identifiers in the SUPPLIER table. Whenever a match occurs, the corresponding supplier name (SNAME) is extracted from the SUPPLIER record for display. This entire lookup and display process for two tables is accomplished by a single SQL command.

SQL Queries

An SQL query is a non-procedural command that causes data to be retrieved from one or more tables. Non-procedurality means that the user who states a query does not need to explicitly specify a sequence of steps (i.e., a procedure) that tells the system *how* to perform the retrieval. Instead, the user states a single command that tells the system *what* data is desired. The system responds to such a query by presenting the retrieved data values in the form of a table, which is referred to as the query's output table.

The basic structure of an SQL query consists of three clauses: a SELECT command, followed by the desired fields; a FROM command, followed by the table that is the source of information; and a WHERE command, followed by the conditions to be met. The query is typed as SELECT . . . FROM . . .

Clyde W. Holsapple is associate professor of management at the Management Information Research Center of Purdue University, and associate professor of business administration at the Univeristy of Illinois. Currently on leave, he is an independent consultant.

SUPPLIER

SID	SNAME	STREET	CITY	STATE	ZIP
13	PERFECTO PARTS	100 MAIN ST.	CARROLL	IOWA	51401
25	XYZ SUPPLY	35 RUDOLPH	CHICAGO	ILLINOIS	60005
18	PACIFIC CO.	BOX 2048	NEW YORK	NEW YORK	10017
49	FITZ HARDWARE	25 SAGE DR.	PITTSBURGH	PENNSYLVANIA	15432
103	MISCELL PARTS	135 WICKER DR.	CHICAGO	ILLINOIS	60003

PART

PID	PNAME	DESCRIP	ONHAND
195	*WHEEL*	*8 INCH, ALUM*	*35*
203	*BOLT*	*½ DIA, 2 LEN*	*500*
214	*BELT*	*22 INCH*	*230*
342	*WASHER*	*¾ INCH*	*5200*
343	*BOLT*	*¾ DIA, 4 LEN*	*6000*

QUOTE

SID	*PID*	*PRICE*	*TIME*	*ONORD*
13	*195*	*1.35*	*6*	*50*
13	*214*	*.85*	*2*	*200*
13	*395*	*12.14*	*12*	*0*
25	*342*	*.03*	*5*	*7000*
25	*343*	*.05*	*6*	*15000*
49	*342*	*.02*	*7*	*12000*
49	*343*	*.06*	*7*	*0*
49	*386*	*3.25*	*20*	*100*

Figure 1: Sample tables generated by SQL

> *A user does not need to devise and execute a series of commands that involve merging files together to produce various intermeiate files. The relation SQL approach saves effort (by reducing both file handling and the chance of errors) and storage space.*

WHERE . . . . The user specifies the fields for which data values are to be retrieved, the table(s) from which the retrieval is to occur, and certain conditions which are to be satisfied by retrieved data. The output table has one column for each selected field and these columns appear left to right in the same order in which fields are stated in the query. If the optional WHERE clause is used in a query, then the data of each row in the output table satisfies whatever conditions are specified in that clause. As discussed later, an SQL query can have other clauses.

Referring to figure 1, suppose we want to obtain a report showing the identifier, name, description, and quantity-on-hand for each part, then the query is

```
SELECT PID, PNAME, DESCRIP,
  ONHAND FROM PART
```

The result of this unconditional retrieval is an output table that is identical to the PART table. More selective retrieval is accomplished with the WHERE clause. For instance,

```
SELECT PID, PNAME, ONHAND
  FROM PART WHERE ONHAND)750
```

produces a three column output table showing the identifier, name, and quantity of every part whose quantity-on-hand exceeds 750.

In addition to fields, expressions involving fields can be stated in a query. The output table contains a column for each such expression. The query

> *KnowledgeMan SQL permits extensive flexibility in specifying conditions. Any of the usual relational operators can be employed in stating a condition.*

```
SELECT PID, SID,ONORD*PRICE
  FROM QUOTE WHERE ONORD)O
```

generates a three-column output table whose last column shows the total dollar amount on order for each part from each supplier (providing an order has been placed). Expressions in the KnowledgeMan version of SQL can be arbitrarily complex, involving any of the more than 25 built-in functions (e.g., square root, logs, random numbers, trig functions, etc.) temporary working variables, spreadsheet cell variables, and fields from multiple tables.

Each field or expression selected can be qualified by a picture, that shows how its values are to be edited as they are displayed in the output table. For example,

```
SELECT SID,TIME/7 USING "ddd.dd
  WEEKS" FROM QUOTE WHERE
  PID=342
```

produces an output table showing the suppliers who can supply part 342. For each supplier, the delivery time (in weeks) is computed and is displayed with two decimal digits, followed by the word WEEKS. This KnowledgeMan editing capability is not supported in traditional SQL.

KnowledgeMan SQL permits extensive flexibility in specifying conditions. Any of the usual relational operators (⟨, ⟩, =, ‡, ⟨, ⟩,) can be employed in stating a condition. Fields and complex expressions can be used as operands. For instance,

```
SELECT SID, PID FROM QUOTE
  WHERE ONORD/(TIME+2))15/SQL
  RT(PRICE)
```

illustrates a condition involving three fields and the built-in square root (SQRT) function. A group inclusion operator (IN) is also supported. Thus,

```
SELECT SNAME,SID FROM
  SUPPLIER WHERE STATE IN
  ["Iowa","Illinois","Ohio"]
```

produces a report of those suppliers in Iowa, Illinois, or Ohio.

A condition can also involve

wild card string and wild card symbol matches. In the following query, * is used as a wild card string match character to obtain an output table showing all aluminum parts.

```
SELECT PID,PNAME FROM PART
  WHERE DESCRIP IN ["*ALUM*"]
```

Whereas the * matches any string of symbols, the $ character is used to indicate a wild card match with exactly one symbol. Therefore,

```
SELECT PID, PNAME,DESCRIP
  FROM PART WHERE PNAME
  IN ["B$LT"]
```

extracts those parts whose names consist of four symbols, the first of which is B and the last of which are LT (e.g., BOLT, BELT).

Arbitrarily complex compound conditions can be specified with the AND (&), OR, XOR (exclusive OR), and NOT logical operators. To obtain a list of all suppliers who can supply part 529 at a unit price of less than .23 in less than seven days, the query is

```
SELECT SID FROM QUOTE WHERE
  PID=529 & PRICE<.23 & TIME<7
```

For the same part, we may be willing to sacrifice time for price or vice versa. Thus,

```
SELECT SID,PRICE,TIME FROM
  QUOTE WHERE PID=529 &
  PRICE<.17 OR TIME<5)
```

will show suppliers who can deliver part 529 in less than five days (possibly at a high price) or who can deliver for a unit price below.

Though it is not a part of traditional SQL, KnowledgeMan also allows the query to be restricted to a particular portion of a table.

```
SELECT PID,DESCRIP FROM PART
  WHERE ONHAND>5000 RANGE 200,300
```

processes only records 200 through 300 in producing the output table.

PID	*SID*	*TIME*
⋮	⋮	⋮
195	*13*	*6*
195	*52*	*7*
203	*73*	*5*
203	*52*	*5*
203	*103*	*6*
203	*129*	*6*
214	*13*	*2*
214	*103*	*2*
⋮	⋮	⋮

a) SELECT PID,SID,TIME FROM QUOTE ORDER BY ASCENDING PID,TIME

PID	SID	TIME
⋮	⋮	⋮
195	13	6
	52	7
203	73	5
	52	
	103	6
	129	
214	13	2
	103	
⋮	⋮	⋮

b) SELECT UNIQUE PID, SID, UNIQUE TIME FROM QUOTE ORDER BY ASCENDING PID, TIME

Figure 2: SQL's UNIQUE Qualifier

Records outside of this range, for which the quantity on hand exceeds 5000, are ignored. There are several ways aside from RANGE for specifying what portion of a table is of interest.

Each of the foregoing examples has operated on only one table at a time. In addition, a KnowledgeMan SQL query, using any mix of the previously described features, can operate on multiple tables to produce an output report. Unlike micro file management systems, a user does not need to devise and execute a series of commands that involve merging files together to produce various intermediate files. The relational SQL approach saves user effort (by reducing both file handling and the chance of user errors) and storage space.

Suppose a report is needed showing part name, number and quantity on hand, plus the quantities of each part that are on order from various suppliers. Notice that this information does not exist in a single table. It involves fields in the QUOTE and PART tables. For clarity, each field name in the following query is prefaced by the table in which it exists (e.g., the field PID exists in two tables). Actually, all of these prefaces are not required.

```
SELECT PART.PNAME,PART.PID,
  PART.ONHAND,QUOTE SID,
  QUOTE.ONORD FROM QUOTE
  WHERE QUOTE.ONORD>0 FROM
  PART WHERE PART.PID = QUOTE.PID
```

For each QUOTE record with an ONORD>0, the system extracts related part data from the PART table record having the same PID value as the QUOTE record. The result is the desired five-column output table consisting of related data from the PART and QUOTE tables.

More than two tables can be referenced in a single query. To produce an output table showing the name of the supplier, the part description, and the quantity on order for each aluminum part having a price over 10.50:

```
SELECT SUPPLIER.SNAME, PART.
  DESCRIP,ONORD FROM QUOTE
  WHERE PRICE>10.50 FROM PART
  WHERE PART.PID=QUOTE.PID&
  PART.DESCRIP IN ["*ALUM*"]
  FROM SUPPLIER WHERE
  SUPPLIER.SID=QUOTE.SID
```

This KnowledgeMan treatment of multiple tables varies slightly from that of SQL/DS. In SQL/DS the multiple tables are specified in the same FROM clause and the multiple conditions are put into the same WHERE clause, creating a query with a less structured appearance.

As with SQL, a KnowledgeMan user can append an ORDER clause to any query to cause the output table to be dynamically sorted on any desired criteria. Rows in the output

table produced by

SELECT SNAME,CITY,STATE,ZIP FROM SUPPLIER ORDER BY ASCENDING ZIP,CITY,SNAME

are sorted on an ascending basis by zip code, by city within zip code, and by supplier name within city. A mixture of ascending and descending orders can be specified in the KnowledgeMan version of SQL. Thus

SELECT SID,PID,ONORD, TIME, PRICE FROM QUOTE ORDER BY DESCENDING ONORD, ASCENDING TIME, DESCENDING PRICE

orders the output rows by descending order amount, by ascending time within an order amount, and by descending price within each time.

In SQL, a table is initially defined by name and then by a list of the names, types, and sizes of fields involved in that table. The syntax for table definition differs somewhat in the KnowledgeMan version of SQL.

Another valuable feature is the UNIQUE qualifier, which causes consecutive duplicate values in an output table's column to be suppressed. The word UNIQUE can be used to qualify any selected field or expression. The query

SELECT UNIQUE PID,SID, UNIQUE TIME FROM QUOTE ORDER BY ASCENDING PID,TIME

generates a normal output table except that once a particular part number appears in an output row, the display of that number will be suppressed in subsequent output rows. The same is true for the output table's TIME column. Figure 2b shows a fragment of this ouput table.

A final optional clause that can be used with the SQL SELECT command is the GROUP BY clause. This is used to cause statistics to be calculated and displayed for indicated groups of data. In conventional SQL, the user must explicitly state within the query itself which statistics (e.g., average, min, max) are to be computed for which fields. In the KnowledgeMan version of SQL this is not necessary, since its GROUP BY clause causes control breaks with full statistics to be generated at each control break. For instance, the KnowledgeMan query

SELECT PID,PRICE,TIME FROM QUOTE GROUP BY PID ORDER BY ASCENDING PID

causes part number, price, and time to appear in sorted order in the output table. Whenever the value of PID changes from one row to the next in this table, there is a break in the table. At each break, full statistics (average, min, max, standard deviation, etc.) are computed and displayed for price and time, using the price and time data displayed since the last break. Thus for each part, full statistics are shown for its price and time. At the end of the output table, global statistics are also displayed.

An added advantage of the KnowldedgeMan variation of SQL's GROUP BY clause is that it allows statistics to be generated at multilevel control breaks. So,

SELECT PID,TIME,PRICE FROM QUOTE GROUP BY PID,TIME ORDER BY ASCENDING PID,TIME

produces control break statistics whenever the value of PID changes in the ouput table. At a more detailed level, the GROUP BY clause also generates control break statistics for each group of items within each part group. For instance, price statistics are displayed for those suppliers who can supply part 343 in 6 days. At a higher level, there are statistics for part 343, regardless of delivery time. Any of the statistics can be selectively suppressed, if desired.

The SELECT command is a powerful and flexible way of generating a desired output table from one or more existing tables of data. KnowledgeMan has another command ,CONVERT, similar to SELECT, except that the output table is not displayed, printed, or routed to a disk file as it is with SELECT. Instead, the output table is converted to a desired format (e.g., BASIC-compatible, DIF, ASCII) and written to a disk file. This data file can then be used by external programs (e.g., graphics utilities) that can read files formatted in these ways.

Table Definition and Modification in SQL

In SQL, a table is initially defined by name and then by a list of the names, types, and sizes of fields involved in that table. The syntax for table definition differs somewhat in the KnowledgeMan version of SQL: In KnowledgeMan a table can be defined interactively, virtual fields can be defined, various access protection codes can be specified for the table and its fields, and pictures can be assigned to fields.

A virtual field is one that is defined in terms of other fields in the table and whose "values" do not actually consume any space in the table. Nevertheless, a virtual field can be treated just like an actual field within any SQL command. For the supplier table, the virtual field ADDRESS can be defined by entering

ADDRESS = STREET + CITY + STATE + ZIP STR 35

in response to the interactive prompt to define a new field. Whenever ADDRESS is used in a query, its values consist of a 35–character string formed from the concatena-

tion of street, city, state, and zip code data. Numeric virtual fields can also be defined. For example,

PTRATIO = PRICE/TIME NUM

defines a virtual field in QUOTE, whose values are the ratio of price to time. Arbitrarily complex expressions (including built-in functions) can be used when defining a virtual field. In traditional SQL, virtual fields are not defined when the table is defined. They can be specified later with a separate command.

For data security, access protection codes can be specified as a KnowledgeMan table is defined. These can be specified for the table as a whole or individually for selected fields. The access codes for one field can be different than those of another field. Only those users who have access privilege codes in common with a field's access protection codes will be able to access that field's values. A further security distinction is made between read access and write access (i.e., the ability to see data versus the ability to change it). Conventional SQL also offers comparable field-level data security, but it is not specified when a table is defined. It is accomplished later by separate command.

For automatic editing and intergrity checking, a picture can be assigned to a field when the field is defined. Conventional SQL does not make use of pictures. Like SQL/DS, KnowledgeMan allows a table to be redefined at any time. This may involve adding or deleting fields, changing field types and sizes, changing access codes, changing pictures, and so forth.

Any time after definition, records can be created in the table. The micro SQL command differs from the mainframe SQL/DS command for record creation by supporting fully interactive record creation. When a user indicates a desire to insert a new record (or records) at a desired place in the table, the user is prompted to provide values for each field. As an alternative to the standard prompting format, the user can ask to create the record via a customized input form:

CREATE RECORDS FOR SUPPLIER WITH SUPFORM

Here, SUPFORM is the name of a customized data entry form previously declared by the user. In declaring a form, there is complete control over the positionings of form elements such as titles, labels, and data entry slots. The form declaration can also specify various special effects for any form element, including foreground/background colors, blinking, intensity, bells, and reverse video.

Just as customized forms can be used for record creation, they can also be used for browsing through a table's records. That is, the values of each successive record appear in a customized form and the user can modify any of the values, as needed. Of course, this modification is subject to write access privileges and protections. KnowledgeMan also supports the SQL/DS approach to modifying records. For instance, the command

CHANGE ONHAND TO ONHAND + 720 WHERE PID = 472

adds 720 to the present quantity on hand for part number 472. Multiple records can also be changed with this command. Suppose that supplier 103 has announced an immediate eight percent price increase on all of its parts with the exception of parts 472 and 345, then

CHANGE PRICE TO PRICE*1.08 WHERE SID = 103&PID NOT IN [472,345]

is a single command that accomplishes all of these changes.

Unlike SQL/DS, all data processed with the KnowledgeMan version of SQL is automatically stored in encrypted form. This added security feature is particularly important in the micro environment, because it protects data from disclosure through the casual use of operating system commands.

INVENTORY

SID	PID	PARTNAME	PARTDES	ONHAND	PRICE	TIME	ONORD
13	195	WHEEL	8 INCH, ALUM	35	1.35	6	50
13	214	BELT	22 INCH	230	.85	2	200
13	395	WIDGET	5 x 5 ABRIGEN	12	12.14	12	0
25	342	WASHER	¾ INCH	5200	.03	5	7000
25	343	BOLT	¾ DIA, 4 LEN	6000	.05	6	15000
49	342	WASHER	¾ INCH	5200	.02	7	12,000
49	343	BOLT	¾ DIA, 4 LEN	6000	.06	7	0
49	386	BELT	48 INCH	725	3.25	20	100

Figure 3: An SQL Virtual INVENTORY table

Virtual Tables for SQL

Virtual tables can be defined with SQL. A virtual table has fields, just like the actual tables previously discussed. Physically speaking, the data values of a virtual table do not exist as an actual table in storage. However, a user can view a virtual table as if it were an actual table. A major advantage of a virtual table is that it allows a user to believe that he or she is working with a single table, while data is actually being retrieved from multiple tables. The following example illustrates how to define a virtual table in the KnowledgeMan version of SQL.

Suppose a user wants to frequently extract data from the INVENTORY table shown in figure 3, rather than the PART and QUOTE tables in figure 1. Instead of generating a space-consuming actual INVENTORY table from the QUOTE

and PART tables, he can define a virtual INVENTORY table with a command called MACRO. Since KnowledgeMan allows commands to be renamed, the following example assumes that MACRO has been given a more descriptive name: VIEW.

Notice that the PNAME field in PART is to be viewed as PARTNAME in the INVENTORY table. This is accomplished by declaring

```
VIEW PARTNAME PART.PNAME
```

The PARTDES and QONHAND views for PART.DESCRIP and PART.ONHAND are declared similarly. Synonyms for other field names could also be created in this way. To declare the virtual INVENTORY table, the command

```
VIEW INVENTORY QUOTE FROM
  PART WHERE PART.PID = QUOTE.PID
```

is used. Now, to retrieve data from INVENTORY, the SQL SELECT command is invoked just as if an actual table were being queried. There is one exception to this in the KnowledgeMan version of SQL: for conditional retrieval the word WHERE is replaced by the word WHEN (synonomous with the & operator). Thus, the query

```
SELECT PID,UNIQUE PARTNAME,
  PARTDES,SID,PRICE FROM
  INVENTORY WHEN TIME < 10 &
  QONHAND <2000 ORDER BY
  ASCENDING PARTNAME,PID
```

generates a five-column output table of part and supplier information for each part whose quantity on hand is below 2000 and which can be supplied by at least one supplier in under ten days. The output table is in sorted order by part name and part identifier, with the display of duplicate names suppressed.

Using SQL within Programs

An important aspect of a relational system is that its commands can be invoked from within programs. Indeed, this is a vital aspect of any type of full-fledged data base management system, for reasons of flexibility and efficiency. SQL/DS commands can be invoked from within programs written in COBOL, PL/1, or assembler. KnowledgeMan SQL commands can also be invoked from within a programming language. This language is an integral part of the KnowledgeMan system. Its features are fairly extensive, supporting array processing and control structures such as if-then-else branching, conditional iteration, switch-case protocols, and parameterized procedure invocation. There are no limits on nesting or the number of variables that can be used.

An important aspect of a relational system is that its commands can be invoked from within programs. Indeed, this is a vital aspect of any type of full-fledged data base management system.

Integrating SQL with Spreadsheet Processing

In addition to an integral structured programming language, KnowledgeMan has a built-in spreadsheet system. A spreadsheet's cells can be used in expressions and conditions of KnowledgeMan SQL commands. Conversely, a spreadsheet cell can be defined in terms of a retrieval statement (or an entire program containing retrieval statements). The full implications of this integration are too lengthy to examine here. It is sufficient to point out that this is a very different approach to integration than that in packages like 1-2-3 and MBA, which use spreadsheets to emulate certain rudimentary data management operations.

Summary

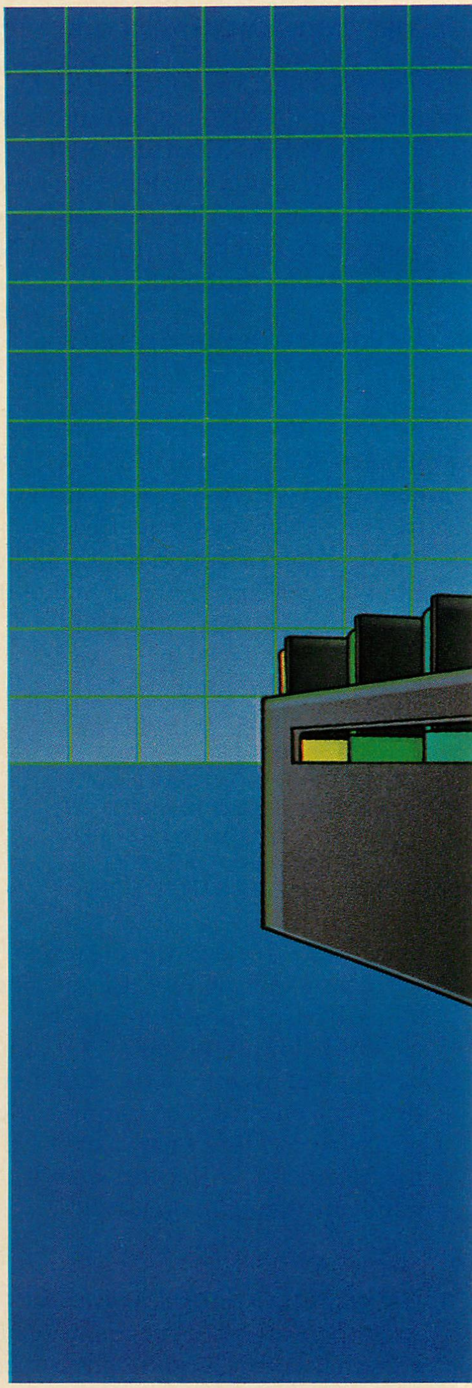
The capabilities of IBM's mainframe relational system, SQL/DS, are now available on the IBM Personal Computer (and other 8086/8088 machines under PCDOS, MSDOS and CP/M-86). Though the KnowledgeMan structured query language closely resembles the mainframe SQL, it does differ in some respects. It does not presently furnish a few of the most complicated SQL/DS capabilities, such as the direct nesting of queries within queries. On the other hand, it supports some features unavailable with conventional SQL. In any event, KnowledgeMan SQL does give micro users a very large measure of the standard relational capabilities that exist on mainframes.

Because KnowledgeMan is restricted to relational data handling, it is not as powerful as post-relational data base management systems. For instance, the post-relational MDBS III is not limited to a tabular data organization, but is able to model much more closely the semantics of real world relationships. One result of this is a query facility that is more concise than SQL's query facility.

For applications where the power of an MDBS III is needed, KnowledgeMan can still be usefully employed for localized decision support activities. Masses of data can be centrally managed on an IBM PC using MDBS. Desired subsets of that data (in tabular form) can be generated with high level, non-procedural MDBS queries. These tables can then be distributed to KnowledgeMan users, who can attach them to KnowledgeMan tables for their own localized use in supporting decisions. The attach activity is accomplished with a single KnowledgeMan command. Thus, the SQL capabilities of KnowledgeMan can be used on a stand-alone basis or at distributed local work stations that draw upon a large centrally managed data base.

THE CALIFO

Ten utilities for the advanced programmer, browser, or confirmed disassembler.



Susan Glinert-Cole

Utilities are the kitchen knives of the computer programmer. With a set of fine, well-tempered utilities, it is possible to daintily explore the structure of a file, eventually serving forth a customized routine or beautifully arranged directory. The more powerful the utility, the easier it is to indulge in unrestrained hashing and mincing. This behavior occasionally culminates in a delicate souffle; often the end result is yesterday's leftover Tuna Fish Surprise.

The California 10-Pak falls into the first category, despite the rather beery implications of the title. This set of utilities consists of ten routines that will view memory and files, sort directories and disassemble object code files. Unlike DEBUG and some of the Norton Utilities like SecMod, they do not allow any permanent changes; the user is compelled to retain a thoughtful, leisurely attitude towards file modifications.

Often the end result of this behavior is yesterday's leftover Tuna Fish Surprise.

Cal-10 is not copy protected and will work with either DOS 1.1. or DOS 2.0. In all cases but one, it managed path names with no problem. All the programs in this set are very fast. Paging from top to bottom of a 200,000–byte file was performed instantly. Directory sorts are finished before the operator can remove the finger that pressed the appropriate key. Cal-10 has excellent error trapping; nothing caused it to crash or lock up the system.

The human interface is also superior. The command set is consistent for all programs. The escape key is used to exit, and PgUp and PgDn flip through the display and operate in the repeat mode when held down. There is no catch-up when these keys are released; response is instant. The display may be sent to the printer with a Shift + PrtSc command; DOS 2.0 redirection is also enabled.

Cal-10's documentation is not particularly elegant, consisting as it does of 15 half-sized pages punched for insertion in a small binder. Instructions for using the programs are very clear and, for the most part, do a good job of explaining the capabilities of each utility. Output from the more esoteric utilities, like

RNIA 10-PAK

CENV, is not explained in the documentation and the onus is on the user to make sense of it. The authors presuppose that only an expert would benefit from some of these programs, but with a reference to the proper sections of the DOS manuals and a short explanatory section in the documentation, intermediate users could use this package as an educational tool.

TEXT FILE UTILITIES

Two programs in this package are designed to inspect the contents of text files: BROWSE and CDIFF. In this respect, BROWSE is identical to the DOS command TYPE, while

> *The third page of CENV lists IBM PC interrupts one through twenty-seven, alongside their respective segments and offsets.*

CDIFF has no counterpart in the operating system. CDIFF will compare two text files, and report synchronous differences found every 100 lines, up to ten differences. For two entirely different files, for example, CDIFF will report that the first difference was found at line one, the second at line 101 and so on. All comparisons are done before the result is displayed, so there is a fair amount of disk activity for a minute or so. The files being compared can be of any length, but the differences can only occupy a maximum of 32K bytes. This program is useful for spotting minor changes in assembly listings and text files. It is of limited value for reporting large differences between files.

All characters are displayed with CDIFF, regardless of whether or not they are normally considered "unprintable." Tabs for example, are represented as little circles. The display is very messy. In fact, if there are large differences between the two files, it is practically unreadable. CDIFF cannot open a file specified by a path; the file must reside in the default directory. It was the only utility in the set that could not use paths.

CODE FILE UTILITIES

CFILE is the "unreadable" file equivalent of BROWSE, but is far more versatile than the latter. It can view either text or binary files. BROWSE displays a file in line format but the output for CFILE is quite different. This utility displays the file one-half a sector at a time. The sector being inspected is shown above the data, with the offset in the left column, the hexadecimal values in the center and the ASCII equivalents on the right hand side of the screen. Because all text delimiters are shown in hexadeci-

Figure 1: Output from CDISK

Output page 1

```
DOS VERSION 2.0

Drive = 1 Media :  Unassigned

Sector 0 Table Missing (Defaults used)

Root Dir. size    = 64
Total Sectors     = 320

Number of Heads   = 1
Sectors per Track= 8
Secs per Cluster = 1
Bytes per Sector = 512

Sectors Reserved = 1
Sectors Hidden    = 0
Number of FATS    = 2
Sectors per FAT   = 1
```

Output page 2

```
No. Clusters on Device = 313
Highest Cluster used   = 291
Total Clusters used    = 290
Unique Cluster Chains  = 5

  Chain=[A-Z]: X..-x    fragment=[x]
  Xlink=[!],  Reserved=[%],  Bad=[?]
  Empty=[-],  Unassigned 0,1    =[¯]

--A....................................
..............B........................
...........................C...........
.......................................
..D....................................
........................E..............
.......................................
............-----------------------
```

Figure 2 : Output from CENV

```
IBM PC Configuration DOS 2.0

No. of Diskettes   = 1

No. of Hard Disks = 1

No. Printers       = 1

No. RS232 Ports    = 2

Game IO Installed = 0

Video Cards: Monochrome Color/Graphic
-Power Up Mode: 80x25 BW   Monochrome
-Current  Mode: 80x25 BW   Monochrome

Planar Memory in KBytes = 64

Total  Memory in KBytes = 320
```

Figure 2a: Output from CENV, page 1

```
PC Diskette Parameter Table Values

Located at segment:offset 0000:0522


Transfer Mode is DMA
Bytes/Sector  = 512
Sectors/Track = 9


Step  Rate  Time in Ms = 28
Head Unload Time in Ms = 480
Head  Load  Time in Ms = 8
Head Settle Time in Ms = 0


Start_Time in secs =    .25
Motor Wait in secs =   2.03

Gap  Length = 42
Data Length = 255
Format Gap  = 80
Format Char = F6
```

mal, this program is very useful for finding out what unprintable characters are placed in a text file by word processors. CFILE is less useful than, say, DEBUT or Norton's SECMOD, because no changes may be made to the data.

CCOMP is similar to CDIFF, but the display is tidier and the information more readable. CCOMP compares two files and displays the differences in both hexadecimal and ASCII. The files themselves need not be of the same size. Each file page is shown in a separate window on the screen and the differences between them are highlighted in reverse video. Each file's sector number is given at the top of the window with the file contents presented below in the same form as for the CFILE utility. The program automatically displays the first difference found and further disparities may be located by using the PgDn key. The END key will display the last page where data exists in both files.

Disk Utilities

CDIR is the alter ego of MS-DOS's DIR command, but has far more flexibility. This utility may be invoked with either a drive or a file specification parameter. If a drive parameter is given, the directory of that drive will be displayed. Alternatively, a file specification containing wild cards may be used. In this case, all the files which fall under this designation will be shown. So, for example, CDIR A:*.TXT will present all the files on drive A which have the extension .TXT. Once a directory has been listed on the screen, it may be sorted by file name, extension, file size or date, and time of creation by pressing a function key. Odd numbered function keys (e.g., F1, F3, etc.) will sort in ascending, the even keys in descending, order. Only the files in the current directory may be accessed.

CSORT is the more powerful version of CDIR. This utility will sort file contents on up to five key fields, display the reorganized data and allow the user to browse through the file. It is slightly more complicated to use than most of the other programs in this package, as the parameters can become quite numerous.

If a single file name is called with CSORT, the data in the file is sorted on the first twenty columns and is then displayed. The reorganized information can be redirected by specifying the output file as a second parameter. If desired, sort fields may be defined explicitly by specifying the beginning and ending columns on which the sort is to be based. Up to five pairs of column values may follow the file names and the information in the file will be processed by a sort-within-a-sort arrangement. For example, the command:

CSORT STUFF.TXT SORTED.TXT 1 6 12 15

will create the file SORTED.TXT which contains the information in STUFF.TXT sorted first by the data in columns 1 through 6 and then by the data in columns 12 through 15.

CSORT is more versatile and convenient than the SORT filter in DOS 2.0, which can sort in two orders: alphabetically forward and reverse. It is possible to specify one field parameter per SORT command, so sorting by file extension, date, and so on can be done with a little column counting, but CSORT makes it painless to rearrange the directory with one keystroke.

The CDISK utility gives extremely detailed information concerning hard disk and diskettes (see figure 1). The command may be followed by a disk drive specification if desired. CDISK will display two types of information: a complete description, in both tabular and graphic form, of the disk media and file allocation table (FAT) or, alter-

The output from this part of the program can be used to locate those areas of the diskette which have been "reserved."

Figure 2b:
Output from CENV, page 2

```
IBM PC Interrupts (Segment:Offset)
#00 00E3:3143 Divide by 0              #01 0070:013F Single Step
#02 F000:F85F Nonmaskable              #03 0070:013F Breakpoint
#04 0070:013F Overflow                 #05 0666:0A49 Print Screen
#06 F000:FF23 ???                      #07 F000:FF23 ???
#08 F000:FEA5 Timer                    #09 F000:E987 Keyboard Irpt
#0A F000:FF23 ???                      #0B 0785:966C Comm 2.0
#0C 0785:966C Comm 2.0                 #0D C800:0760 Disk 2.0
#0E F000:EF57 Diskette                 #0F 0070:013F Printer 2.0
#10 F000:F065 Video IO                 #11 F000:F84D Equipment Check
#12 F000:F841 Memory Size              #13 0666:09BF Disk(ette) IO
#14 0733:005C RS232 IO                 #15 F000:F859 Casette IO
#16 F000:E82E Keyboard IO              #17 0733:009C Printer IO
#18 F600:0000 ROM Basic Entry          #19 C800:0186 Bootstrap Loader
#1A F000:FE6E Time of Day              #1B 0070:0138 Keyboard Break Ctrl
#1C 0666:04FD Timer Irpt Ctrl          #1D F000:F0A4 Video Init Parms.
#1E 0000:0522 Diskette Parms.          #1F F000:0000 Graphics Base 128-255

#20 00E3:0BFB DOS Program Terminate    #21 0598:0180 DOS Function Call
#22 0598:028C DOS Terminate Address    #23 0598:0299 DOS Ctrl-Break Exit
#24 0598:04E2 DOS Fatal Error Exit     #25 00E3:14D4 DOS Abs Disk Read
#26 00E3:1521 DOS Abs Disk Write       #27 00E3:27E7 DOS Terminate (Fix)
```

Figure 2c:
Output from CENV,
page 3

```
   IBM PC Memory Map with 64kb/Line
 * = This Prog.      ? = Unused (RAM)
 m = Monochrome      c = Color/Graphics
 b = BASIC (ROM)     s = BIOS  (ROM)
 . = Empty Memory    f = Fixed DISK(ROM)
 D = DOS Related   2-9= system areas
 Seg: 0   1   2   3   4   5   6   7   8   9   A   B   C   D   E   F
0000: DD333333333333333333332222222***********************************
1000: *******************************************************?????????
2000: ????????????????????????????????????????????????????????????????
3000: ????????????????????????????????????????????????????????????????
4000: ????????????????????????????????????????????????????????????????
5000: ................................................................
6000: ................................................................
7000: ................................................................
8000: ................................................................
9000: ................................................................
A000: ................................................................
B000: mmmm............................cccccccccccccccc................
C000: ................................ffffffff........................
D000: ................................................................
E000: ................................................................
F000: ........................bbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbbssssssss
 Seg: 0   1   2   3   4   5   6   7   8   9   A   B   C   D   E   F
```

Figure 2d:
Output from CENV,
page 4

```
Program Segment Prefix at: 074B

0000: CD 20 00 50 00 9A F0 FF-0D F0 8C 02 98 05 99 02  |. .P............
0010: 98 05 E2 04 98 05 98 05-01 01 01 00 02 FF FF FF  |................
0020: FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF-FF FF FF FF 27 07 EA E8  |............'...
0030: BB 0D 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  |................
0040: 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  |................
0050: CD 21 CB 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 20 20 20  |.!............
0060: 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20-00 00 00 00 00 20 20 20  |          .....
0070: 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  |        ........
0080: 00 0D 0D 6E 0D 64 0D 31-32 2C 65 2C 37 2C 31 2C  |...n.d.12,e,7,1,
0090: 70 0D 6F 20 73 74 61 72-74 0D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D  |p.o start.------
00A0: 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D-2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D  |----------------
00B0: 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D-2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D  |----------------
00C0: 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D-2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D 2D  |----------------
00D0: 0D 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  |................
00E0: 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  |................
00F0: 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  |................

F00D:FFF0 at #06 CALL Dispatcher
0598:028C at #0A Terminate
0598:0299 at #0E Ctrl-Break
0598:04E2 at #12 Critical Error
Memory. Total No Seg=5000
```

natively, the contents of the disk may be inspected on a sector–by–sector basis. Function Key 1 will toggle the program between the two modes.

The program initially displays two (or more, depending on the size of the diskette) pages of data describing the drive type, complete information on sectors and clusters, and a graphic display of the contents of the disk media derived from the cluster information found in the FAT (see figure 1). Some of the descriptions of the representation codes are not well–explained in the manual. "Unassigned 0,1" refers to the first two clusters on the diskette, which are not accessible to the user. (They contain the boot directory, the FAT, and the directory.)

The DISASM utility performs the obvious function of disassembling executable code files and, in addition, will disassemble specified areas of memory.

The output from this part of the program can be used to locate those areas of the diskette which have been "reserved." There are two uses for this designation: to hide bad tracks and to copy protect a program. IBM software usually uses a "bad" code to specify bad sectors; other software may use the "reserved" code. The "reserved" code can also be used to hide program data and information. Sectors which have been assigned to files are displayed using an alphabetic code, thus the location of each section of a file can be instantly ascertained. This utility can be used to check for highly fragmented files. Copying files with non-contiguous clusters onto a fresh diskette will help minimize diskette access time.

You can designate any cluster

as a starting point for viewing the disk contents by positioning the cursor to the desired FAT entry on the graphic display and then pressing function key 1. If no cluster is specified, the default is sector zero. CDISK can inspect the contents of a diskette, even if the directory has been lost and, because the screen can be printed or redirected, a hard

CMEM will display the hexadecimal and equivalent ASCII information of any selected area of memory.

copy of lost files can be obtained. The format, which is the same as CFILE, necessitates retyping the data in this case, but at least the information can be recovered. Most utilities which can unerase lost files can only do so if there is a directory to consult.

Miscellaneous Utilities

The CFILE program mentioned above has a counterpart in CMEM. This utility will display the hexadecimal and equivalent ASCII information of any selected area of memory. The desired memory segment is specified when invoking the program and can be paged through with the same keys as the other utilities in this package. Only one segment (64K) at a time can be viewed; paging is not continuous through memory. The segment can be specified in either hexadecimal or decimal and the screen an be dumped to the printer.

The DISASM utility performs the obvious function of disassembling executable code files and, in addition, will disassemble specified areas of memory. If a file is to be disassembled it is given as the argument to the DISASM command and the disassembled code is output to a file with the same name with an .ASM suffix. To access areas of RAM or ROM, three parameters are required: the memory segment, the starting, and the ending offset. These may be specified as either hexadecimal or decimal values. The output is sent to a file named SEG#nnnn.ASM.

There is a 32,000–byte limit on the file size and a long file takes a minute or two to be processed. If any code produced is considered "ambiguous" by the program, comment lines are inserted to describe the problem. I disassembled three code files and never found a message of any kind; the description of ambiguous code is left somewhat ambiguous.

CENV is used to examine the configuration and environment of the system being used. There are several pages of information (obtained by using the paging keys); although this fact is not terribly obvious from the display. The information presented by this utility is not well–covered in the documentation and is useful only to the advanced programmer who requires specific information regarding file control blocks, interrupt locations, and diskette parameter information. The first page (figure 2a) describes the hardware and memory attached to the system, what types of video cards are installed, and the current and power-up video modes.

The second page (figure 2b) gives all of the PC diskette parameter table values and where in memory these arguments are located. This information is invaluable to programmers who wish to change any of these values.

The third page of CENV (figure 2c) lists IBM PC interrupts one through twenty-seven, alongside their respective segments and offsets. These locations change for some of the DOS routines that must be loaded by the operating system (PRINTER and MODE, for example) and which then change the vectors to point to themselves, making them resident programs.

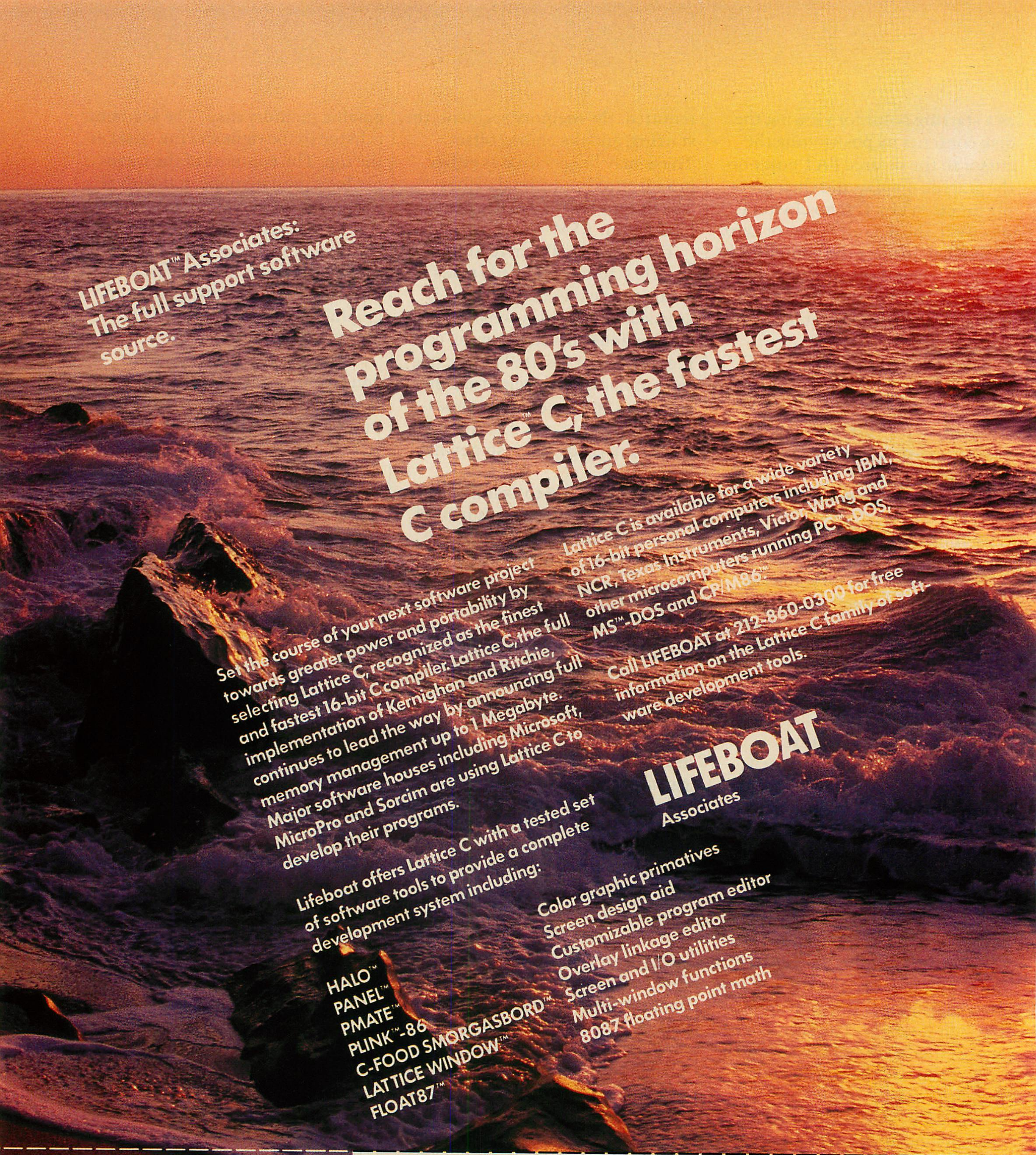
Page four (figure 2d) displays a graphic memory map. The segment is listed to the right and the offset at the top. The contents of the memory locations are indicated with alphanumeric characters, an explanation of which heads up the table. This is useful for seeing the location of all the various parts and pieces of the operating system, graphics, and monochrome displays, hard disk, and so on.

The last two pages are more educational than useful. They display the file control block for the program currently being run, which in this case is CENV. Unfortunately, there is no way to get the file control block for just any old program. The only ones obtainable are for CENV or DEBUG, if CENV is loaded by this utility. The segment and offset for four of the interrupts being trapped by DOS when CENV is running are listed under the display.

Most of the programs in this package provide very detailed information on diskette, hard disk, and memory contents. The advanced programmer will get a great deal of use out of all these utilities. A few

Because all text delimiters are shown in hexadecimal, this program is very useful for finding out what unprintable characters are placed in a text file by word processors.

of the programs, like BROWSE and CDIFF, give the novice and intermediate user a simple introduction to some of the more advanced capabilities of this package. Whether these programs are worth the price of $100 depends on whether the user enjoys looking at the data without being able to directly modify it and, of course, whether good use can be made of the information.


LIFEBOAT™ Associates:
The full support software source.
Reach for the programming horizon of the 80's with Lattice™ C, the fastest C compiler.
Set the course of your next software project towards greater power and portability by selecting Lattice C, recognized as the finest and fastest 16-bit C compiler. Lattice C, the full implementation of Kernighan and Ritchie, continues to lead the way by announcing full memory management up to 1 Megabyte. Major software houses including Microsoft, MicroPro and Sorcim are using Lattice C to develop their programs.
Lattice C is available for a wide variety of 16-bit personal computers including IBM, NCR, Texas Instruments, Victor, Wang and other microcomputers running PC™-DOS, MS™-DOS and CP/M86.™
Call LIFEBOAT at 212-860-0300 for free information on the Lattice C family of software development tools.
LIFEBOAT
Associates
Lifeboat offers Lattice C with a tested set of software tools to provide a complete development system including:
HALO™
PANEL™
PMATE™
PLINK™-86
C-FOOD SMORGASBORD™
LATTICE WINDOW™
FLOAT87™
Color graphic primatives
Screen design aid
Customizable program editor
Overlay linkage editor
Screen and I/O utilities
Multi-window functions
8087 floating point math

Diskette Cleaning

How to keep them spinning.

TECH NOTEBOOK 7

Will Fastie

Normal preventative maintenance for diskette drives should include periodic cleaning of the read/write heads, especially if the diskette drives have a heavy duty cycle. Head cleaning can be performed by a service technician, but there are also head cleaning kits available from a number of manufacturers that are simple to use.

IBM, BASF, Verbatim, and Scotch 3M, to name a few, manufacture head cleaning diskettes. These diskettes appear to be normal disks, but closer inspection reveals that at least one side of the medium is made of a cloth-like material. Some kits include a cleaning surface. The diskette is designed to be placed in the drive unit; when the disk is spun, it wipes accumulated debris from the head.

In order to produce the cleaning effect, it is necessary to engage the disk drive. The best solution to this problem is a simple program that would attempt to read (or write) the cleaning diskette, all the while ignoring errors. However, such a program is not provided with the IBM PC or its associated software, so another method is needed.

There is a very simple way to make the disk spin on command. First, boot DOS. Place the cleaning diskette in the desired drive. For this example, assume drive B is to have its heads cleaned. Issue the DOS command B:FRED DOS will attempt to load the program FRED from disk drive B. This process will obviously cause the diskette to spin. Because the cleaning diskette has no data recorded upon it, DOS will soon (after about 10 seconds) complain of a failure on that diskette drive. At that juncture, the now-famous message, Abort, Retry, Ignore? will appear.

The next step depends on the instructions for the particular brand of cleaning disk employed. Each manufacturer recommends a specific amount of time for the cleaning process; 30 to 60 seconds seems to be the popular range. To accumulate more cleaning time, type R to make DOS retry the disk operation and, therefore, spin the diskette some more. When the cleaning process is complete, type A to make DOS give up and return to command level.

Repeat this process for each drive in the system. Note that the presence of the DOS disk is not required, so this technique works perfectly well on systems with a single disk drive.

For those of you who would prefer a program, the listing provided here will spin the desired disk drive for a specified length of time. It takes an XT running DOS 2.0 and BASIC about 6.5 seconds to time out a diskette drive. This fact is used by the program to determine how many iterations to perform to cause the disk to spin for the specified time. The actual time may vary by a few seconds.

Be sure to check with your dealer or other reputable service organization for a recommendation as to the particular type or brand of head cleaner to be employed. In fact, be sure the company maintaining your system approves of the brand you intend to use, as their service policy probably does not include repairs required because of negligence or abuse.

This is one thing not to skimp on: obtain the highest-grade product available. An inferior or defective cleaning device can damage the heads or the head positioning mechanism, and result in expensive repairs.

LISTING A PROGRAM TO SPIN DISKETTE DRIVES

```
100 'Program to spin diskette drives for cleaning purposes
110 'Will Fastie -- 11 July 83 -- SPINNER.BAS
120 CLS: KEY OFF
130 PRINT "To end the program, depress ENTER when asked for drive letter."
140 ON ERROR GOTO 290
150 PRINT
160 INPUT "Enter letter of disk drive to spin:  ",D$
170 IF LEN(D$)=0 THEN GOTO 260
180 D$=LEFT$(D$,1): D$=CHR$(ASC(D$)+32*(D$>"Z"))
190 PRINT "Enter number of seconds to spin  ";D$;":  ";
200 INPUT "",S
210 IF S <= 0 THEN BEEP: GOTO 190
220 ITERATIONS = INT((S+6.49)/6.5)
230 OPEN D$+":FRED" FOR INPUT AS #1
240 ITERATIONS = ITERATIONS - 1
250 IF ITERATIONS = 0 THEN GOTO 150 ELSE GOTO 230
260 '----- Exit program
270 CLOSE
280 SYSTEM
290 '----- Routine to handle diskette I/O errors
300 RESUME NEXT
```

System Overview

ETHER SERIES

Ethernet arrives for the PC.

Bruce W. Churchill

In the first article of this series we discussed the implementation of a baseband, bus architecture, CSMA local area network—PCnet. This month we will focus on a similar type of LAN, but one that implements the existing and relatively well-known Ethernet specification. Ethernet was developed by the XEROX Corporation and has become an early de-facto standard for local area networking. Ethernet is also the basis for one of the technologies chosen for the IEEE-802 Local Area Network specification, currently undergoing definition.

Overview

EtherSeries is a hardware and software package that connects IBM PCs and allows the sharing of mass storage and printer resources. EtherSeries is the first IBM PC local area network designed to Ethernet specifications. It is classified as a baseband modulated, distributed bus topology network, with carrier senses, multiple access contention protocol inluding collision detection (CSMA/CD). EtherSeries uses the PC DOS operating system and is transparent to the user, except for the additional operating system level commands necessary to establish links and manage the flow of information between work stations and shared resources. As few as two or as many as 100 PCs may be connected to a single segment, or a continuous run of network cable terminated at both ends. Because Ether–Series is an Ethernet-compatible LAN, it supports multiple segments. These segments are connected by devices known as repeaters, which make several physical segments appear to be one logical network. A maximum size Ethernet extends for 2,800 meters end-to-end. EtherSeries is also compatible with other Ethernet components such as repeaters, fibre-optic transceivers, communications servers and network peripheral resources.

EtherSeries and LAN Standardization

In order to provide a better perspective on EtherSeries hardware and software and its relationship to the Ethernet specification, let us briefly discuss the concept of a layered architecture for the management of data communications. Why is such a concept so important? Simply because of the complexity of data

> *EtherSeries is a hardware and software package that connects IBM PCs and allows the sharing of mass storage and printer resources. It's the first IBM PC local area network designed to Ethernet specifications.*

communications and the economic motivation of standardization. The best known such architecture is illustrated in figure 1 and is commonly known as the International Standards Organization (ISO) 7-layer model for Open Systems Interconnection, or ISO-OSI for short.

The standardization of protocol, or rules of behavior between equivalent ISO-OSI layers on dis-

Bruce Churchill has worked in data communications for the Navy for 13 years and been involved in the micro field for five years. He is author of the book from Robert J. Brady, Communications and Networking for the IBM PC.

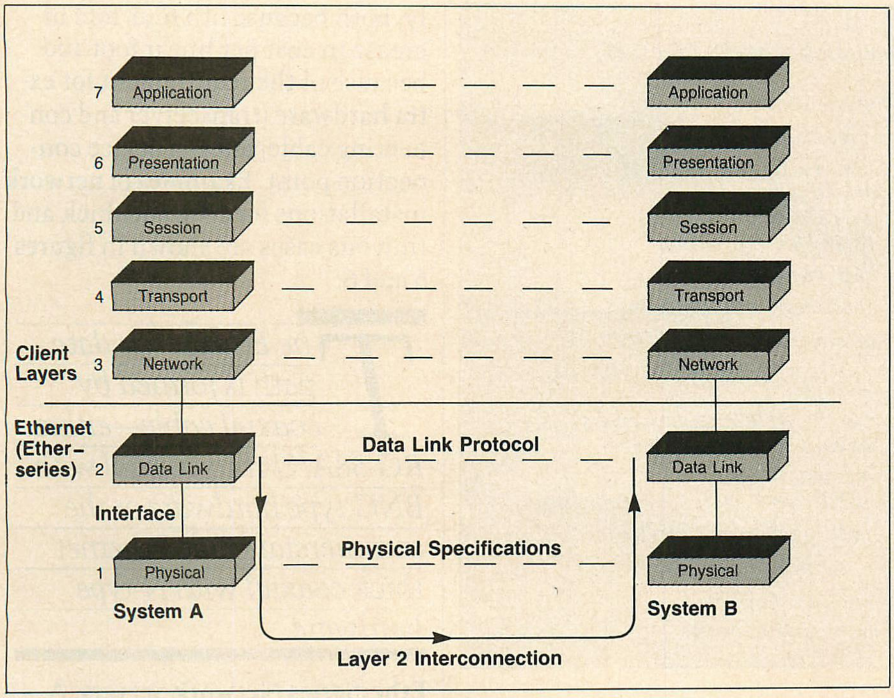


Figure 1: ISO-OSI 7-Layer Communications Model

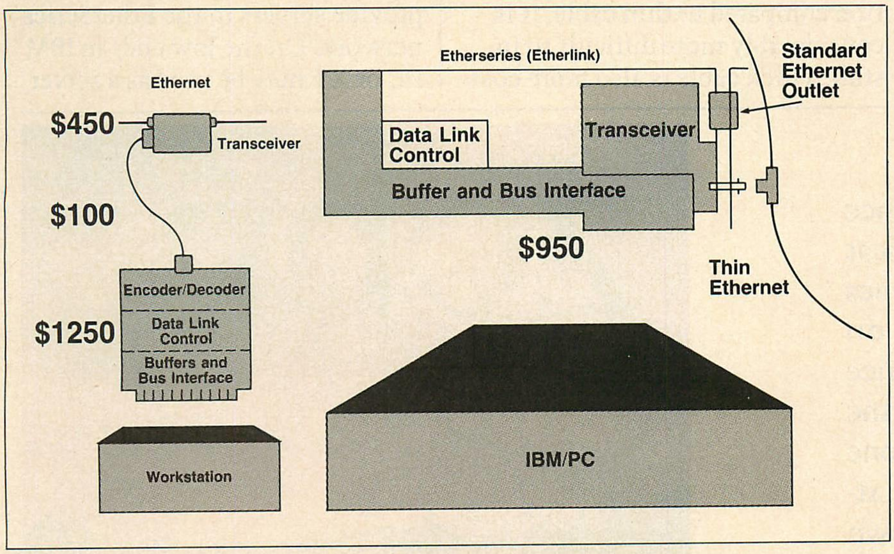


Figure 2: Ethernet-to-EtherSeries Transition

similar systems is still in progress, with only the lower layers (1–3) well established. The Ethernet specification in particular addresses only layers 1 and 2 as shown in figure 1. The significance of standardization might be better understood by looking at the process of communicating data between two dissimilar systems. Figure 1 shows two systems logically interconnected through the data link layer, illustrating compatible data link and physical layer protocol and specifications. The client layers (3–7) in both systems may be dissimilar but should see the same interface from the data link layer, even if the details of implementation differ.

The economic benefits of this piecewise standardization are realized through lowered costs of producing components to carry out functions in a given layer or layers. EtherSeries is a case in point. Because there is a standard specification for Ethernet in layers 1 and 2, data link functions could be reduced from many components on a VAX controller card to a single logic chip on the IBM PC adapter card. The result has been close to a 50 percent price reduction to implement an Ethernet compatible controller card. This price reduction is graphically illustrated in figure 2.

EtherSeries Hardware

The hardware associated with EtherSeries is composed of network bus components, Etherlink adapter cards, and the EtherShare network server. Each of these will be discussed next in more detail.

Network Bus Components. The EtherSeries data path is formed by coaxial cable—either RG-58A/U thin coaxial with BNC-type hardware or the commercial grade Ethernet thick coaxial with N-type hardware. Thin cable can be connected directly to the adapter card with a BNC T-connector, as shown in figure 2. Thick cable requires an external transceiver, a cable tap, and a transceiver cable. Figure 3 illustrates a typical Ethernet configuration and its relationship to component functions and ISO model layers. The relationship between Ethernet and EtherSeries is shown

Because there is a standard specification for Ethernet in the layered communications architecture, data link functions could be reduced from many components on a VAX controller card to a single logic chip on the IBM PC adapter card.

in both figures 2 and 3. Thick and thin cable may be intermingled on the same network as long as basic network configuration rules are followed. These rules, which conform to Ethernet specifications, are sum-

Table 1: The Twelve Commandments Of Ethernet

I.	100 nodes maximum on any single segment
II.	Nodes must be at least 2.5 meters apart
III.	Node is defined as an addressable entity connected via: • Cable Tap (T-connector for thin cable) • Transceiver (on adapter card for thin system) • Controller (on adapter card for thin system)
IV.	Any number of devices may be connected to a node
V.	Repeaters may be placed at any or every node position
VI.	Maximum length of cable between any 2 nodes = 1500m
VII.	Maximum segment length: • 300 m Thin Ethernet • 500 m Thick Ethernet with non-3Com transceivers • 1000 m Thick Ethernet with 3Com transceivers
VIII.	Maximum length of transceiver cable = 50 m (Adapter card to thick cable transceiver)
IX.	Maximum of 2 repeaters in a path between any 2 nodes
X.	Maximum of 1000 m for a point-to-point link
XI.	Maximum end-to-end network length = 2800 m
XII.	Maximum of 1024 nodes on a complete network

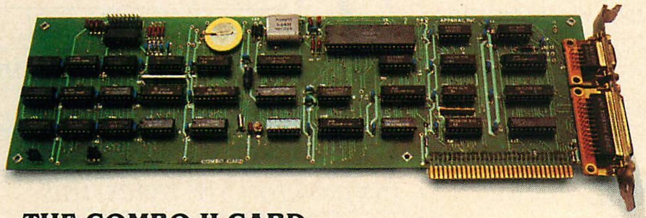
marized in table 1. Figure 4 shows a maximum configuration conforming to the Ethernet specification. Although thick cable allows longer segments and has better RF isolation compared to thin cable, it is considerably more difficult to install. Thick cable is also more costly, both because of a four-fold increase in cost per linear foot and because of the requirement for extra hardware (transceiver and connecting cable) at each device connection point. Examples of network installations for both the thick and thin bus cases are shown in figures 5 and 6.

The EtherSeries data path is formed by coaxial cable—either RG-58A/U thin coaxial with BNC-type hardware or the commercial grade Ethernet thick coaxial with N-type hardware.

EtherSeries Network Servers. A range of computer types exists to provide servers to the EtherSeries network. On the low end, an IBM PC or XT may be used as a server,

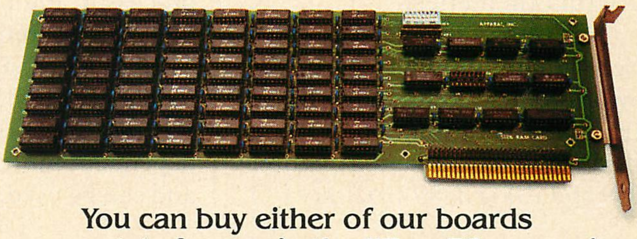
THE ONE AND ONLY
CRAMBO

You've got a problem. Go to your favorite computer store. Ask to see their Combo Cards. Then ask about their RAM Cards. See the problem? Just too many to pick from. Now, ask to see the CRAMBO™. No problem. There's only one. Ours. Except you don't know what a CRAMBO is. You've probably guessed it's a Combo Card piggy backed to a RAM Card. So it only takes up one slot in your IBM/PC. That's right. But here are the details.



THE COMBO II CARD:
For **$189** you'll get a Clock Calendar, Async Communications, Parallel Printer and a Game Adapter.

THE 512K RAM CARD:
It too, is only **$189** with 64K of RAM installed. And when you need more RAM, 64K increments are available for $64 each. And, SDRIVE, the electronic disk emulator, is available at no cost with the RAM Card.

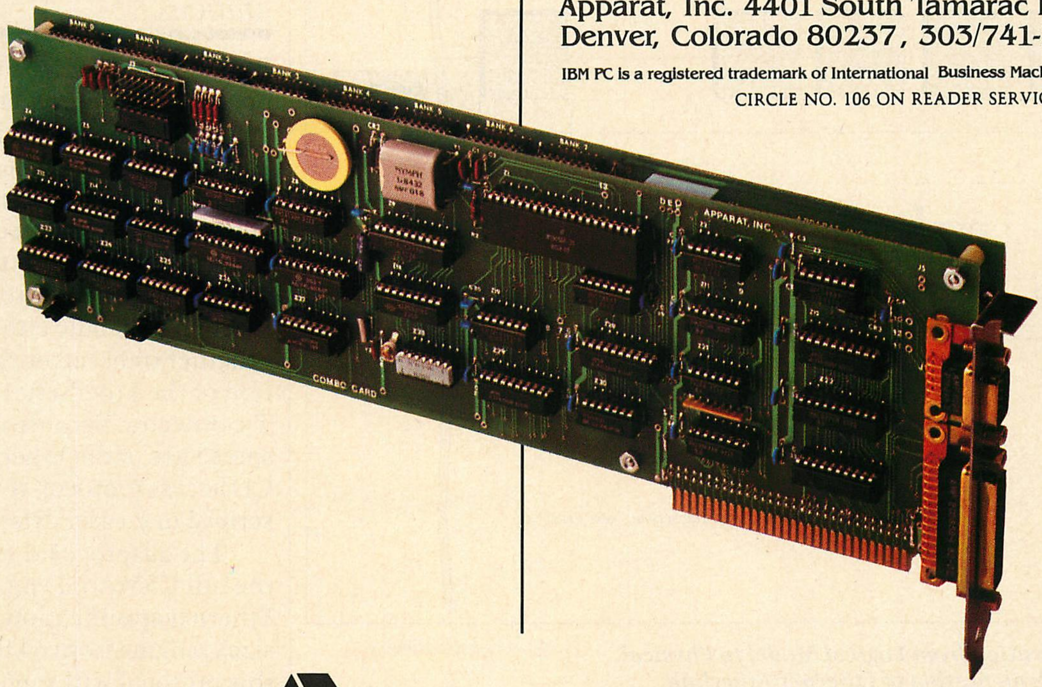


You can buy either of our boards separately for use in the XT or PC expansion chassis. But only our boards can be piggy backed to give you the one and only CRAMBO. And for only **$359.**

Go check out the CRAMBO at the same store carrying all those Combo Cards and RAM Cards. If they don't have the CRAMBO have them call us. **800/525-7674.** Or write: Apparat, Inc. 4401 South Tamarac Parkway, Denver, Colorado 80237, 303/741-1778.

IBM PC is a registered trademark of International Business Machine Corp.

CIRCLE NO. 106 ON READER SERVICE CARD



Apparat, Inc.

providing 10 megabytes of hard disk and up to two printer resources to the network. This server is designed to handle about 8-10 users. For larger networks, a modified Altos 586 is used to provide a selection of 30 or 60 megabytes and up to two printers to the network. It is also capable of controlling a modem that acts as a remote dial-in server for advanced electronic mail applications. The high end of the server family is the DEC VAX 750, which is an appropriate choice for organizations with such a computer installed on the premises. The VAX server must be using Version 4.1 of UNIX in order to be compatible with EtherSeries.

The Altos 586 is worthy of a discussion in its own right. It is a powerful microcomputer, with a 10 MHZ 8086 as the main processor. The 8086 is accompanied by Intel 8089 and Zilog Z-80 auxiliary I/O

A range of computer types exists to provide servers to the EtherSeries network, from the IBM PC or XT to the modified Altos 586 to the DEC VAX 750.

processors. The 8089 is used for hard disk and tape cartridge control and the Z-80 for floppy drive and asynchronous port control. A 1-megabyte floppy disk is integral to the 586 for hard disk backup. A communications board contains Ethernet circuitry, an Intel 80186 processor, and 128K of RAM. The 586 main system board contains 512K of RAM. The Altos 586 runs under the XENIX operating system—in effect this server is an independent multi-user workstation and can be used as such.

Adapter Card. Each device, or node on the network, must have an EtherSeries network adapter card installed. The adapter card contains the circuitry and firmware required to implement Layers 1 and 2 (Physical and Data Link) of the previously discussed 7-layer ISO model. As shown in figure 2, the card includes a transceiver, which is capable of driving the thin Ethernet cable. As previously mentioned, the thick Ethernet installation requires an external transceiver, which is available from several suppliers in addition to 3Com or XEROX Corporation. The adapter card is responsible for four functions that are required for proper network operation: interface to the host processor and RAM, data encapsulation into

The adapter card implements the full CSMA/CD protocol in the Ehternet specification. With packet sizes ranging from 64 to 1518 bytes, this protocol will support a network configuration of up to 2.8 km between any two work stations.

Ethernet packets (and the reverse operation), data link layer control (contention protocol algorithms), and the physical processes required for the transmission and reception of baseband modulated data. Figure 2 shows the layout of the adapter card by function. Note that the card is set up to handle either standard Ethernet transceiver cable connection or the EtherSeries BNC type–T-connector. Because of the widespread use of the Ethernet CSMA/CD access protocol, it will be described in greater detail.

The adapter card implements the full CSMA/CD protocol in the Ethernet specification. With packet sizes ranging from 64 to 1518 bytes, this protocol will support a net-

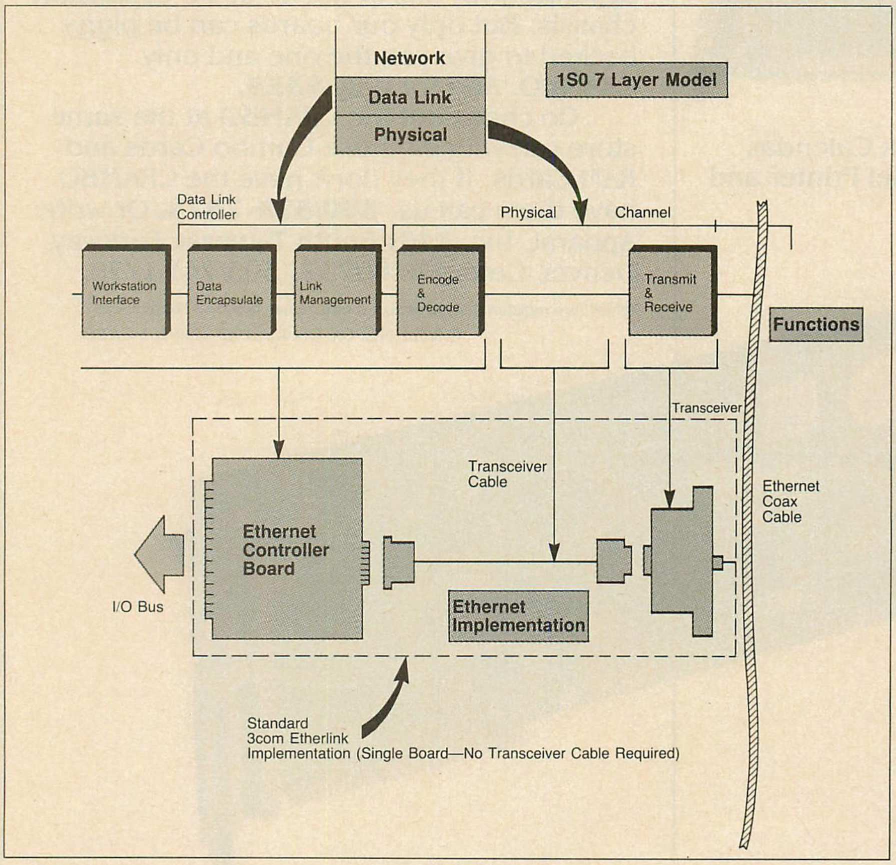
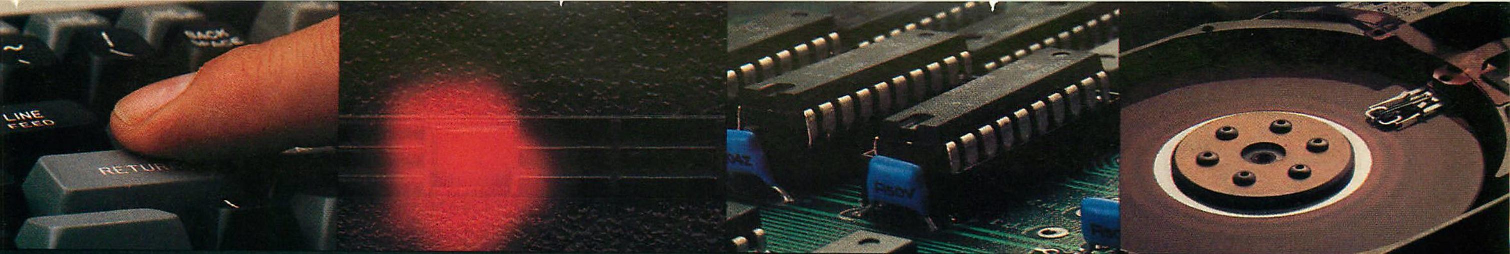


Figure 3: Transition from Logical Model to Physical Implementation of Ethernet/Etherlink



Shift into Ultradrive

Targa:™ The ultimate mass storage machine for your IBM®-PC and other microcomputers.

With up to 30 megabytes of hard disk capacity, you can handle data bases that would fill phonebooks. And access, process, and update that data in seconds.

Which, after all is what serious personal computing is all about.

The Purr of Performance.

Targa is one beautiful piece of engineering.

Fast. Data glides in and out at 5 million bits per second.

Quiet. Even with disks spinning at 3600 rpm inside.

And solid. Targa is built to deliver uncompromising performance.

Automatic Is Standard.

Just plug the Targa into your PC, and you're ready to go.

Targa comes with plain English instructions and plenty of software. Easy to use, clearly documented programs help you transfer data in and out, use powerful system utilities, and diagnose problems.

The Luxury Model at Economy Prices.

Made by CMC, one of the world's oldest microcomputing hard disk manufacturers, Targa Models I, II, and III may be ordered in a variety of popular storage capacities starting with 5 megabytes. And they can easily be expanded to larger capacities as your needs grow. Other options include TargaTape™ backup and TargaNet™ networking systems.

Powerful standalone Targa mass storage systems start at under $2000. Considerably less than many lesser systems.

Take a Test Drive.

Call CMC for the name of the dealer nearest you. Or, for more information about our exciting line of Targa products, call toll free **800-CMC-INTL.** (In Washington, call (206) 885-1600.)

Give your personal computer a much needed boost in mass storage horsepower and give yourself a big lift in productivity.

CMC International

BELLEVUE, WASH. 98005

See us at

COMDEX™/Fall '83

November 28-December 2, 1983

Las Vegas Convention Center

Las Vegas, Nevada

BOOTH 2778

CIRCLE NO. 123 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Targa for the IBM-PC is supplied with both MS-DOS and CPM-86 compatibility. Other computers supported under CP/M, CP/M-86, and MS-DOS. IBM-PC is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation, MS-DOS is a registered trademark of Microsoft, and CPM and CPM-86 are registered trademarks of Digital Research, Inc.

work configuration of up to 2.8 km between any two work stations. A multisegment Ethernet (or EtherSeries) LAN is shown in figure 7; the Ethernet packet format is shown in figure 8. The maximum packet size is based on efficiency and the desire to minimize collisions (two or more data packets on the network simultaneously). Minimum packet size is chosen to guarantee collision detection (CD) at maximum network sizes. Figure 9 illustrates how minimum packet size and maximum network size interact to provide collision detection under the worst case condition.

The time required to transmit 64 bytes is 51.2 microseconds at a 10 megabit data rate. This is approximately equal to the time required for a bit of data to make the round trip between two PCs at the network extremities in figures 7 and 9. If PC A commences a packet

Each device, or node on the network, must have an EtherSeries network adapter card installed.

transmission on the network, B will not sense the carrier until A's packet begins to arrive. If PC B were to start a transmission just prior to the arrival of A's packet (which would be allowable with the CSMA/CD protocol), a collision would be generated at B when A's packet arrives. B would then transmit a collision signal, which would begin to arrive at A while A was still transmitting the original 64-byte packet. Thus the adapter card in A would also detect a collision and begin its collision recovery routine. In the recovery routine, the PC continues transmission for a short interval in order to generate the collision signal—known as a jam transmission—which is followed by a random silence period, before it reattempts sending the packet. Because this is the worst case example, any longer packet size or any two nodes closer together on the network will also have guaranteed collision detection.

This logic is the most difficult part of the CSMA/CD protocol to comprehend. The remaining aspects of this access control method are relatively straightforward. If the physical layer of a station does not sense a carrier, it signals the data link layer to send it one or more Ethernet packets. On a baseband network such as EtherSeries, a "carrier" is actually the presence of digital signal transitions (1 to 0 and 0 to 1) from bit-to-bit. Once the packets are transmitted, the collision detect logic works as just described. With Ethernet packet sizes, the percentage of collisions is quite low (less than 1 percent), even on relatively large and busy networks (in excess of 100 work stations). The end result is that a business user of EtherSeries or similar LANs need not be overly concerned about degraded performance due to collisions.

EtherSeries Software. EtherSeries software is available in four separate packages: EtherShare, EtherPrint, EtherMail, and Remote EtherMail. Each of the packages operates both on network servers and on user PCs. EtherShare and EtherPrint user software is provided on a distribution diskette with the basic EtherLink network adapter card kit. Purchase of the EtherSeries network AP server includes EtherShare/AP server software. EtherShare/PC software is distributed separately if the use of IBM PCs or XTs as servers is con-

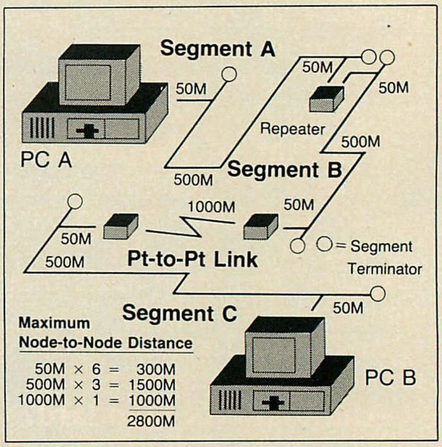


Figure 4: Multi-Segment Ethernet (Maximum Size)

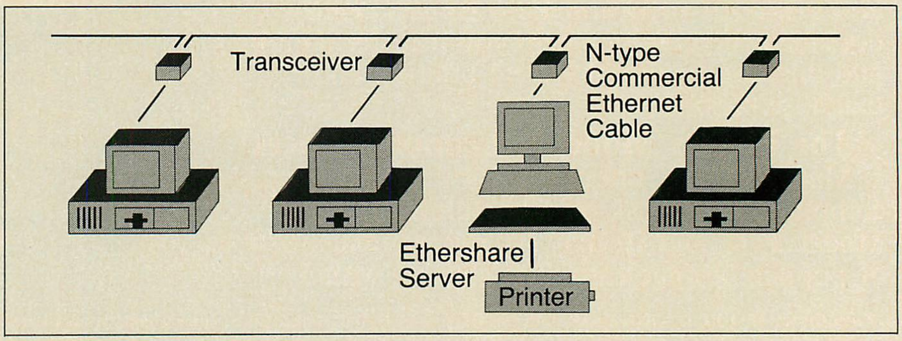


Figure 5: Thick Cable EtherLink (with EtherShare/AP)

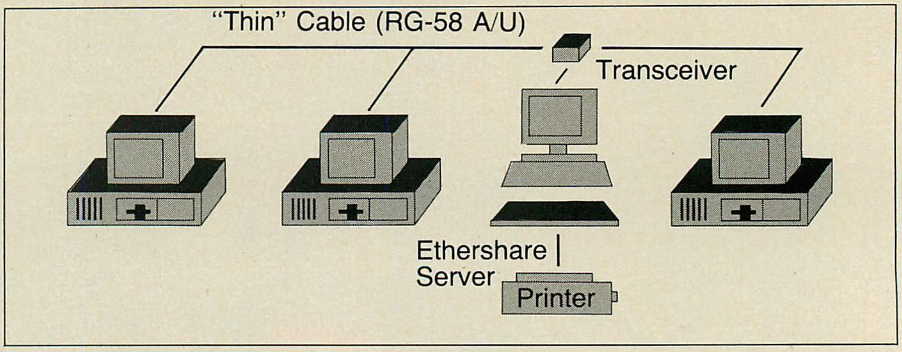


Figure 6: Thin Cable EtherLink (with EtherShare/AP)

An IBM-PC Without FAST FACTS™ is Like a Golfer Without His Bag.

Your IBM-PC is only half-ready for work if it doesn't have FAST FACTS, the executive's filing system. FAST FACTS, you see, makes full use of the IBM-PC's capability to handle information quickly and efficiently. No matter if you're a business executive or home executive, FAST FACTS can take care of your filing needs. And with its built-in *Report Writer,* FAST FACTS, makes it a snap to summarize selected portions of your files. What's more, FAST FACTS can share information with VisiCalc®, 1-2-3™ and WordStar®. It's also priced to fit easily in your computer budget.

So don't purchase an IBM-PC that's only half-ready for work. Get FAST FACTS, the latest introduction of Innovative Software, developers of proven executive businessware for the IBM-PC and its compatibles. Also ask your dealer about T.I.M. III, the user friendly data base manager and FAST GRAPHS, the full color business graphics package. Innovative Software's products are available at Computerlands®, Computer Marts, Entre Computer Centers℠ and other quality dealers. For more information call **1-800-255-0470.**

CIRCLE NO. 166 ON READER SERVICE CARD

INNOVATIVE Software

developers of practical businessware for the executive.

9300 W. 110th St., Suite 380
Overland Park, KS 66210 USA
913/383-1089 • Telex: 209542
1-800-255-0470

templated. EtherPrint and EtherMail are optional software packages for either the PC or AP network servers. The optional EtherMail software is provided for both the appropriate server and user PCs. Each

EtherPrint is supplied as a software utility package that runs on EtherShare/PC or AP servers, and on user PCs.

user PC downloads its EtherMail software from an associated server. Remote EtherMail software is an optional add-on for each remote PC or XT desiring to access the EtherSeries network.

EtherShare Software. The use of EtherShare in the EtherSeries network adds a new dimension to its utility in the business environment. Hard disk drive management requires the installation of the EtherShare software package. Hard disk drives are provided by 3Com Corporation with the EtherShare/AP server—other types of IBM PC compatible drives or the IBM XT are supported by EtherShare/PC software. EtherShare is made up of three distinct parts:

- The EtherShare server, which manages all EtherShare resources such as hard disk volumes and printers
- The EtherShare administrative program, which performs housekeeping jobs on the server
- EtherShare commands, which execute from a command file on each user PCs local drive (usually A:)

There are 14 EtherShare commands accessible by each user on the EtherSeries network. These commands allow the user to

- Log-in and Log-out from the

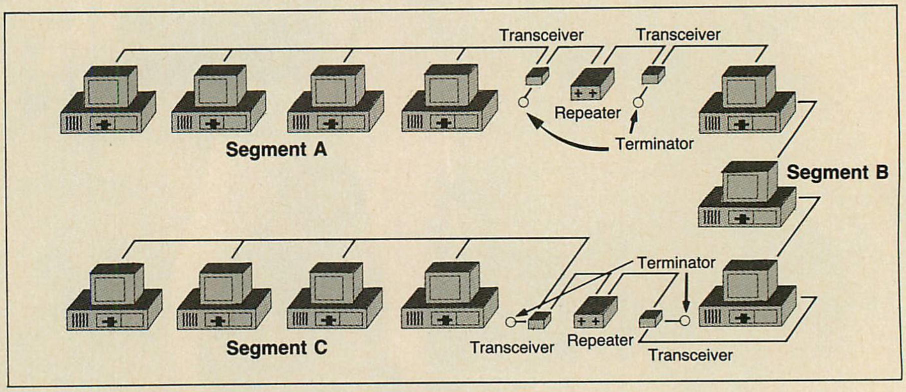


Figure 7: Multi-Segment Ethernet (or EtherSeries)

CIRCLE NO. 132 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Announcing A Major New Innovation From The Publishers Of PC

Now, Get Up To 72 Programs For As Little As $2.00 Each.

Introducing PC DISK MAGAZINE. The Only Magazine On Disk That Gives You A Library Of Software Programs For Your IBM Personal Computer ... At A Fraction Of The Price!

Imagine building a library of software programs with amazing ease...adding utilities, subroutines, games and data files to your system...for as little as $2 per program! Introducing PC DISK MAGAZINE —a totally new concept for your microcomputer that gives you all this and more! You get thoroughly tested, ready-to-run programs on a floppy disk— complete with a comprehensive, illustrated User Manual—for the ultimate in ease, efficiency and economy. With your subscription to PC DISK MAGAZINE you'll receive a floppy disk containing up to 12 varied ready-to-use programs and files. Developed by experts and tested by the editors, you'll be able to expand the use of your IBM personal computer.

Business and Finance Aids: Create advanced pie, bar and line chart graphics. Compute loan payment tables. Calculate the Present Value and Internal Rate of Return for your investments. VisiCalc® templates for Real Estate, Lease/Purchase and Tax Shelter analysis.

Programming Tools: Create cross-reference listings for your BASIC programs. Convert MBASIC™ program files to CBASIC™ format or reverse. Use your text editor on your BASIC programs. Convert data between BASIC and VISICALC® or Supercalc® formats.

Home/Personal Applications: Whether you need your own income tax return helper...proven ways to maintain a mailing list ...a personal cash flow analyzer...a speed reading trainer...or SAT test preparation aids, you'll get it from PC DISK MAGAZINE.

Utilities and Diagnostics: Print graphics, screen images on your printer...backup, copy, delete, un-delete or type files with simple menu commands. Use your computer to simulate a conversational terminal with function key control of disk or printer logging ...and more.

Data Files: Tax tables, population statistics, dictionaries and economic times series.

Games: Adventures! Strategies! Test your skills, intelligence and your luck!

Everything Is Ready For You

PC DISK MAGAZINE has everything you need. The accompanying 60-page User Manual is written clearly, concisely, in easy-to-understand terms. You'll be able to try the programs immediately...there's no need to type listings into your computer. Just insert the disk and go! That simply, all the latest software developments are at your fingertips!

server by user name

- Create or delete EtherShare volumes and network users
- Link and unlink local floppy drive designators to EtherShare volumes
- Modify user access and volume parameters
- Display directories of network users and volumes
- List servers in use
- Receive help on any EtherShare command

Volumes ranging in size from 64K to 32K can be established on the hard disk. Any user on the network can link one to four local drive designators to the EtherShare server. The allowable drive designators are C:, D:, E:, or F:. Drives A: and B: are reserved for local floppy devices.

A single user may only establish one set of links (drive designators to volume names) to a given server at a time. Over the entire network, however, any number of links may be set up from multiple users, up to the limit of the server capacity. The job of the EtherShare server software is to manage the allocation of disk space on the server with multiple users accessing the hard disk.

Table 2: EtherShare Volume Protection

Type	Volume Access	Password Assigned	No Password
PUBLIC	Shared, read-only access	Password required	Anyone can use
PRIVATE	Only one user can access (exclusive access)	Password required	Only the creator may use
SHARED	Multiple users with read/write access	Password required	Only the creator may use

File protection is accomplished by passwords and a simple scheme of access control. Protection is provided only to the volume level of storage. Individual files and records are not protected. A volume can be public, private, or shared. If public, everyone on the network has read only access; if private, only the creator of the volume has access. Shared volumes allow multiple users to read and write to the volume simultaneously. Passwords can be assigned to any volume. Table 2 summarizes the protection scheme managed by EtherShare software.

To clarify the server process on the EtherSeries network, let us create a volume on the shared hard disk and link a local drive specifier to that volume. We will first log in to our server, which has previously been set up as SERVER1, with the user name BRUCEC. Our volume will be named WORDPROC and it will be a public volume with the password HELLO. WORDPROC will be linked to our drive designator C:

A)ES LOGIN ?
YOUR NAME? BRUCEC
BRUCEC logged in to SERVER1
Your EtherShare drives are C: through F:

This could also have been entered in the non-prompted mode as:

A)ES LOGIN BRUCEC

We will now create the volume WORDPROC:

A)ES CREATE ?
Name? WORDPROC
Password? (HELLO)
(password is not displayed)
Size? /2
(set up as a double-sided diskette)
WORDPROC created
Formatting . . .
(user feedback)
WORDPROC formatted
(confirmation)

WORDPROC is automatically created as a private volume. Since we would want to make this a public volume, the ES MODIFY command would be invoked and the access parameter changed to /PUB. In order to link drive specified C: at our user PC to WORDPROC, the following dialog ensues:

A)ES LINK C: WORDPROC
(non-prompted command entry)

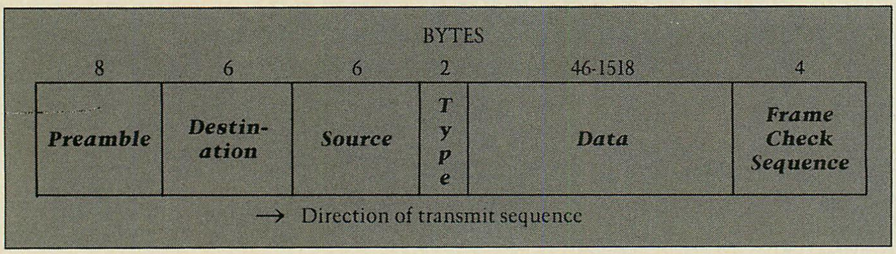


Figure 8: Ethernet Packet Format

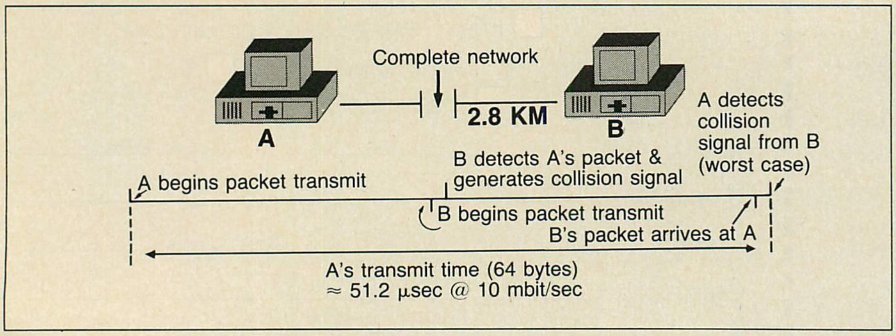


Figure 9: Ethernet Collision Detection

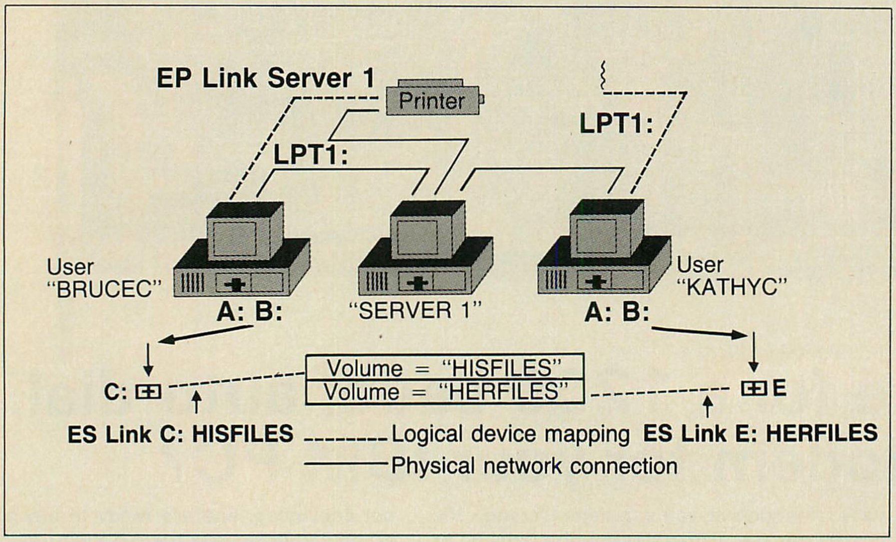


Figure 10: Basic EtherSeries Resource Sharing (with IBM XT Server)

WORDPROC linked to C:
(confirmation)
Compatibility of existing IBM PC software must be examined carefully prior to the planning of any major network applications. In general, for a software package to be compatible, it must:

- run under PC DOS 1.1 or 2.0
- use standard DOS floppy disk and printer drivers
- be relocatable in user RAM
- have program and data that leave about 5400 bytes of RAM for EtherSeries drivers when loaded
- not depend on linking to EtherShare volumes while running (equivalent to requiring a diskette insertion while running). All required files must be linked prior to execution

Any packet size longer than 64 bytes will have guaranteed collision detection, so business users need not be overly concerned about degraded performance due to message collision.

Software known to be compatible with EtherSeries network operation includes WordStar, VisiSeries, SuperCalc, pfs:, EasyWriter 1.1, and dBASE II. Another consideration in using existing sotware is autobooting requirements for certain programs. VisiSeries Programs fall into this category. In order not to break existing links, these programs should be booted with the AUTOEXEC command and not with CTRL-ALT-DEL.

The final topic to be discussed under EtherShare is the concept of semaphores. A semaphore is a symbolically named lock that provides a BIOS-level primitive for multiuser file updating applications. It should be emphasized that such a scheme must be integrated into a user's application software package before it has any practical value. Three primitives are supplied as part of EtherShare: LOCK/WAIT, LOCK/RETURN, and UNLOCK. These primitives can be set up to provide locking to both record or file levels. LOCK/WAIT is a try-until-free service, while LOCK/RETURN provides an immediate status to the requesting program. Up to 50 locks may be maintained on a server at any one time. At this point the reader should be aware that the development of multi-user applications software in a networking environment is not a trivial task. Several such packages are now becoming available and will make networking a significantly more valuable resource to the business community.

EtherPrint. EtherPrint is supplied as a software utility package that runs on EtherShare/PC or AP servers and on user PCs. It performs in similar fashion on either type of server. The commands to link and unlink printer resources are identical. The major difference is that EtherPrint/PC supports the use of parallel printers on the server, while EtherPrint/AP supports only serial printers. All print files are queued in the EtherShare server on a first-in, first-out basis until the selected printer is available. Once a printer link is established between a PC and a print device, normal PC DOS or BASIC print commands can be executed on the selected printer.

With EtherMail you can get mail from a network "post office," and send, reply to, forward, file, print, or save messages.

The following sequence will illustrate the use of EtherPrint to print a preliminary report on a draft-quality printer attached to the server, named SERVER2. The report has been prepared with WordStar. The first step is to establish the printer link:

A)EP LINK?
Your printer ID? LPT1:
(what printer device to link)
To whom? SERVER1
(designate the proper server)
Your name? BRUCEC
(enter EtherShare user name)
SERVER 1 linked to LPT1:
(confirmation of link)

In the event that a review of EtherShare printer assignment is desired, the following sequence will list printers attached to the server:

A)EP DIR SERVER2
(list printers on server SERVER2)

No one else is using this simple method to teach you Lotus 1-2-3.

You didn't learn to swim by reading about it. You took the plunge. With a little extra support at first, 'til you could stay afloat on your own.

ATI's training software teaches you Lotus 1-2-3 in the same way.

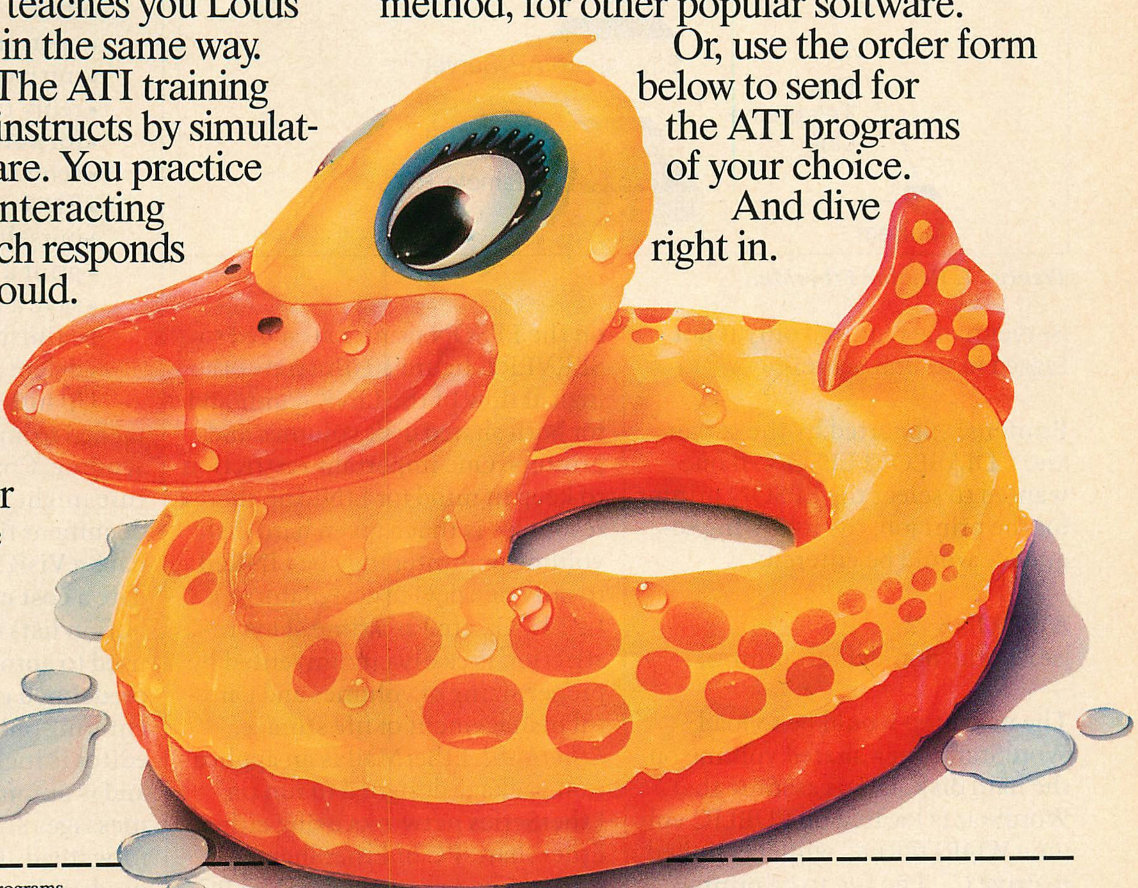
The ATI training disk instructs by simulating the actual software. You practice each command by interacting with the screen, which responds just as Lotus 1-2-3 would.

It's faster—and easier—than any other method. Once you've learned the skills with our helping hand you're ready to swim on your own. Without sinking.

The ATI Training Power package for Lotus 1-2-3, with disk and handbook, is available at your computer dealer. Along with our line of training programs, based on the same simulation method, for other popular software.

Or, use the order form below to send for the ATI programs of your choice.

And dive right in.



Please rush me ATI Training Power™ programs, at $75 each for this software:

Integrated Software
- □ Lotus 1-2-3

Database Management
- □ dBASE II-vol. 1 & 2
- □ EasyFiler

Word Processing
- □ WordStar-vol. 1 & 2
- □ EasyWriter II
- □ Perfect Writer
- □ Spellbinder
- □ Benchmark

Financial Planning
- □ Multiplan
- □ SuperCalc
- □ VisiCalc
- □ Perfect Calc
- □ EasyPlanner
- □ Microplan

Operating Systems
- □ PC DOS
- □ MS DOS
- □ CP/M

Programming
- □ BASIC
- □ APPLESOFT BASIC

Accounting
- □ BPI Gen. Acct.
- □ Peachtree General Ledger*
- □ Peachtree Accounts Receivable*
- □ Peachtree Accounts Payable*

*PC(MS) DOS formats only.

ATI Money Back Guarantee
If you're not completely satisfied with how fast you learn with ATI Interactive Training Power Programs, simply return within 3 days for full purchase refund.

Enclosed is $75 each plus $2.50 shipping. (CA add 6.5%)

Name__________ Phone(____)______

Street__________

City________ State____ Zip______

My computer uses:
- □ PC DOS
- □ MS DOS
- □ CP/M
- □ CP/M-86
- □ XENIX
- □ APPLE II CP/M
- □ APPLE IIe 80 col.

My computer brand is__________

Dealers: call for sales kit (213) 546-4725

For rush order call: (213) 546-5579

VISA MasterCard

Mail order form to:
Software Training Company
A Division of ATI
3770 Highland Avenue, Suite 201H
Manhattan Beach, CA 90266

CIRCLE NO. 105 ON READER SERVICE CARD

ATI Training Power™

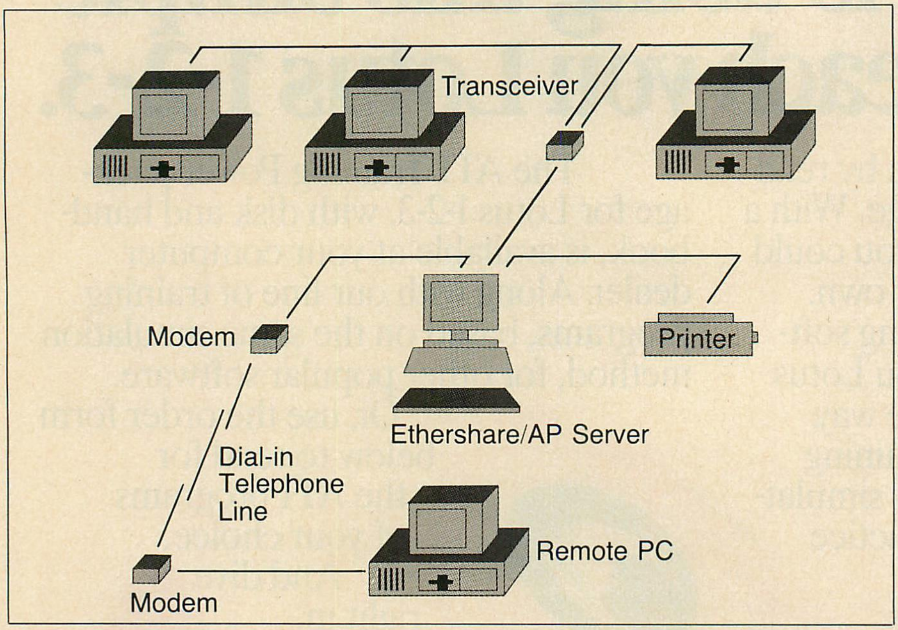


Figure 11: Remote EtherMail

(server name required only if not logged in to that server)

Printer(s) supported by the server are: 1 DIABLO, 2 EPSON. If one wanted to select the EPSON printer for the print job, the following sequence would be entered:

A)EP LINK /2
(select the non-default printer)

The next step would be to load WordStar from a shared volume on the hard disk. Let us assume that WordStar is located on PUBLIC volume WORDPROC which is linked to drive C:. The file to be printed, REPORT.DOC, is on PRIVATE volume MYFILES which is linked to drive D:.

A)C:WS
(Load WordStar from the hard disk)
P
(Print file from "Edit No File" menu of WordStar)
Name of file to print?
D:REPORT .DOC
(Now answer the print file questions as desired)
Ready printer, press Return

The report file on hard disk volume MYFILES will now begin printing on the EPSON printer attached to SERVER2. figure 10 illustrates the logical flow of the LINK command for both shared disk volumes and printers. One important restriction to keep in mind for LINKing shared resources is that a given hard disk volume or printer may be LINKed to only one device designator (e.g. LPT1:, C:, etc.) at a time. This restriction is easily circumvented by proper sizing of volumes and careful management of file storage.

EtherMail. EtherMail is an application package designed to run on EtherSeries networks using either EtherShare/PC or EtherShare/AP software as a prerequisite. The PC or AP servers act as a post office and mail administrator for the network. Each user on the network runs an EtherMail program that provides network electronic mail capabilities to be described next. There are two versions of EtherMail: EtherMail/PC and EtherMail/AP, each running under its respective version of EtherShare. Briefly, both versions of EtherMail allow the network user to:

- get new mail from the "post office"
- open and read a message
- initiate a new message
- reply to a message
- forward a copy of the message
- send a message
- file a message (send it to yourself)
- print a message
- save a message in progress (to be finished later)
- delete a message

Up to 26 DOS files may be attached to an EtherMail message for sending. Common uses of this feature might be a send to WordStar document file for comment or perhaps a VisiCalc budget model to update a cost center's entries. Distribution lists may be created and used to automatically send mail to predefined groups of recipients by entering only a file name. A text editor is included in the software and is automatically invoked when messages are created, replied to, or forwarded. The editor may also be used off-line. Any other editor or word processor may be used and the resulting file sent as an attachment

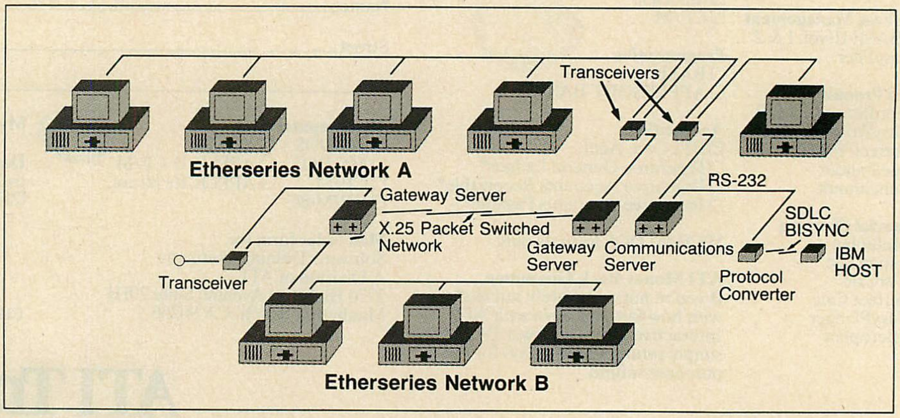


Figure 12: Ethernet-Compatible Servers for Gateway Service on EtherSeries

Plug into 2.5 Mb of additional online storage.

FD-PC81 SINGLE DRIVE UNIT
FD-PC82 TWO DRIVE UNIT

The FD-PC8 is a new 8″ double sided disk drive sub-system that adds an impressive 2.5 megabytes of online storage capacity to your IBM PC. Coupled with the 640 kilobyte capacity of the two 5¼″ internal drives in your IBM PC, the system gives you enormous data base capability from the moment you plug it in!

IBM PC styling.

The FD-PC8 looks like your other IBM PC components. Same styling. Same color. Same dimensions. It stacks neatly under, on top of, or next to your IBM PC, and better still, is only one-half the height of standard 8″ drives.

IBM PC and mainframe compatible.

Total interface capability with both IBM mainframes and PC affords new and unique data base flexibility and computing opportunities to the serious PC user.

Long life design features.

The FD-PC8 utilizes Shugart drives; the standard for quality and reliability in the computer industry. Unlike most disk drives, the motor runs only when selected, greatly increasing the life expectancy of the FD-PC8.

FLOPPY DISK SERVICES INC.

FLOPPY DISK SERVICES, INC.
741 Alexander Road
Princeton, NJ 08540

SPECIFICATIONS

- Full one year warranty on materials and workmanship.
- Two fully assembled and tested Shugart double-sided 8″ drives also available in one drive configuration.
- Direct drive DC motor.
- Exactly ½ the height of standard 8″ drives.
- IBM PC styled and painted cabinet.
- All cabling included.
- IBM 3740 format compatible.
- No-mar rubber feet.
- Sturdy construction easily supports PC or monitor.
- Power supply designed for long life, trouble-free operation.

PRICING

FD-PC8 . . . dual system/$1495.00 . . . single system/$1095.00
*Maynard Controller/$245.00 . . . JFormat/$50.00

*Use of the 8″ system requires the Maynard 8″ controller and Tall Tree Systems® JFormat™ software, allowing the use of two internal 5¼″ drives and the two outboard 8″ drives.

Plug into the perfect IBM PC add-on!

For more information about the FD-PC*, call **(609) 799-4440.**
Or call our toll free order line at **(800) 223-0306.**
Dealer Inquiries Invited.

CIRCLE NO. 156 ON READER SERVICE CARD

IBM PC is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.
Maynard Controller is a registered trademark of Maynard Electronics.
JFormat is a registered trademark of Tall Tree Systems.

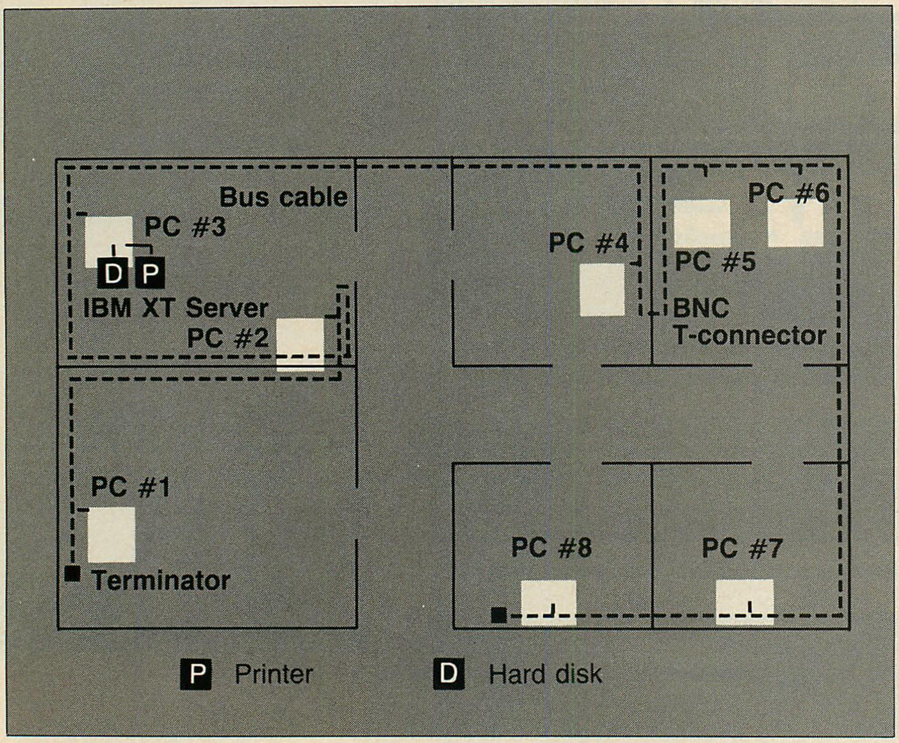


Figure 13: Local Area Network Installation

to a normal message.

The text editor is a full-screen editor that provides a relatively complete capability to compose and modify text. It is not a word processor nor a full-function text editor such as IBM's Personal Editor; however, it is more than adequate for the task of creating and managing electronic mail. Its capabilities include:

- insert and typeover text entry modes
- deletion of characters, words, partial lines and lines
- marking of text for copy, move and delete functions
- tabbed indentation
- automatic word wrap
- paragraph reformatting to the margins after editing
- line and paragraph splitting and joining

Tabs and margins are fixed and cannot be modified. Advanced formatting functions are not supported. However, by use of the attachments composed with word processors that were described earlier, almost any formatting requirement can be accommodated by the system.

The EtherShare server has two primary functions in the EtherMail process: It accepts and distributes a user's messages, checking every server on the network to find the proper addressees. Each active user on the EtherSeries network must be logged on to a specific server if more than one is present. Message routing is accomplished transparently to the user. The server also accepts messages addressed to all its logged-in users, and holds them in the "post office" until recipients desire to retrieve them. In addition, the EtherShare server maintains personal "mail folders" for the users who normally log on to that server. The mail folders are managed by the users, not by the EtherShare "post office."

Remote EtherMail. The EtherMail–AP version supports a single dial-in modem port that allows remote stations to use the server as if they were a part of the EtherSeries network. This is shown in figure 11. All functions available to an EtherSeries network mail user are available to properly configured remote PCs. A remote PC must have 192 K of RAM, run under PC DOS 2.0 operating system, and have a copy of the EtherMail Remote User software. There can be several such remote mail users, limited in practice by the access time available on the single dial-in port on the EtherMail/AP server. This limitation is easily overcome by good network mail management. The single dial-in port will support all servers on the EtherSeries network—in other words, a remote station can send mail to any recognized user (one that has been CREATEd on one of the network servers).

EtherSeries Compatibility with Other Ethernet Systems

As an Ethernet-compatible network, EtherSeries can be enhanced by the addition of a number of products that have been developed for the Ethernet system, among them, network repeaters, both local and remote, communications and gateway servers, fibre-optic links, and laser print services. Ungermann-Bass offers local network repeaters that interconnect Ethernet segments up to 100 meters distant, and remote repeaters that use fibre optic links to provide point-to-point connections of up to 1000 meters in length. Codenoll Technology Corporation has developed a complete Ethernet system using fibre optic transmission technology; this becomes another source for obtaining the 1000-meter fibre optic point-to-point link allowed by the Ethernet specification.

EtherSeries can be enhanced by a number of products, among them, network repeaters, communications and gateway servers, fibre-optic links, and laser print servers.

Envision a single high-speed communications board with integrated easy-to-use software that emulates any terminal.

It's not just your imagination. It's Linkup.™

At ITI, we know your data communications must be fast, accurate and inexpensive. Our engineers faced the same communications problems you face. That's why they designed Linkup™ for the IBM PC.

With Linkup, you have a high-speed, programmable communications processor integrated with user-oriented software that provides cost effective access to an international network of host computers, terminals and other personal computers. You'll be able to transfer text, graphics, facsimile images, telemetry and program files as easily as dialing a phone number.

Communication modes support high and low speed access to computing and data base services, electronic mail, order entry, credit verification, tele-conferencing and direct marketing.

Linkup is the only communications hardware you'll ever need.

A single plug-in module with the modular software emulates TTY, ASCII block mode, IBM 3101, IBM 2780/3780, DEC VT 52/100 and IBM 3270 and 5250. Terminal emulation modes are changed by a single keystroke without changing diskettes and switching modem cables. And most importantly, the same familiar user command set appears in all modes.

Linkup grows to meet your changing needs.

Future terminal protocol requirements will integrate into our programmable coprocessor. And, Linkup's high-speed data throughput allows you to take full advantage of increases in common carrier transmission line speeds.

Linkup is cost-effective.

Linkup's single communications board does more than several others combined, leaving your computer's precious board slots open for further applications. And its powerful MC 6809 processor chip handles all communications tasks, freeing the PC to service the user interface.

Faster, more accurate transmission means lower costs.

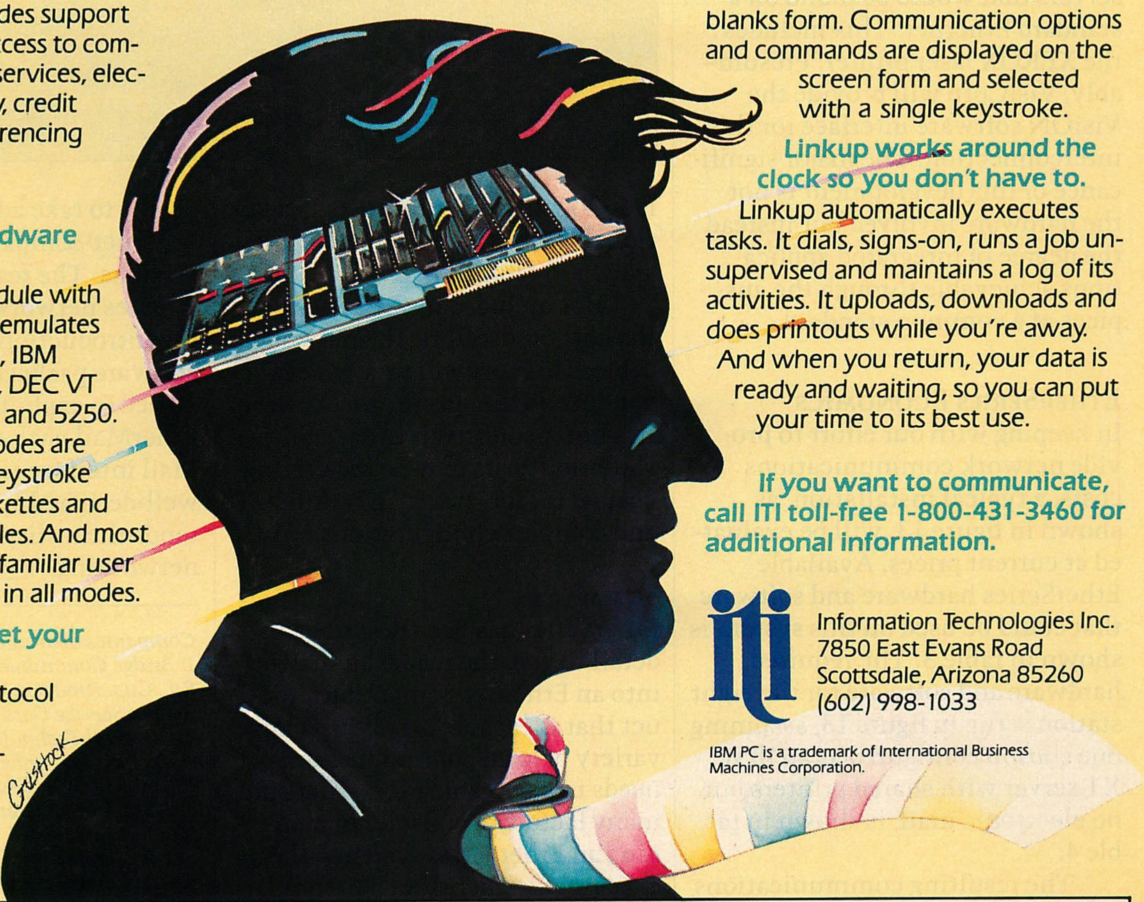
Linkup's integrated design architecture reduces connect charges by transmitting and receiving data at speeds up to 19.2 Kilobaud asynchronous and up to 56 Kilobits per second synchronous without the loss of data throughput normally associated with such speeds. Transfer files at high speed to the PC's disk, then print off-line. And, each line can be checked for error as it's received automatically, retransmitting only those lines in error, instead of entire pages. That saves connect time and character transmission charges.

Our innovative fill-in-the-blanks technique overcomes the tedium of question-answer interrogation and menu approaches.

The user simply enters phone numbers, passwords and job file names on a consistent fill-in-the blanks form. Communication options and commands are displayed on the screen form and selected with a single keystroke.

Linkup works around the clock so you don't have to.

Linkup automatically executes tasks. It dials, signs-on, runs a job unsupervised and maintains a log of its activities. It uploads, downloads and does printouts while you're away. And when you return, your data is ready and waiting, so you can put your time to its best use.



If you want to communicate, call ITI toll-free 1-800-431-3460 for additional information.

iti

Information Technologies Inc.
7850 East Evans Road
Scottsdale, Arizona 85260
(602) 998-1033

IBM PC is a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

Linkup Specifications

Speed: 56 Kbps Synchronous, 19.2 Kbaud Asynchronous
Terminal Emulation Modes: TTY, ASCII Block Transfer, DEC VT 52/100, IBM 3101, IBM 2780/3780, and future options include 3270, 5250, Tektronix 40XX.
File Types: ASCII, EBCDIC and Binary.
Automatic Modes: Dialup, Log-on, Job Execution, Answer, Alert, Unattended Job Scheduling.
Communications Interface: Dual channel RS232/423 compatible.
Modems: 103, 212, 201, 208 Bell compatible, Hayes, Vadic, Rixon smart modems, or user defined.
Bus Interface: IBM PC bus compatible.
PC Configuration: PC DOS, 64 Kbytes RAM, 160 KB Floppy, monochrome display minimum. Also supports IBM compatible hard disks, color displays and printers.
Options: Printz™ Print Spooler, Postmaster™ Electronic Mail, Audit™ Billing Summary
Base Price: \$795 each, including TTY and Asynchronous block software.

Bridge Communications Inc. has a communications server known as CS/1 that interconnects RS-232/423 devices to an Ethernet. These include terminals, modems, printers and all sizes of computers. This company also has two gateway servers—GS/1 connects two Ethernets via an X.25 packet-switched network or directly converts protocol to allow X.25 and Ethernet communications. GS/2 interconnects Ethernets and provides access to Sytek's Localnet broadband network. Figure 12 illustrates an EtherSeries network configuration with some of the above devices integrated.

A recent announcement by 3Com Corporation, XEROX, and VisiCorp gives IBM PCs on an EtherSeries network access to XEROX servers that would be found on a standard Ethernet. This includes the XEROX laser printer. Presumably, VisiCorp will provide the VisiON software interface for this interconnection. The major significance of this development is not the hardware involved but instead the degree of integrated applications achievable through the auspices of a common standard.

Table 3: Cost of EtherSeries Components

AP Network Server (10/30 Mbyte)	$11500/12500
EtherLink Network Interface	$950
Thin Ethernet Cable	$20 + $1/meter
Thin Ethernet Terminator Kit	$25
Thin Ethernet Loopback Plug	$25
EtherMail/AP Software	$1500
EtherPrint/AP Software	$750
EtherMail/PC Software	$750
EtherPrint/PC Software	$500
EtherShare/PC Software	$500
Remote EtherMail User Software	$100

Table 4: Pricing of Eight Station Configuration (shown in Figure 13)

8 EtherSeries network interface cards (includes T-connectors and software)	$7600
Thin Ethernet Terminator Kit	$25
Thin Ethernet Loopback Plug	$25
760 feet Thin Ethernet Cable	$252
EtherShare/PC Software	$500
EtherPrint/PC Software	$500
Total	$8,902

Table 5: EtherSeries Cost per User

Work stations		4	5	6	7
Cumulative Cost	4,152	5,102	6,052	7,002	7,952
Per User Cost	1,384	1,275	1,210	1,167	1,136

EtherSeries Economics

In keeping with our effort to provide network communications costs, a typical installation, as shown in figure 13, will be evaluated at current prices. Available EtherSeries hardware and software that could be used on this system is shown in table 3. The required hardware and software for the eight station setup in figure 13, assuming one station configured as an IBM XT server with shared printers but no electronic mail, is shown in table 4.

The resulting communications cost per user for EtherSeries is therefore $1113. The starting minimum for EtherSeries (two work stations, one configured as a PC server, and 760 feet of pre-wired bus cable) is $3202. Incremental costs as additional work stations are added are shown in table 5.

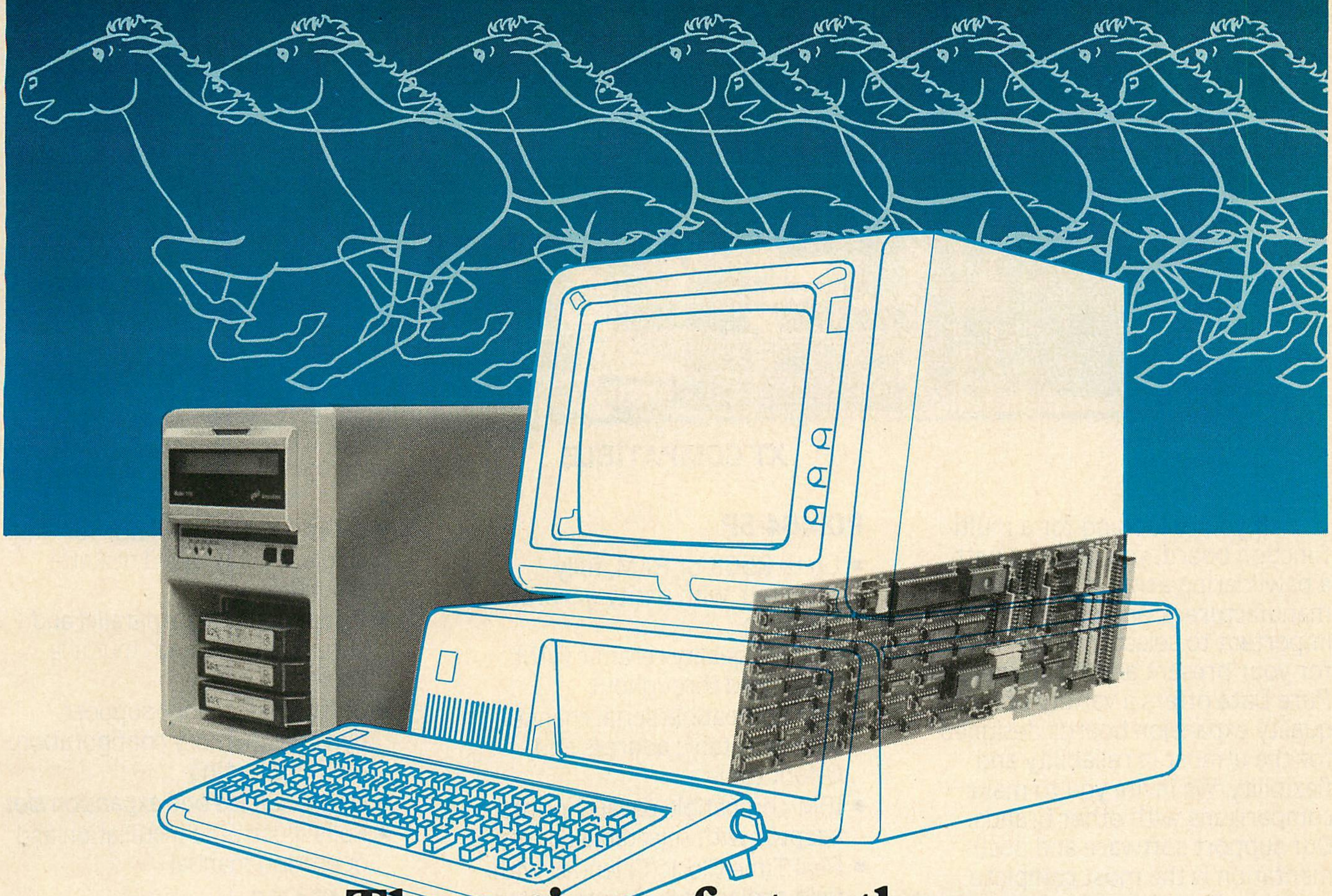
Not included in the survey is the cost of installing the network cable. This cost will vary widely depending on the specific installation. It is not inconceivable that cable installation costs may be the driving cost factor for particularly difficult and complex configurations.

Summary

EtherSeries has been described in detail to give the reader an insight into an Ethernet-compatible product that is capable of solving a large variety of local communications needs in an organization. There are many factors to consider in planning an EtherSeries system—the exact requirements for a particular installation should be carefully considered, and the almost inevitable need for future growth should be kept in mind. In this regard, EtherSeries is particularly well-placed to take advantage of existing Ethernet-compatible products and systems. The real value of the EtherSeries network will come with the introduction of applications software packages specifically designed to exploit its versatility. The EtherMail package with its Remote Mail interface is an example of a well-designed application that extends the utility of local area networking.

Companies mentioned in this article
1. Bridge Communications, 10401 Bubb Rd., Cupertino, CA 95014. Circle 463 on Reader Service Card.
2. Codenoll Technology Corporation, 1086 N. Broadway, Yonkers, NY 10701. Circle 464 on Reader Service Card.
3. 3Com Corporation, 1390 Shorebird Way, Mountain View, CA 94043. Circle 465 on Reader Service Card.
4. Ungermann-Bass, Inc., 2560 Mission Blvd., Santa Clara, CA 95050. Circle 466 on Reader Service Card.
5. VisiCorp, 2895 Zancher Rd., San Jose, CA 95134. Circle 467 on Reader Service Card.
6. XEROX Corporation, P.O. Box 1600, Stamford, CT 06904. Circle 468 on Reader Service Card.

Break Away from the Pack with the Maverick SMD Rigid Disk Controller by Interphase.



Three times faster than an XT . . . and removable media too!

Interphase brings you the most powerful disk controller available for your IBM or IBM compatible personal computer. With the Maverick, your PC can use any of the dozens of high performance disk drives supporting the industry standard SMD interface. You can have capacities ranging from 16 to 1600 megabytes or more — enough for even the largest accounting or data base management applications. You can have fixed media or removable cartridges or a combination of the two — just the thing to handle your back-up and archival problems. Plus you get three to four times the performance of the current Winchesters.

To find out more about the Maverick disk controller or our turn-key disk subsystems contact Interphase today.

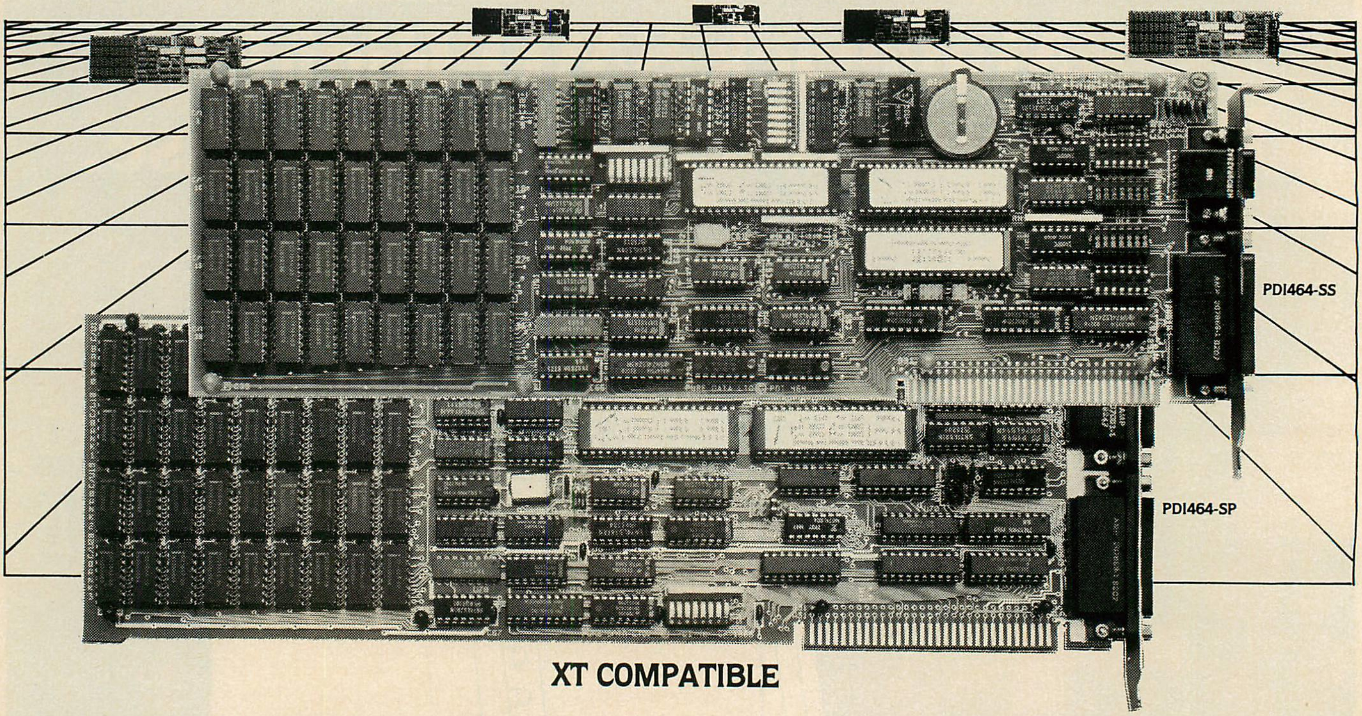
Ride with the thoroughbreds from Interphase.

INTERPHASE corporation

2925 Merrell Road, Dallas, Texas 75229 214/350-9000 Telex 73-2561 (TELESERV) DAL

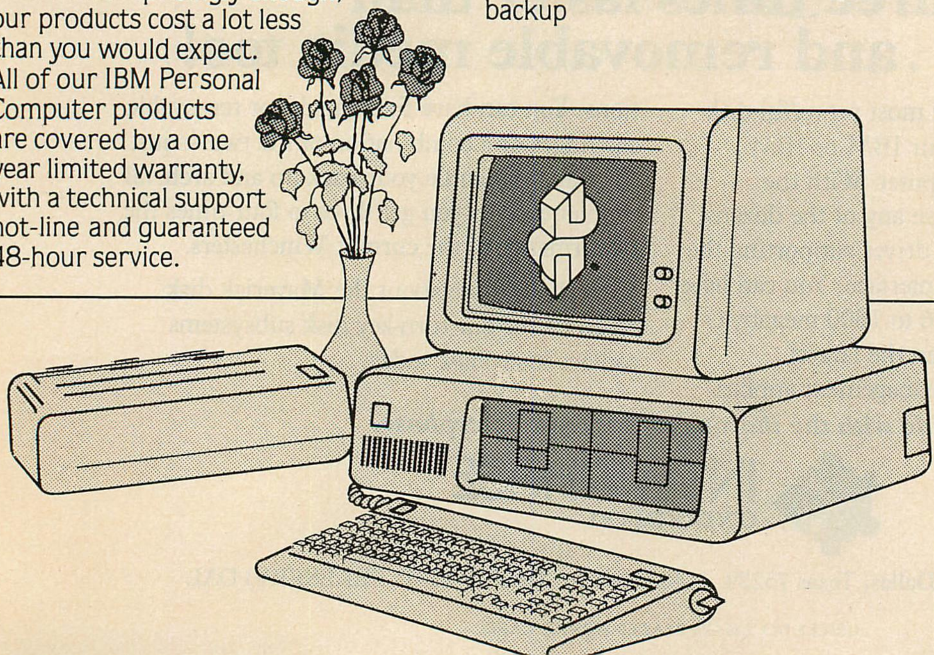
CIRCLE NO. 246 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Plug Pure Data



XT COMPATIBLE

If you're looking for a multifunction board, you're faced with a bewildering array of functions, manufacturers, and prices. It's important to select the right card for your present and future needs. Pure Data offers a variety of high-quality expansion boards designed for the utmost in reliability and flexibility. We invite you to make comparisons with other brands. Our support software and documentation is the most complete available. Surprisingly enough, our products cost a lot less than you would expect. All of our IBM Personal Computer products are covered by a one year limited warranty, with a technical support hot-line and guaranteed 48-hour service.



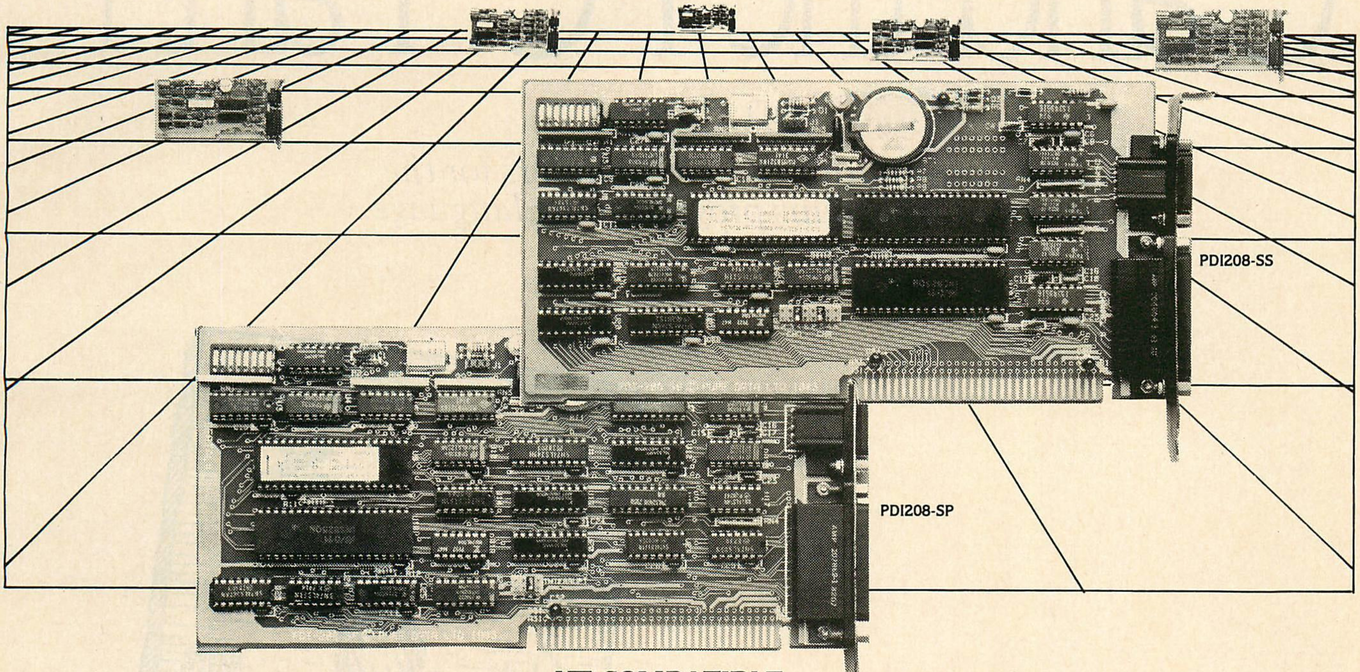
PDI464-SP

- Up to 256K of RAM, fully socketed, with parity generation/checking
- Highest quality ceramic RAM chips used throughout
- IBM-compatible serial channel with selectable address and 6-foot cable
- IBM-compatible parallel printer adaptor with selectable address
- Real Time Clock/Calendar with field-replaceable lithium battery backup
- p-Disk™ disk emulator for single/double-sided diskette emulation
- Print spoolers for parallel and serial channels with multiple copies
- Software for clock support, dynamic memory configuration, memory testing
- Only occupies one expansion slot
- Fully-illustrated installation and operation manual

PDI464-SS

- Up to 256K of RAM, fully socketed, with parity generation/checking
- Highest quality ceramic RAM chips used throughout
- Two IBM-compatible serial channels with selectable addresses, 6-foot cables

into your PC!



XT COMPATIBLE

- Serial channels feature modem/printer configuration jumpers
- Real Time Clock/Calendar with field-replaceable lithium battery backup
- p-Disk™ disk emulator for single/double-sided diskette emulation
- Print spoolers for parallel and serial channels with multiple copies
- Software for clock support, dynamic memory configuration, memory testing
- Only occupies one expansion slot
- Fully-illustrated installation and operation manual

PDI208-SP

- IBM-compatible serial channel with selectable address and 6-foot cable
- IBM-compatible parallel printer adaptor with selectable address
- Real Time Clock/Calendar with field-replaceable lithium battery backup
- p-Disk™ disk emulator for single/double-sided diskette emulation
- Print spoolers for parallel and serial channels with multiple copies
- Software for clock support, dynamic memory configuration, memory testing
- Only occupies one expansion slot
- Fully-illustrated installation and operation manual

PDI208-SS

- Two IBM-compatible serial channels with selectable addresses, 6-foot cables
- Real Time Clock/Calendar with field-replaceable lithium battery backup
- p-Disk™ disk emulator for single/double-sided diskette emulation
- Print spoolers for parallel and serial channels with multiple copies
- Software for clock support, dynamic memory configuration, memory testing
- Only occupies one expansion slot
- Fully-illustrated installation and operation manual

Pure Data Ltd

950 Denison Street, #17,
Markham, Ontario, Canada L3R 3K5
☎ (416) 498-1616 ☎ (416) 475-2424

Pure Data products are available through.

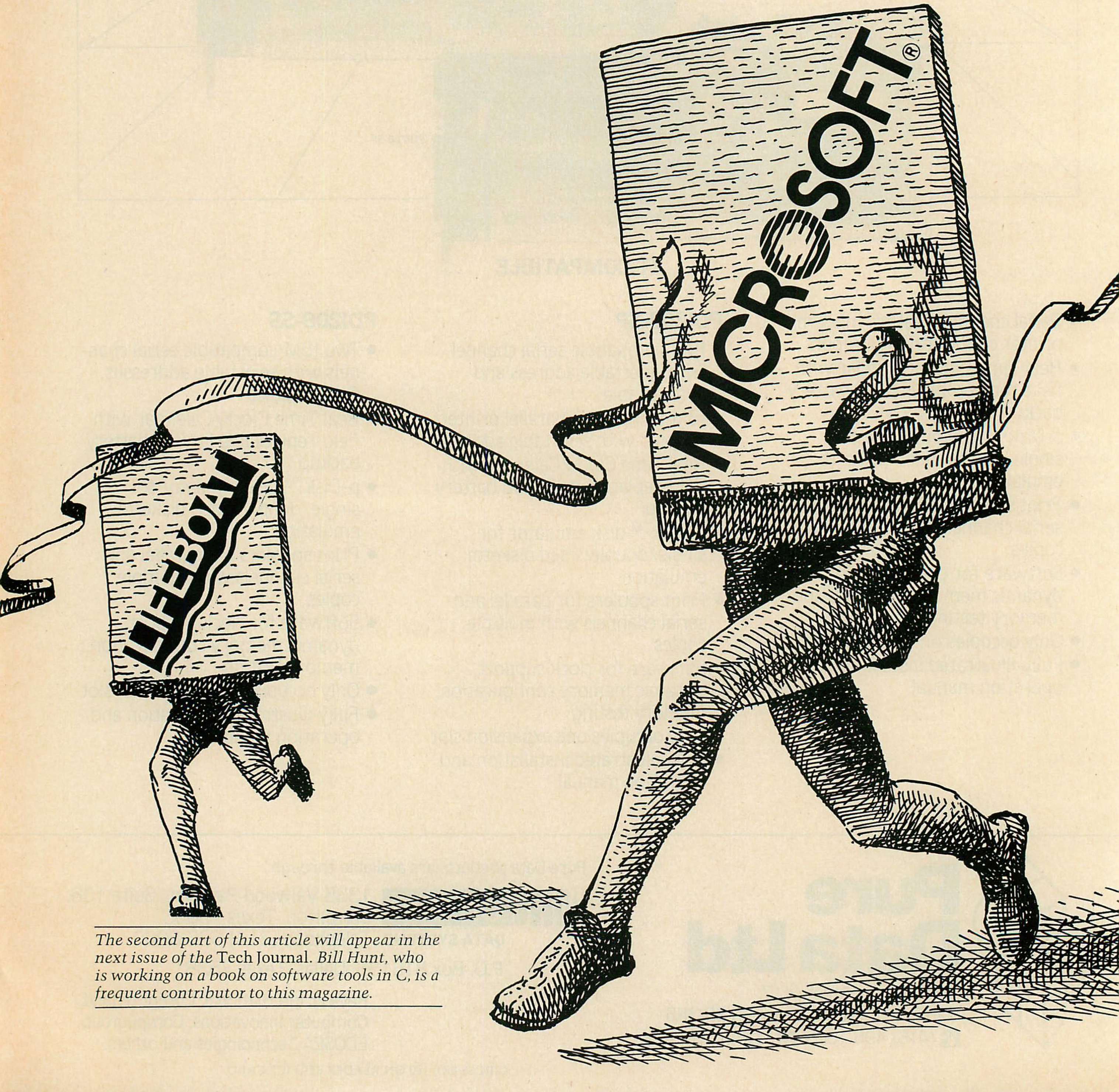
OnTrak DATA SYSTEMS 1335 Valwood Parkway, Suite 108, Carrollton, Texas 75006
Telephone (214) 620-8000
P.O. Box 815155, Dallas, Texas 75381

Keysoft International, Computerland, Computer Innovations, Compugroup, ECOSEA Technologies and others.

C and the PC: Part 1

BILL HUNT

A close examination of five compilers for the most popular systems programming language.



The second part of this article will appear in the next issue of the Tech Journal. *Bill Hunt, who is working on a book on software tools in C, is a frequent contributor to this magazine.*

In an earlier article, I gave some criteria for choosing a C compiler. This month, using these criteria and a set of performance benchmarks, I will review five compilers.

The compilers reviewed are:

Computer Innovations C86 compiler
Lifeboat Lattice C (Lattice C)
Microsoft C (Lattice C)
Cware C compiler
Manx Aztec C86 (Manx C)

For convenience, I will refer to the Lifeboat, Microsoft and Manx compilers by the shorthand names in parentheses.

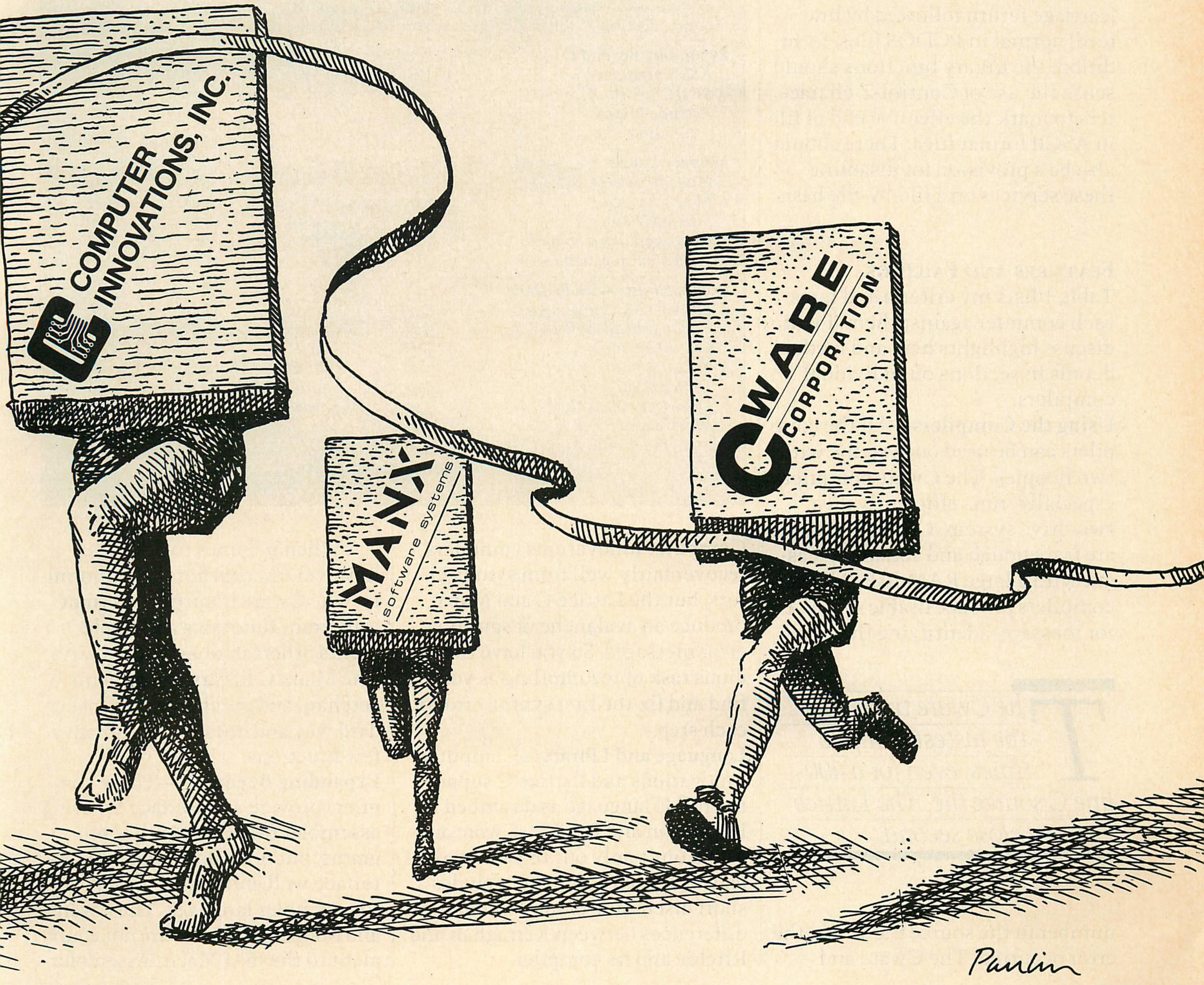
Compiler Criteria

The article "How To Choose a C Compiler" (*PC Tech Journal*, July/Aug 1983) offered the criteria for evaluating C compilers summarized below.

Ease of Use—The compiler should fit comfortably in a floppy-disk-based IBM PC. All files needed for compiling and linking C programs should fit on two 320K floppy disks. Compile and link time should be under a minute for a small program. Syntax errors should be identified with a source file line number so printed listings are not required.

Language and Library support—The compiler should support the full C language, as described in Kernighan and Ritchie, and should also provide a full set of standard library functions. These functions should perform as described in Kernighan and Ritchie and in the Unix Version 7 documentation.

Expanding beyond C—An interface allowing use of assembler functions with C programs should be provided and documented. Functions for access to PCDOS services and to the IBM PC's ROM BIOS services should be provided also. Provision



for excluding library functions to produce compact programs should be included and documented.

Memory Usage—The C compiler should support a maximum size of at least 64K each for programs and data. A larger limit is better but not at the expense of program execution speed. Library functions to access all of the IBM PC's 1 megabyte address space should be provided.

Compatibility with PCDOS—The C I/O library functions should support conversion between the single newline character used as an end-of-line market in many C programs and the two character sequence (carriage return followed by line feed) normal in PCDOS files. In addition, the library functions should sense the use of Control-Z characters to mark the effective end of file in ASCII format files. There should also be a provision for disabling these services on a file-by-file basis.

Table 1: C Compiler Features

	Compiler: Computer Innovations C86	Lattice or Microsoft C	CWARE C	Manx Aztec C86
Price	*$395*	*$500*	*$100*	*$249*
Version Tested	*1.33d*	*1.04*	*1.7*	*1.05i*
Using the Compiler				
Size of Disk Files	*195K*	*220K*	*139K*	*200K*
Fits on 2 Diskettes	*tight*	*tight*	*easy*	*tight*
Compile Speed	*good*	*very good*	*great*	*good*
Syntax Error Messages	*good*	*good*	*good*	*fair*
Language - Full C	*yes*	*yes*	*almost*	*almost*
Standard C Library				
All standard functions provided	*yes*	*yes*	*most*	*yes*
Usage documented	*good*	*good*	*fair*	*fair*
Source Listing	*yes*	*no*	*no*	*yes*
Expanding Beyond C				
ASM Interface	*yes*	*yes*	*yes*	*yes*
PCDOS + BIOS access	*full*	*limited*	*some*	*limited*
Exclude library functions?	*yes*	*yes*	*partial*	*yes*
Memory Usage				
Max program size	*64K*	*64K*	*64K*	*64K*
Max data size	*64K*	*64K*	*64K*	*64K*
Size of C pointers	*16 bits*	*16 bits*	*16 bits*	*16 bits*
Documentation of 8088 segment register usage	*poor*	*good*	*fair*	*fair*
Compatibility with PCDOS				
End-of-Line Conversion?	*good*	*good*	*poor*	*no*
Can it be disabled?	*yes*	*clumsy*	*	—
Ct1-Z sensing?	*yes*	*good*	*fair*	*no*
Can it be disabled?	*yes*	*clumsy*	*no* *	—
DOS 2.0 Support	*not yet*	*not yet*	*no*	*no*
Does I/O re-direction?	*yes*	*yes*	*no*	*yes*
Work with DOS 2.0 re-direction?	*crashes*	*crashes*	*crashes*	*crashes*

(* see text for explanation)

FEATURES AND FAILINGS

Table 1 lists my criteria and rates each compiler against them. I will discuss highlights here and further details in sections on individual compilers.

Using the Compilers—All the compilers can be used on systems with two floppies. The Cware compiler, especially, runs efficiently on a two-drive system. Compile times are fast enough and actually pleasant with a large RAMdisk. All the compilers produce usable syntax error messages identifying the line number in the source file where the error occurred. The Cware and Computer Innovations compilers recover fairly well from syntax errors, but the Lattice C and Manx produce an avalanche of spurious error messages. So you have the tedious task of recompiling as you find and fix the first syntax error of each step.

> *The Cware turned in the fastest compile times, even for a 400-line C source file. The Lattice C was a close second.*

Language and Library—Computer Innovations and Lattice C support the full C language as described in Kernighan and Ritchie. Cware and Manx omit only one or two small C features. Each company includes a short discussion of implementation differences between Kernighan and Ritchie and its compiler.

When it comes to libraries, however, there is not this uniformity. The Cware library omits some important functions and implements others in nonstandard ways. The Manx C library implements getchar() and putchar() in a nonstandard way and does not document a few functions.

Expanding Beyond C—These compilers provide an interface for using assembler functions with C programs, but none documents the interface well enough for readers new to assembler language. The Cware and Manx assemblers are not equivalent to the IBM Macro Assembler.

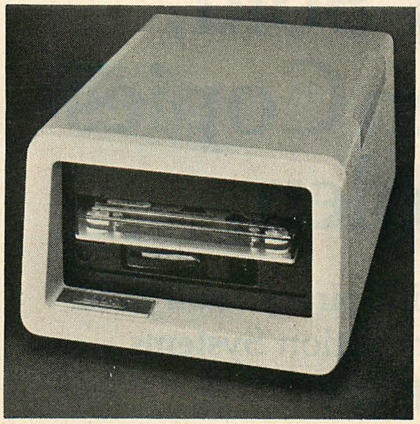
EVEN AN IBM PC® NEEDS A SAFETY NET.

Only Alloy's PC-Backup™ gives you high performance storage/retrieval, and protection – at a lower cost.

Now that the IBM PC comes with a 10 Mbyte hard disk, you need a Backup that can keep up with it. Alloy's PC-Backup is designed to do just that – and it beats flipping floppies every time.

Alloy's PC-Backup works like your business does: it is file-oriented, backing up files in an organized way. It is time and cost efficient too, because it never lets you lose important data.

Designed exclusively for the IBM PC, and small to large businesses, here are some of the features that make Alloy's PC Backup the finest safety net PC owners could ever require:



- Winchester hard disk backup and restore
- Comprehensive menu driven software package (Alloy's industry standard Tape Interchange Package)
- High speed data transfers
- Up to 16.5 Mbytes of data per cartridge

At your ISO now for only $1,995.

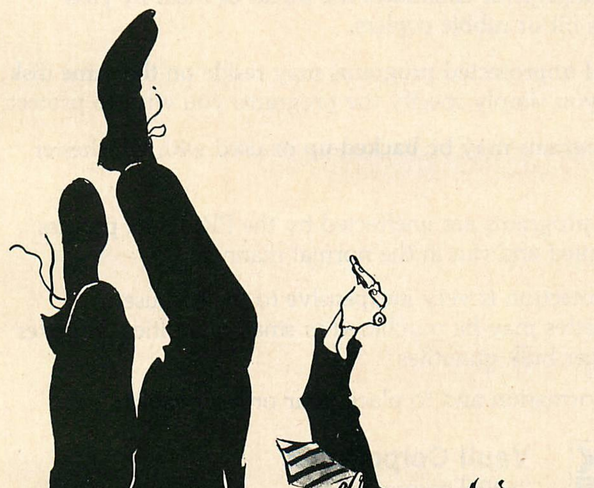
Also available, Alloy's new 9-track tape drive, for mainframe compatibility.

Alloy Computer Products
100 Pennsylvania Avenue
Framingham, Mass. 01701
(617) 875-6100

IBM PC is a registered trademark of IBM Corp. PC-Backup is a trademark of Alloy Computer Products.

CIRCLE NO. 226 ON READER SERVICE CARD

ALLOY
Computer Products



Each product has a mechanism for excluding library functions from programs. None is documented well enough.

The documentation for these assemblers cites an INTEL assembler manual—not an appropriate reference for an IBM PC product.

Without too much trouble, I was able to interface an assembler function with each compiler, although I had to experiment with the non-standard Cware and Manx assemblers to figure out what syntax they accepted.

Each product has a mechanism for excluding library functions from programs. None is documented well enough; Lattice C came closest to being sufficient.

Memory Usage—The same limit—64K each for programs and for data (global and local)—is enforced by each compiler. Computer Innovations and Cware provide library functions that move data anywhere in the PC's 1 megabyte address space.

Compatibility with DOS—Computer Innovations and Lattice C provide options for end-of-line conversion and Control-Z sensing. The Cware and Manx libraries provide no choice—sometimes they do what you want and sometimes they don't.

All of the compilers except Cware support UNIX-style I/O redirection within the compiled program. This is handy if you are using DOS 1.1, but not so handy with DOS 2.0, which intercepts the redirection information on the command line and performs the redirection itself. Unfortunately, when DOS 2.0 redirects standard input to a file, programs produced by all the compilers crash. The source of the problem is within DOS 2.0—faulty implementation of I/O redirection.

The best reason to choose mbp COBOL for your IBM/PC:

GIBSON MIX Benchmark Results
Calculated S-Profile
(Representative COBOL statement mix)

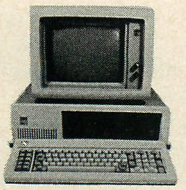
Execution time ratio

mbp COBOL	Level II** COBOL	Microsoft*** COBOL	R-M**** COBOL
1.00	4.08	6.18	8.26

Convincing, isn't it?

The Gibson Mix Benchmark Results chart just about says it all, doesn't it?

Compared with COBOL interpreters, mbp's COBOL Compiler executes programs at least four times faster. With mbp on your IBM/PC,* applications that used to take four hours now take one.



mbp COBOL: 4 times faster.

Why? Because interpreters translate and execute a program one statement at a time, every time the program runs.

By comparison, mbp's COBOL Compiler generates machine language object code, so the entire program is translated only once. It then can be executed as often as you want in a fast single step—with no retranslation.

Develop programs faster.

Bechtel, Chase, Citicorp, Connecticut Mutual, Sikorsky—companies that make their own comparative evaluations—chose mbp. Certainly faster running speed was important to them, but that wasn't the only reason for the choice.

Here's a Connecticut Mutual spokesperson's comment: "...It took us approximately 5% the time to convert (COBOL) programs from the mainframe computer to mbp as it did to convert them to Microsoft's COBOL..."

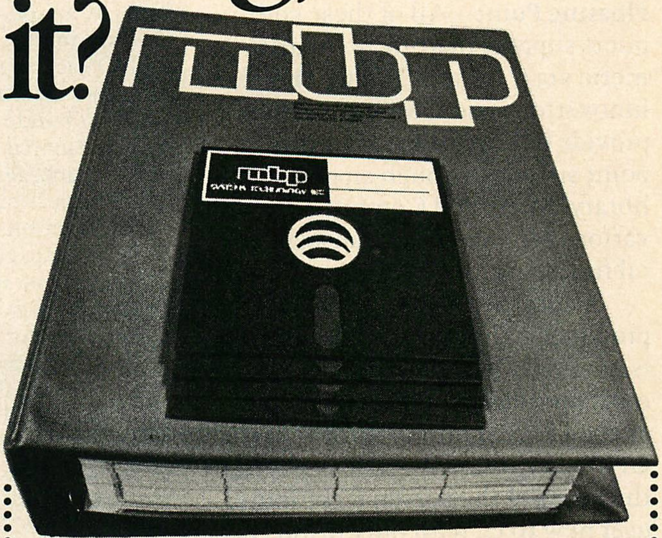
Put another way, mbp saved 95% of the conversion time.

mbp: the complete COBOL.

GSA certified to ANSI '74 Level II; a sophisticated Screen Management System (SMS) and an Interactive Symbolic De-Bug Package included standard; Multi-Keyed ISAM Structure; listing options allow source & object code, map & cross-reference checking; mbp has them all and much more.

After you compare mbp's advantages, compare it's price: $500. Convinced?

128K system with hard disk required. *IBM/PC is an IBM TM; **Level II is a Micro Focus TM; ***A Microsoft TM; ****A Ryan-McFarland TM.



4 times faster. $500.

Please send me complete mbp COBOL information and performance data with Gibson Mix results.

NAME________________________

COMPANY________________________

ADDRESS________________________

CITY____________ STATE______ ZIP______

PHONE________________________

mbp Software & Systems Technology, Inc.
7700 Edgewater Drive, Suite 360
Oakland, CA 94621
Phone 415/632-1555

mbp®

Nevertheless, compiler vendors should forewarn their customers of this potential difficulty. Actually, most vendors appear to be close to providing DOS 2.0 support for their compilers, so this problem should disappear.

None of these compilers makes use of DOS 2.0 extensions. The compilers do not accept paths as part of file specifications, and the I/O library functions do not allow path names. Only Cware mentions DOS 2.0 in the documentation. Give another low mark to the other vendors.

Unfortunately, when DOS 2.0 redirects standard input to a file, programs produced by all the compilers crash.

Floating Point—All of these compilers support floating point arithmetic via software. The Computer Innovations and Cware compilers provide 8087 hardware floating point support through an optional library. Manx and Computer Innovations provide some transcendental functions as well.

A common failing of these products is that the documentation is not really geared to the needs of most purchasers. While it is often as good as that provided for C in the UNIX environment, it does not fit the needs of the personal computer user new to C, with only BASIC experience as a reference point.

BENCHMARKS—A PENTATHLON FOR C COMPILERS

Listing 1 is a Pentathlon program I developed for comparing C compilers. The program does not perform any useful function or illustrate any interesting techniques, but it does measure the speed of C programs in five different ways. I think of it as a series of track and field events for C compilers—thus the name pentathlon.

The main function prompts for and accepts the number of the benchmark to be run and a number of iterations. It then calls the appropriate function once for each iteration. Timing starts from the entry of the number of iterations and ends when the word *thru* is displayed. Functions bench1 through bench5 contain the details of one benchmark test each. Loops inside these functions execute the code to be tested much more often than initialization steps or the main function's steps would.

Bench1 measures the speed of floating point addition and multiplication. Although some of the compilers support the use of the 8087 floating point processor, I was only able to test with floating point provided by software.

Bench2 measures the speed of calling a C function. The function called executed one operation before returning. This allows us to measure the speed of calling functions, with some protection against a clever compiler's ability to optimize away a function that does nothing. C provides excellent support for a modular programming style with lots of small functions. An efficient implementation of function calling is crucial if this programming style is to be feasible. This test is probably the most im-

C-Food Smorgasbord

Lifeboat markets a package called C-Food Smorgasbord containing functions for use with Lattice C. The package includes decimal arithmetic functions, functions to give access to services in the IBM PC's ROM BIOS, PCDOS access functions, such as file directory reading and a set of functions for building full screen CRT-terminal-oriented applications. The C-FOOD package costs $150.

The decimal floating point arithmetic functions may be worth the price of the package if you are writing an application where dollars and cents arithmetic is needed. Rounding and truncation work as you would expect with decimal arithmetic: This capability could make C more suitable for accounting and other data processing applications. Trying to duplicate these functions yourself would be a unattractive alternative.

The ROM BIOS access functions provide access to some services in the IBM PC's ROM BIOS. The documentation should provide references to the appropriate parts of the IBM PC Technical Reference Manual. A programmer with C and assembler experience could duplicate these functions fairly quickly. If you don't have the experience, you may find these functions useful enough to justify the price.

Some PCDOS access functions, such as file directory access, are also provided, as is a function that allows you to make up your own DOS access function. (You specify register values on input and have access to returned register values.)

The terminal independence functions allow you to write application software for a generic CRT terminal and let the TIP functions convert to handle the specific terminal being used. This is a useful function for computers that are used with a variety of CRT terminals—as the IBM PC has its own built-in and standardized keyboard, the problem doesn't apply. The documentation of the terminal independence package fails to give a reader an overall understanding of how the TIP package works.

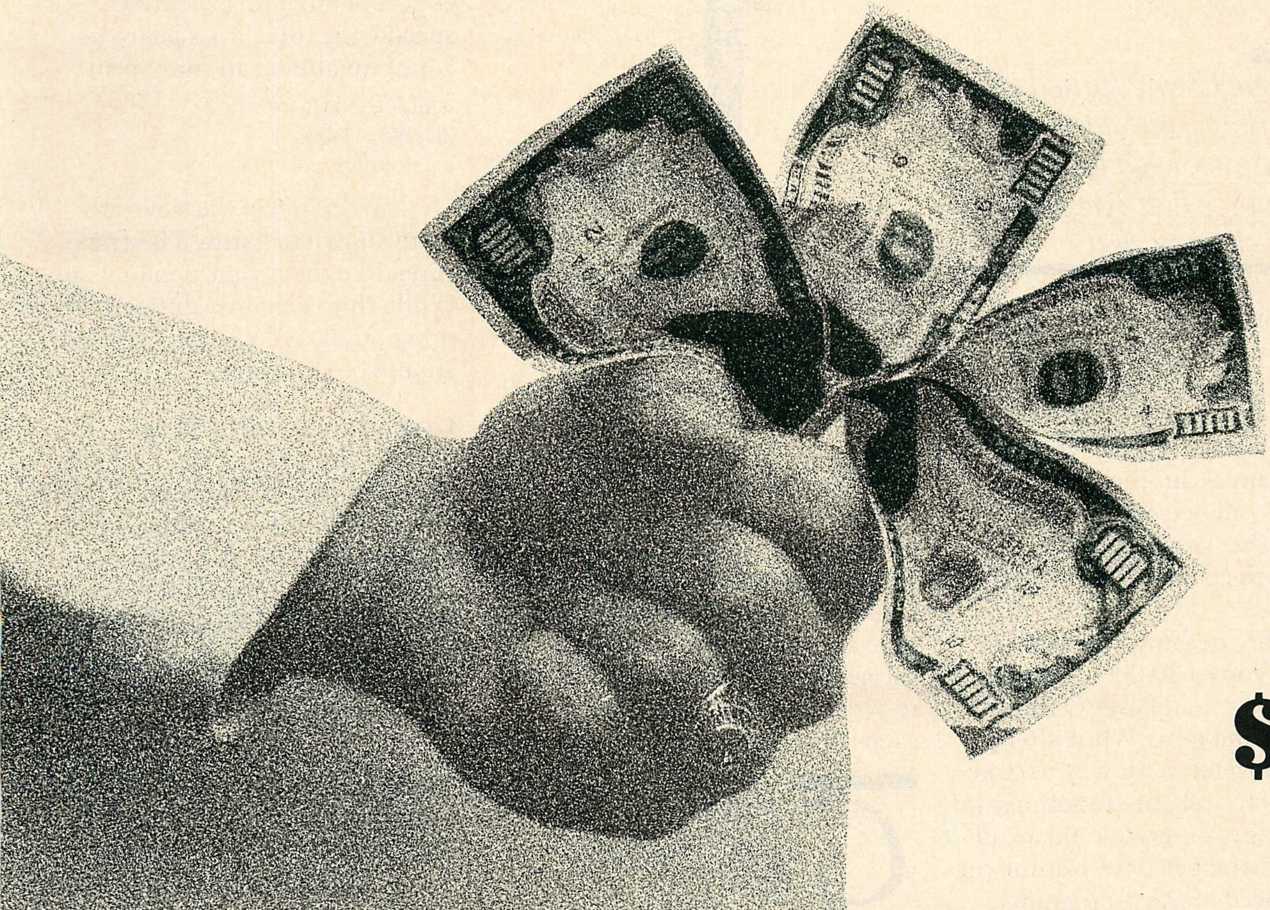
The C-Food functions are distributed in the format of a Lattice-C-compatible object library and several header files to be included in the programs you write. A manual describes the major parts of the package and documents each function with a UNIX-style page.

The C-FOOD package works with both the Lifeboat and Microsoft versions of Lattice C. It will not be useful with other compilers such as the Cware, Computer Innovations, and Manx C.

The package will be most useful to C programmers not yet able to write their own assembler functions to perform these functions. It would be more useful to these people if examples of the use of these programs were supplied. It is worth the $150 price if you have a need for decimal arithmetic, otherwise the rest of the package may not be worth $150.

WHAT'S THE DIFFERENCE

between Optimal Software's dBASE interpreter and Ashton Tate's dBASE II™?



$400

Well . . . that's not the only difference. Our manuals are readable. We have a few bells and whistles that dBASE II™ doesn't. We provide a full year's free updates. . . That's the *big* difference.

dCLONE™

from Optimal Software

$295 Unconditional 30 day money back guarantee.

Dealer inquiries welcome.

Distributed by Programming International
505 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 301, Palo Alto, CA 94301
(800)222-8811 inside California: **(800)631-4400**

Also available at

SOFTWARE to go

and other fine software dealers

dBASE II is a trademark of Ashton-Tate.
dCLONE is a trademark of Optimal Software.

CIRCLE NO. 250 ON READER SERVICE CARD

portant of the five benchmarks.

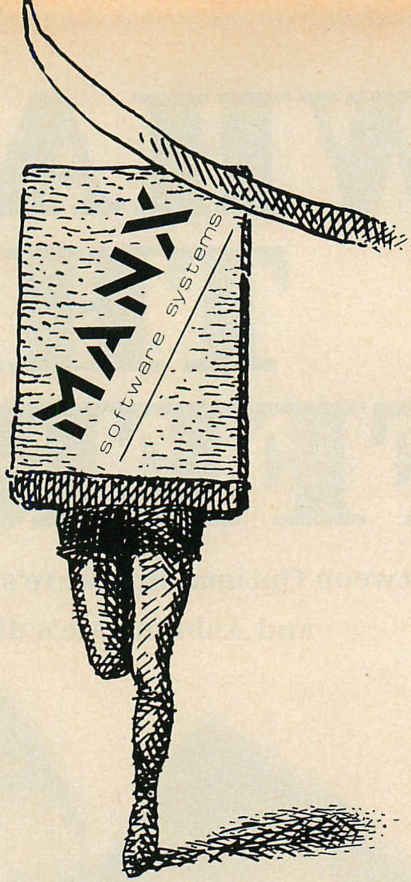
Bench3 measures the speed of a small loop copying a 500-byte character string. The benchmark, written in a compact way, uses pointers with increment operators (+ +) and an assignment in the middle of an expression. Loops like this affect the speed of many C programs. The increment operators and assignments in the middle of expressions allow the programmer to give the compiler clues so that fast, special case code can be generated. In part this test measures how well the compiler takes advice.

The Cware turned in the fastest compile times, even for a 400-line C source file. The Lattice C was a close second.

Bench4 measures the implementation of integer array and character manipulation. It is written in a more normal style than Bench3. I used a register variable in the program as another test of the compiler's advice-taking ability. Such register variables allow the compiler to generate more efficient programs.

Bench5 measures the time required to copy a 30,000-character file using the standard I/O functions getc and putc. While this is not the most efficient way to copy a file, the getc and putc functions are used in many programs and are often the bottleneck determining the overall speed of those programs. Since these functions are supported by most compiler libraries, they allow an apples-to-apples test of file I/O. I ran this benchmark with source and destination files on a single floppy disk. To keep the results comparable, each test was run with the floppy disk empty except for the source file.

Specifying benchmark 6 creates the file that the bench5 uses. I used the Computer Innovations version



of the program to create the file. The file is not very interesting—30,000 *a* characters and a Ctl-Z to mark the end of the file.

File Copying—The 100 Yard Dash

Applications of C often require fast copying of large amounts of data in disk files. Listing 3 shows a program for copying a file using low-level I/O operations. Because the read and write functions shown here are not as well standardized as the getc and putc functions, I had to re-write the program slightly for each compiler. I used a binary or un-

Computer Innovations and Manx C are significantly slower than Lattice or Cware on the function calling, string copy and character count benchmarks.

translated mode wherever possible so that end-of-line conversion and Ctl-Z sensing would not be operating. My intent was not to provide a comparison of execution times for the identical program, but rather to show how well each product could perform fast file I/O.

The same 30,000-character file used in the pentathlon bench5 benchmark is used for this test. (Since the Ctl-Z at the end is treated as data here, the file appears to be 30,001 bytes long.)

The Sieve Benchmark Program

Because the prime number sieve program has become a standard in compiler evaluations I have included it here. It is actually a very limited test of program execution speed—the three lines below account for almost all time spent:

```
while ( k <= size )
(flags[k] = false ;
k + = prime ; )
```

My version of the sieve program shown in listing 3 is structured like the pentathlon program. While this is slightly different from other published versions, results should be the same.

Compile and Link Times

The pentathlon and sieve programs provide a test of compile and link times, as well as execution times. Sieve is about 60 lines long—typical for my C source files. Pentathlon, at about 150 lines, is as large as any C source file I produce. To cover all possibilities, I also compiled a 400-line program.

Times for linking are also reported. For this test I split the Pentathlon program into six source files, because linking six separate files is more usual than linking just one file.

Program Sizes

I have included the sizes of the sieve and benchmark programs for comparison. The differences are not very significant or meaningful. The program sizes are mostly determined by the number of library functions included. (All the compilers provide mechanisms for avoiding inclusion of unneeded library functions.)

Announcing

the most sophisticated database program development tools available on any personal computer anywhere.

The Database

ACCELERATOR™

Automatic program, screen, menu, report generation.
Automatically checks, formats, documents your programs.
Now available for the IBM PC at an introductory price of $195. 30 day money back guarantee.

from
Optimal Software

The Database Accelerator is a trademark of Optimal Software.

Distributed by Programming International
505 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 301, Palo Alto, CA 94301
(800)222-8811 inside California: (800)631-4400

Dealer inquiries welcome.

Also available at
SOFTWARE to go
and other fine software dealers

CIRCLE NO. 219 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Books About C

None of the C compiler products that I have seen includes tutorial material about C, or provides a full definition of C. You will need help to get started, and a few of the books on C that are starting to appear can really help you. Here are some impressions:

The C Programming Language, Kernighan and Ritchie, (Prentice-Hall).

This is the de facto standard for the C programming language. If you are going to use C you need a copy of this book for reference. You may find parts of it hard going but it is valuable as a reference on C. Buy it and supplement it with one of the other books. Some of the compilers reviewed in the accompanying article include a copy of this book.

C Notes, C.T. Zahn, (Yourdon Press).

This book is similar to Kernighan and Ritchie but easier to use as a reference book. It explains C syntax and topics such as data type conversion in more detail than K&R but it assumes the reader has a computer science background and vocabulary. I used this book as a reference for a while, but no longer find much use for it. As Kernighan and Ritchie is the accepted definition of C, this book will not be necessary for most readers.

The C Primer, L. Hancock and M. Krieger, (Byte Books, McGraw-Hill).

This is a good primer on C. It makes few assumptions about the reader's prior experience with computers. The authors understand C well and have done a good job of capturing that understanding. The first two chapters and chapter 8 on the C preprocessor are the best parts of the book. Chapters 3-12 cover C, with chapters devoted to single aspects, such as control structures. Sometimes dull, these chapters do give solid explanations with proper attention to motivation.

The book does not provide a full education on C. Difficult topics such as file I/O and operating system interfaces are not covered, leaving the reader less than fully prepared for the kind of applications for which C is intended. That qualification made, I can say that this book is successful as a basic primer on C.

C Programming Guide, J. Purdum (Que Corporation).

This book covers C topics more completely than the Hancock book but is not as well written. It is oriented more to the personal computer world. It captures the virtues of C and its underlying concepts. Good features are:

—Functions are discussed early in the book. Functions are the essence of C; the book reflects this.
—Pointers and the C concept of l values are explained thoroughly. Pointers are treated as a normal part of C, to be mastered with the rest of C. In some books, the author treats pointers as a subject the reader should be afraid of.
—Mixing data types and type conversion are covered as a significant topic.
—File I/O is covered fully in 30 pages. File I/O is an important topic even for C beginners.
—An entire chapter is devoted to common mistakes and debugging. The author's practical experience with C and understanding of its concepts are apparent here and in other chapters.

The book does have weaknesses. The C Primer has a better flow and is more fun to read. Examples in Purdum's book are not chosen or introduced as well. The physical book itself is disappointing: Bold face and large type are over-used and, parts of the book seem slightly smudged or fuzzy.

Learning to Program in C, T. Plum (Plum Hall, Inc).

This book appears to have grown out of seminars on C given by the author. Unix version 7 is the environment assumed by the book. One chapter of the book discusses the software development process using a blackjack program as an example (a poor choice). The book is oriented toward programmers and engineers who will be using C in their jobs.

No attention is paid to file I/O or how C interfaces with an operating system. The author mixes facts with advice on conventions and style, without distinguishing them. Syntax diagrams and technical terms (expression trees and argument frame, for example) are used where a simple explanation would do. On the other hand there are good points:

—The way that data is actually represented in memory is discussed throughout the book. Discussions of computer architecture and program structure are used to give the reader an idea of what goes on in a computer.
—An appendix contains a one-page list of common bugs in C programs. The format could be better; explanation should accompany each item on the list.
—Individual topics are discussed in one or two page sections with good illustrations. These topics are chosen with an eye to the differences between C or other languages and the problems that a programmer new to C will have.
—The author is conscientious about tackling the hard and messy parts of C as well as the easy and elegant parts.

The book will be most useful for programmers using C in a Unix environment. Its discussion of the software development process and its suggestion of style conventions has value for people using C in their jobs.

The C Puzzle Book, A. Feier, Prentice-Hall.

This book features a number of examples of tricky and obscure uses of C's features. The reader is supposed to learn to use C by deciphering these examples. I see no point to this book. You can use C for years in a simple and straightforward way without ever worrying about most of the material in this book.

None of these books uses the IBM PC environment as the basis for concrete examples. Some examples may have to be modified before they will work with a compiler on the IBM PC. The Lattice C compiler and the Computer Innovations compiler are two that will cause few problems.

Buying one or more of these books is a must. If you are not an experienced programmer, you should get K&R and one other book.

Procedure and Disclaimer
I timed these benchmarks using a cheap stopwatch and manual timing. Pressing return after typing the number of iterations for the test was the start of the test. The appearance of the word *thru* on the screen marked the end of each test. I adjusted the number of iterations to keep each test between 20 seconds and 3 minutes. The results are reported for a convenient number of iterations. Differences of 2 seconds or more are probably valid.

I used DOS 2.0 for all tests, which, except for the floppy-based compile tests, were run on a 512K IBM PC XT with 12 I/O buffers specified in the config.sys file. I made some efforts to flush the DOS buffers before each test, but in some cases, results were dependent on the number of buffers specified.

Results of the Benchmarks
Table 2 shows the results of our track and field competition. Let's examine event-by-event results.
Compile times - Two figures are reported for each compiler: one with all files on a ramdisk, one with all files on floppies. Times for a hard-disk-based system, or with files split between a ramdisk and floppies, would fall between these numbers. The Cware compiler wins this event with fast compilation even for a 400-line C source file. The Lattice C compiler is a close second, with the Computer Innovations compiler and the Manx Aztec C compiler coming in 10 to 20 seconds slower. But all the compilers are fast enough to be pleasant to use. The key to happiness, whatever the compiler, is having a large ramdisk.

Table 2: C Compiler Benchmark Results

Bench Mark		Computer Innovations C86	Lattice or Microsoft C	CWARE C	Manx Aztec C
Compile Times					
Sieve - 60 lines		18-37 sec	6-25 sec	5-24 sec	15-32 sec
Pentath. - 150 lines		48-73 sec	22-56 sec	13-37 sec	39-62 sec
Big file - 400 lines		105-132 sec	39-98 sec	18-54 sec	81-113 sec
Link Times					
Sieve - 1 file		23-39 sec	13-55 sec	6-34 sec	16-53 sec
Pentathlon - 6 files		25-41 sec	16-42 sec	7-40 sec	19-59 sec
Pentathlon					
Floating Point	*10 iter.*	33 sec	48 sec	27 sec	41 sec
Function Calls	*10 iter.*	18 sec	13 sec	12 sec	21 sec
String Copy	*10 iter.*	31 sec	19 sec	21 sec	26 sec
Char Count	*10 iter.*	23 sec	16 sec	17 sec	16 sec
File Copy (getc/putc)	*2 iter. 30,000 bytes*	146 sec	48 sec	52 sec	42 sec
100 Yard Dash					
File Copy (1 iteration) (read/write) 30,001 bytes					
512 bytes per read		37 sec	14 sec	14 sec	15 sec
1024 bytes per read		32 sec	19 sec	20 sec	9 sec
8192 bytes per read		28 sec	27 sec	27 sec	5 sec
to/from ramdisk		23 sec	3 sec	3 sec	1 sec
Prime Number Sieve (10 iterations)		19 sec	11 sec	12 sec	18 sec
Program sizes (in bytes)					
Sieve		16,438	13,824	8,192	13,120
Pentathlon		17,640	15,360	13,824	14,688

Link Times - Numbers for floppy disk and ramdisk-based systems are shown for each compiler. The linker supplied with the Cware compiler is clearly fastest. Figures reported for Manx C are for the linker pro-

A strength of the Computer Innovations C86 is its full set of 8086 and PCDOS-specific functions.

vided with the compiler. The PCDOS linker can also be used with MANX C, yielding link times close to those of Lattice C, which uses the PCDOS linker.
The Pentathlon - Lattice C and Cware programs are almost equally fast for all but the floating point benchmark. There Cware beats the competition, and Lattice brings up the rear.

Computer Innovations and Manx C are significantly slower than Lattice or Cware on the function calling, string copy and character count benchmarks. The Manx C compiler is the winner in the file copy event, while the Computer Innovations complier is miles behind.
The 100-Yard Dash- Manx C is the winner here by a wide margin: It makes good use of PCDOS's I/O facilities while the others provide only so-so implementation. Lattice and Cware are adequate, but become slower as larger blocks of data have to be transferred. This seems backwards—larger transfers should be faster. The results are reproducible, and the same behavior holds in DOS 1.1 environment.

The Cware library does not allow you to make an exact copy of the original program. It pads the file to make it a multiple of 128 bytes in length—sometimes this is all right, sometimes it's a disaster.

The Computer Innovations compiler lags in the rear for this test. It is slower than the others by a

factor of 10 for I/O to and from a ramdisk.

Sieve Program - Lattice C and Cware are neck and neck here, with Computer Innovations and Manx C significantly slower.

Evaluations

Computer Innovations C86

The compiler handles syntax errors fairly well. Each error encountered results in one or two error messages that identify the line number in the source file where the error was. A single compilation usually identifies all syntax errors in a C source file.

Compilation speed and the execution speed of the resulting programs is adequate for most purposes, but not as good as for the Lattice C product or the Cware compiler. The biggest plus for the CI-C86 compiler is that complete source is provided for the standard library and for run-time support functions. An excellent way to learn how I/O functions really work, this provides examples of C functions. As you gain more experience with C you can make modifications to the library functions.

The compiler produces object code in a format unique to this product. A special linker is provided to accept this format. Assembler functions assembled by the IBM Macro Assembler can be converted to this object module format by a conversion program supplied with the package. This allows assembler functions to be combined with C functions.

Another strength of this product is its full set of 8086 and PCDOS-specific functions. You can immediately begin to make full use of the PC's cabablities without knowing all the details of its architecture or how to write assembler functions.

The documentation is quite good at getting you started in using the compiler and in describing available options for the compiler,

the linker and for other programs in the package. The standard library functions, and those library functions specific to this implementation, are also well-described. File I/O implementation, the interface to assembler functions, memory usage of compiled programs, and usage of the 8088 segment registers are not fully documented. The reader is often referred to the library function source files in lieu of an explanation. This is better than nothing, but isn't adequate.

> *Buffered outputs is an unfortunate design choice for Lattice C.*

The most serious disadvantage of this product is the slow speed of the standard library I/O functions. Because they are slower than those provided by BASIC, the natural advantage of C is lost for many applications. An experienced C programmer can modify the library functions but a newcomer to C will probably just have to suffer with the problem awhile.

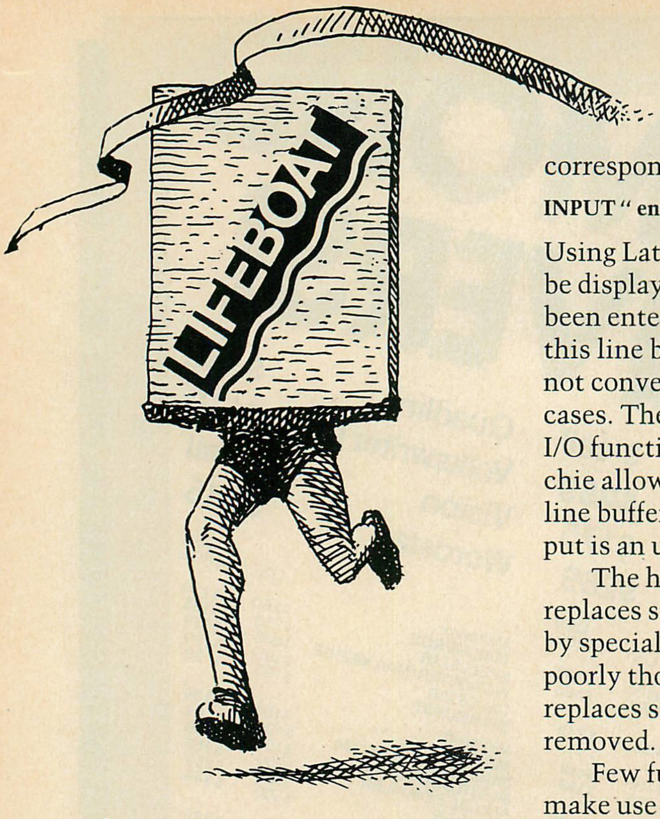
A CP/M-86 version of the compiler is also available.

In summary, the C86 compiler is a well-thought-out product with everything you need to write useful applications on the PC. Its main shortcomings are meager documentation of a few topics and sloppy implementation of some library functions.

Lattice C

This compiler is a fine all-around product. It implements the full C language and the standard I/O library. Compilation is fast, and the compiled programs tied for first in the pentathlon.

The Lattice C manual covers the necessary subjects thoroughly. Some of the discussions are long-winded, with sleep-inducing paragraphs, but the information you need is there. Examples are provided in some places but not all.



The example used to illustrate the interface to assembler language functions is poorly chosen—it is too complex and the context in which it is called is not shown.

One topic covered in this manual is how to use a different startup function to exclude library I/O functions. Three sample startup functions are provided as C source files. A header file, conio.h, that replaces the standard I/O functions is also provided. Using the tinymain.c function and conio.h reduced the sieve program by about 6000 bytes.

The library provides a "translated" mode for file I/O with recognition of the Control-Z end-of-file marker and conversion between the PCDOS and C end-of-line markers. The method for overriding these services is rather clumsy, but is documented.

One very annoying feature of the standard I/O library implementation is that output to the console is buffered until a newline character is output. Buffering lines of output to the screen is necessary on time-shared mini-computers but is a pure annoyance on a personal computer. For example, the C fragment below

```
printf ("\n enter number");
scanf ("%d",&n);
```

corresponds to the BASIC

```
INPUT " enter number";n
```

Using Lattice C the prompt would be displayed after the number had been entered. A kludge to defeat this line buffering is provided but is not convenient or applicable in all cases. The definition of standard I/O functions in Kernighan and Ritchie allows either unbuffered or line buffered output. Buffered output is an unfortunate design choice.

The header file conio.h, which replaces standard input and output by special unbuffered versions, is poorly thought out. The part that replaces stdin functions should be removed.

Few functions are provided to make use of PC's hardware or of the PCDOS operating system features. Some of these functions are provided in the $150 C-Food Smorgasbord, but the basics should be in the compiler product. For example, these functions would have been appreciated:

Block move - to move blocks of data between any two areas of memory (anywhere in the PC's 1 megabyte address range).
PCDOS access - to provide access to any of the operating system's services. The single BDOS function provided is limited to those services requiring only AX and DX register inputs. This limits you to a few of the simplest DOS functions.
ROM BIOS Access - to give access to the PC's ROM BIOS services.

The compiler does not recover well from syntax errors. Only the first error message is reliable. This is out of character with a generally high-quality product.

Lifeboat and Microsoft Versions of Lattice C

I compared the object modules from the Lifeboat and Microsoft compilers and found them to be identical. Spokesmen for Lifeboat ad Microsoft verified that both products incorporate the same Lattice C compiler. Consequently, you get to choose between two ways of buying this compiler. Either way you get a product maintained and enhanced by Lattice, Inc. Lifeboat and Microsoft are the first level of support; in both cases the developer is the final source of technical support.

> *Both the Lifeboat and Microsoft compilers incorporate the same Lattice C compiler.*

A CP/M-86 version of the Lattice C compiler is available from Lifeboat only.

The Microsoft compiler product includes a library manager and the MS-DOS linker. At present the Lifeboat version does not include a comparable library manager.

The library manager is quite userful for building a library of functions that you have written. The program is quite general and can be used with other object module files accepted by the MS-DOS linker. It could, for example, be used with object modules produced by the IBM Pascal compiler or the IBM Macro assembler.

The Microsoft product also includes a version of the MS-DOS linker compatible with DOS 1.0, 1.1, or 2.0. Because PC-DOS includes the linker, the MS-DOS linker does not offer any benefit to IBM PC users. A linker reference manual not provided with PC-DOS does give some extra information on how the linker works.

C-Ware

The Cware compiler is a mixture of good news and bad news. The compiler compiles programs quickly and the programs execute quickly, too. The full C language is supported and 8087 support is provided. The package includes a full screen editor, an assembler, a linker, and a library manager, in addition to the compiler. While the assembler is

LOOK WHO BUYS SOFTWARE FROM US!

IBM · XEROX · NCR
CHEVRON · IRS · SPERRY
JFK SPACE CENTER · ARAMCO
JOHN DEERE · PRICE WATERHOUSE
HEWLETT-PACKARD · GENERAL ELECTRIC
GENERAL DYNAMICS · HONEYWELL · CONTROL DATA

If you order software from us, you're in good company. You see, some of our best customers are America's biggest corporations.

Maybe they're attracted by our low, low prices (big companies are price-conscious too!)

Or maybe when you're an "IBM", you're looking for something extra. Like the personal service, giant inventory, and in-depth technical support you'll find at 800-SOFTWARE.

You see, when you call *us*, we'll take care of you like our business depends on it. Because it does. Which means when you place an order, you can be sure we'll fill it the same day. And that our unique Order Tracking System™ is keeping tabs on your order every step of the way.

Most important, we'll be there if you need us *after* your software arrives. We'll make sure that you'll receive the finest post-delivery service in the industry. And that's a promise.

Next time you're looking for low price *and* great service, do what IBM, General Electric, and a lot of other big companies do. Pick up the phone and give us a call.

We'll show you why some hard-headed companies buy their software from us.

CHECK OUT ALL OUR INCREDIBLE BUSINESS SOFTWARE PRICES.

WordStar® $269	**dBASE II™ $439**	**SuperCalc 2™ $169**	**4-Point Graphics™ $129**
WordStar®/MailMerge™ $369	**InfoStar™ $299**	**VisiCalc® $169**	**PerfectWriter™ $259**

ADVANCED LOGIC SYSTEMS™	
Z-Card	$129
CP M Card	$359
Smarterm II	$149
ALPHA™	
Apple—IBM Connection	$150
Executive Package	$115
Database Manager I II	$115 $225
Mailing List	$ 75
Type Faces	$ 95
APPLIED SOFTWARE TECHNOLOGY™	
VersaForm	$289
ATI TRAINING POWER™	
Training Modules (WordStar CP M, etc.)	$ 65
ASHTON-TATE™	
dBASE II	$439
dBASE II User's Guide	$ 20
ASPEN™	
Grammatik	$ 60
Random House Proofreader	$ 39
Random House Thesaurus	$119
C.M.B. III ENTERPRISES™	
WS—Patch & WS—Keys	$ 45
COMPUTING™	
Power!	$119
CONTINENTAL™	
Home Accountant	CALL
DIGITAL RESEARCH™	
Access Manager	$225
CBASIC	$109
CBASIC 86	$139
CB—80 Compiler	$379
Concurrent CP M 86	$249
CP M 86	$ 49
Display Manager	$299
PASCAL MT+	$259
PASCAL MT+86	$289
PERSONAL BASIC	$119
SPP	$155
Other Products	CALL
FOX AND GELLER™	
Quickcode	$199
dUtil	$ 69
dGraph	$199
HAYES™	
SmartModem 1200	$549
SmartModem 1200B (w Smartcom)	$489
HOWARDSOFT™	
Tax Preparer	CALL
HUMANSOFT™	
DBPlus	$ 95
IUS™	
EasyWriter II	$239
EasySpeller II	$139
EasyWriter Speller	$339
EasyWriter Speller Filer	CALL
EasyFiler	$259
Financial Management Series	CALL
IMSI™	
4-Point Graphics (IBM-PC)	**$129**
LEXISOFT™	
SpellBinder	$259
LIFETREE SYSTEMS™	
VolksWriter	$129
LOTUS™	
1 2 3	$379
METASOFT™	
Benchmark	$379
MICROLAB™	
Tax Manager	$179
MICROPRO®	
WordStar	$269
WordStar Mail Merge	$369
WordStar MailMerger Spell Star StarIndex Professional Pak	CALL
WordStar InfoStar	$549
MailMerge	$149
InfoStar	$299
CalcStar	$129
DataStar	$179
SuperSort	$149
SpellStar	$149
ReportStar	$229
Apple Packages and Other Products	CALL
MICROSOFT®	
RAM Card™	$ 89
Softcard™	$249
Videoterm (Videx™)	$239
Premium Card	CALL
Multiplan™	$199
BASIC 80	$275
BASIC Compiler	$295
COBOL Compiler	$549
FORTRAN 80	$349
Flight Simulator	$ 45
Multi—Tool Word	CALL
Mouse	$169
Other Products	CALL
MICROSTUF™	
Crosstalk	$119
OASIS™	
The Word Plus	$129
Punctuation and Style	$109
ORGANIC™	
Milestone	$269
PBL CORPORATION™	
Personal Investor	$105
PEACHTREE™	
PeachText 5000	CALL
Other Products	CALL
PERFECT SOFTWARE™	
Perfect Writer	$259
Perfect Speller	$129
Perfect Writer Speller	$359
Perfect Filer	$279
Perfect Calc	$169
All Four Perfect Products	$699
PETER NORTON™	
Norton Utilities	$ 59
PICKLES AND TROUT™ (CP/M) for TRS)	
TRS—80 Model II	$169
TRS—80 Model 16	$169
Hard Disk	$225
SOFTWARE PUBLISHERS™	
PFS File	CALL
PFS Report	$ 95
PFS Graph	$ 95
SORCIM™	
SuperCalc	$129
SuperCalc 2	$169
SpellGuard	$129
SuperWriter	$179
VIDEX™	
Enhancer II	$119
Function Strip	$ 69
Videoterm	$239
Ultraterm	CALL
VISICORP®	
VisiCalc®	$169
VisiTerm	$ 85
VisiDex	$189
VisiFile	$249
VisiSchedule	$249
VisiTrend Plot	$249
VisiWord	$249
Business Forecaster	$100
Desktop Planner	$249
Other Products	CALL
FLOPPY DISKETTES (Boxes of Ten)	
MEMOREX™	
8"	$ 38
5" (SS)	$ 28
5" (DS)	$ 38
Larger Quantities	CALL
ATHANA™	
8"	$ 25
5" (SS)	$ 25
5" (DS)	$ 35
Larger Quantities	CALL
IN-HOUSE SPECIALS AND NEW PRODUCTS	**CALL**

WRITE:
800-SOFTWARE, INC.
940 Dwight Way, Ste. 14
Berkeley, CA 94710
CA residents add sales tax.

800-SOFTWARE

TO ORDER, CALL TOLL-FREE: 800-227-4587
or 415-644-3611

- ☐ Purchase orders accepted. Please call us in advance.
- ☐ Prompt UPS 3 day Blue Label.
- ☐ Call for shipping charges, *free catalog*, and other low software prices.
- ☐ Now open Mon. Sat.
- ☐ International and national dealer requests welcome.
- ☐ Quantity discounts available.
- ☐ Prices may change.

CIRCLE NO. 150 ON READER SERVICE CARD

not adequate for large assembler projects or for device drivers, it is okay for writing assembler functions for use with C programs.

The documentation is quite good in some areas (getting started, command syntax, and options); skimpy in others (standard library functions, assembler language interface, and the execution environment). It assumes that the reader is an experienced programmer familiar with C and can cope with the differences between this implementation and that required by examples in books about C.

Not all the standard C library functions are present; a few that are, such as fopen() and gets (), work in non-standard ways. Before I could compile the pentathlon program, I had to add these lines to stdio.h:

```
#define stdin 0
#define stdout 1
#define stderr 2
#define fclose (a)    close (a)
```

The compiler supports the full C language with one exception. It does not recognize the preprocessror statment

```
#includ ⟨filename.ext⟩
```

Instead, it recognizes the form with filename.ext. Because such statements occur in a large number of C programs, this is a significant annoyance.

Conversion of end-of-line markers is performed by some functions and not by others. The results are bizarre—scanf works normally, but getchar () and getc () are abnormal. In addition, getchar () does not treat Ctl-Z as marking the end-of-file, while getc (stdin) does.

The file I/O functions attempt to handle Control-Z sensing automatically without any provision for defeating this service. So you cannot read and write some files as you choose. If you need to read files created by canned software or to produce files for input to such programs, the Cware product will give you unnecessary headaches.

If you need to read files created by canned software or to produce files for input to such programs, the Cware product will give you unnecessary headaches.

With this compiler, running C programs from Kernighan and Ritchie, or one of the other books on C, would be frustrating. This compiler is priced to appeal to newcomers to C whose experience is limited to BASIC. These buyers would have been better served if Cware had followed the standard library closely.

A CP/M-86 version of the compiler is available from Cware.

While this compiler is a good buy at $100, it could have been a world beater with a little more effort. A new release seems to have fixed many of the problems that I found. I will report on the its progress next month.

Manx C

The Manx C package includes an assembler, a linker, and a library manager. The compiler produces assembler source code with an option selecting the Manx Assembler format or the IBM Macro Assembler format. I verified that both options produced valid programs. Because the Manx assembler and the Manx loader used with it are smaller and faster than their IBM counterparts, I used them for the compile and link time tests.

Source code is provided for the library functions. This is a big plus for the Manx. It is good learning material and allows you to tailor things to your liking.

File I/O is this compiler's strong suit—the functions are fast, faster than those of the other compilers. The negative side: There are no end-of-line conversion facilities. Manx C is fine for writing your own programs but not so good for running standard C programs.

The Manx C compiler generates assembler source files as its output. Using the Manx assembler makes this bearable if not pleasant.

The Manx C compiler is quite new—at least in its IBM PC version—and the documentation reflects this newness. Poorly printed, the manual is missing a few important topics.

Syntax errors produce reasonable error messages with an identifying line number. Unfortunately, the compiler then produces a nearly infinite number of spurious error messages. It is easily the worst of the group in this regard.

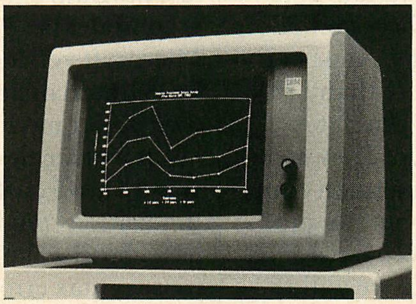
The compiler does not seem to check for errors in writing its output. When I ran out of room on a disk, the compiler continued merrily dropping its output in the bit bucket. The assember program that uses its output then produced a number of irrelevant error messages. This is a really dumb bug and should be fixed immediately. Check before you buy the product.

Versions of the Manx C compiler for CP/M-86, CP/M (8080) and the Apple (6502) are available from Manx.

Fitting the Buyer's Needs

The compilers reviewed are aimed at experienced programmers who want a good tool for personal use. All are effective tools and pleasant to use. The Computer Innovations and Lattice C compilers are the most useful products; if money is a major factor, the Cware compiler is a good buy.

None of the available C compilers fits the needs of newcomers to C well, requiring too high a level of knowledge from the user. The Computer Innovations and Lattice C compilers come closest, but at $400 to $500, may be too expensive for many buyers. If you are a newcomer to C, expect frustrations and wasted effort in getting started. Persevere and you will find C to be worth the effort.



Getting 1·2·3™ to do graphics on an IBM® Monochrome takes a lot...

Exactly one Hercules Graphics Card.™

What a lot of people have learned the hard way is that you can't run 1-2-3's graphics on the IBM PC monochrome display. That is, until now.

Now, with the Hercules Graphics Card, you *can* run 1-2-3's graphics on the monochrome display. (Of course, 1-2-3's spreadsheet and information management functions work too.)

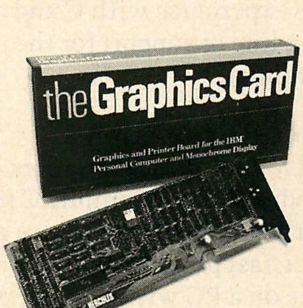
But naturally the Hercules Graphics Card does a lot more than just make a great program like 1-2-3 better. It gives you high resolution bit mapped graphics on the monochrome display—something the IBM monochrome card simply can't do.

The Hercules Graphics Card replaces IBM's monochrome card giving you text compatibility *or* two pages of graphics, each with a resolution of 720h × 348v. You'll get the monochrome's high quality character set, software compatibility with programs like VisiCalc,® WordStar® and dBase II,™ and a printer interface for any parallel port printer.

Included with each Hercules Graphics Card is software that enables you to use the PC's BASIC graphics commands. Or you can program in other languages and use Graph X,™ our set of assembly language graphics subroutines. (Graph X is available now for only $50 and includes a graphics screen dump.)

The Hercules Graphics Card. Only **$499.** A small price to pay for graphics on the monochrome display. Call or write for the name of the dealer nearest you.

Hercules Computer Technology
2550 Ninth Street
Suite 210
Berkeley, CA 94710
(415) 540-6000



HERCULES

Graphics software requiring the IBM Color Graphics Adapter is not compatible with the Hercules Graphics Card. Hercules compatible software from other vendors includes programs for business graphics, CAD, and word processing with scientific characters. Call or write for more information.

Hercules Graphics Card and Graph X are trademarks of Hercules Computer Technology. 1-2-3 is a trademark of Lotus Development. IBM is a registered trademark of IBM. VisiCalc is a registered trademark of VisiCorp. WordStar is a registered trademark of MicroPro. dBase II is a trademark of Ashton-Tate.

For developing a serious software product, all of these compilers have some limitations. None of the four makes use of more than 128K of memory and none generates highly optimized code. They are suitable for developing small or medium-sized products but not products that strain the resources of an IBM PC. Next month, we will review a group of compilers that meet these needs, and report on enhancements to the products reviewed here.

Where to purchase a compiler

C compilers are too exotic to be stocked by most retail computer or software stores. It is also unlikely that such stores will have any expertise with the C language. While retailers may be willing to order a C compiler for you, they probably cannot offer succor and support once you've got it. So where do you buy a compiler?

You will probably have to order the compiler by mail—either from the vendor or a mail-order firm. The Computer Innovations compiler and both versions of the Lattice C compiler are being advertised by discount mail-order firms at prices up to $100 off the list price.

The Computer Innovations compiler is also available through Vandata. It provides a file transfer program, Vamp, as a bonus. This program supports the Modem7 checksumed protocol used by many CP/M and IBM PC file transfer programs and bulletin boards. Vandata has experience with C and offers a first line of support for the compiler.

Recommendations

All four of these compilers are good products. They compile C programs fairly quickly and produce compact, fast programs. All are quite usable on a PC with two floppies and 128K of RAM (192K for DOS 2.0). Compared to Microsoft Pascal or Fortran they seem like perfection.

If you can spend $500 and value fast program execution the Lattice C compiler is a good choice. The Microsoft version includes the MS-DOS librarian needed to build your own object module libraries.

If you are new to C and can stand a $395 outlay, the Computer Innovations product might be the best choice. The compiler handles most syntax errors well, and the library functions work in a sensible way. Reading the source files for the library functions can help you to understand C, as well as the library functions themselves.

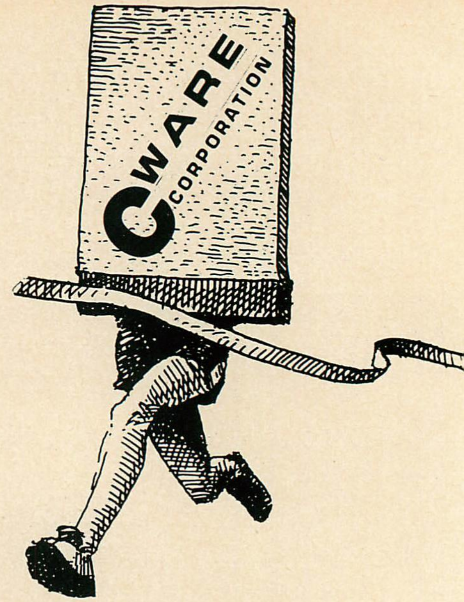
If a $100 price seems bearable but $400 does not, the Cware compiler is a sound buy. The fundamentals are great, and perhaps you can tolerate some warts for a $300 saving. Check it out to see how the wart removal process is going before you decide on a compiler.

The Manx C compiler will also do the job. It is not as fast as Lattice C or Cware and lacks the polish of the Computer Innovations and Lattice C compilers. The $249 price makes it a possbile alternative to the Cware compiler. Improvements in speed and polish would make it more competitive.

C compilers are too exotic to be stocked by most retail computer or software stores. You will probably have to order one by mail.

I have commented on shortcomings in these compilers not only to inform the buyer but also to spur the vendors to improve their products. I hope that they will rapidly make my negative criticisms obsolete. Before you buy, contact the vendors to ask if problems have been fixed.

Next month, we will review several more C compilers, give an update on the compilers reviewed here, and offer some overall recommendations.



Available C compilers

CI-C86
$395
Computer Innovations, Inc.
75 Pine Street
Lincroft, New Jersey 07738
201-530-0995
CIRCLE 454 ON READER SERVICE CARD

C
$100
C Ware Corporation
1607 New Brunswick Avenue
Sunnyvale, CA 94087
408-736-6905
CIRCLE 455 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Lattice C
$500
Lifeboat Associates
1651 Third Avenue
New York, NY 10028
212-860-0300
CIRCLE 456 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Microsoft C
$500
Microsoft
10700 Northup Way
Bellevue, WA 98004
206-828-8080
CIRCLE 457 ON READER SERVICE CARD

AZTEC C86
$249
Manx Software Systems
Box 55
Shrewsbury, NJ 07701
201-780-4004
CIRCLE 458 ON READER SERVICE CARD

CI-C86
$389
Vandata
1744 Midvale Ave. North, Suite 107
Seattle, WA 98133
206-542-7611
(includes VaMP file transfer program)
CIRCLE 459 ON READER SERVICE CARD

LISTING 1 PENTATHLON PROGRAM

```
/*      Pentathlon program      */


#include "stdio.h"

main()
 {
   int i , niter ;
   int ibench ;

   printf("\n benchmark:\n");
   scanf("%d",&ibench) ;

   printf("\n no. iterations:\n");
   scanf("%d",&niter);

   for( i=1 ; i <= niter ; i=i+1 )
      {
        switch( ibench )
          {
          case 1 : bench1() ; break ;
          case 2 : bench2() ; break ;
          case 3 : bench3() ; break ;
          case 4 : bench4() ; break ;
          case 5 : bench5() ; break ;
          case 6 : makefile() ; break ;
          } ;
      } ;
   printf("\n thru\n");
 }


int bench1()      /* floating point arithmetic benchmark */
 {
   int i , j ;
   float x[100] , y[100] , z ;

   for( i=0 ; i < 100 ; i=i+1 )
      { x[i] = i+1 ;
        y[i] = 3*i ;
      } ;

   z=0 ;
   for( j=0 ; j < 10 ; j=j+1 )
      {
        for( i=0 ; i < 100 ; i=i+1 )
           { z = z + x[i]*y[i] ; } ;
      }
 }


int bench2()            /* function calling benchmark */
 {
   int i ;

   for( i=0 ; i < 20000 ; i=i+1 )
      { dummy(i) ; } ;
 }

int dummy(i)
 int i ;
 {
   return( i+1 ) ;
 }


int bench3()      /* string copy benchmark */
 {
   int i ;
   char s[501] , s2[501] ;

   for(i=0 ; i < 500 ; i=i+1 )
      { s[i] = 'a' ; } ;
   s[500] = '\0' ;

   for( i=0 ; i < 100 ; i=i+1 )
      { scopy(s2,s) ; } ;
 }


int scopy(to,from)      /* string copy function */
 char *to ;         /* pointer to destination string */
 char *from ;       /* pointer to source string */
 {
   while( (*to++ = *from++) != '\0' ) /* check for end of string */
     { ; } ; /* copy one char and advance ptrs */
 }

int bench4()    /* character count benchmark */
 {
   int i ;
   char s[501] ;
   int cnt[128] ;

   for(i=0 ; i < 500 ; i=i+1 )
      { s[i] = i + 1 ; } ;
   s[500] = '\0' ;
   for( i=0 ; i < 100 ; i=i+1 )
      { count_chars(s,cnt) ; } ;
 }

int count_chars(string,counts)
 char string[] ;
 int counts[] ;
 {
   register int i ;
   register char c ;

   i=0 ;
   c = string[i] ;
   while( c != '\0' )
     { counts[ c & 0x7f ] ++ ;
       i = i + 1 ;
       c = string[i] ;
     } ;
 }


int bench5()     /* file copy with getc/putc */
 {
   FILE  *in ,
         *out ;
   int c ;
   long n ;

   in = fopen("a:test.in","r");
   out = fopen("a:test.out","w");
   if( (in == NULL) || (out ==NULL) )
     { printf("can't open a file");
       exit(0) ;
     }
   n=0;
   c = getc(in) ;
   while( c != EOF )
     { n=n+1 ;
       putc(c,out);
       c = getc(in) ;
     } ;
   printf("\n %ld characters",n);
   fclose(in);
   fclose(out);
 }


int makefile()     /* create test file */
 {
   FILE  *out ;
   long n ;

   out = fopen("a:test.in","w");
   if( out ==NULL )
     { printf("can't open test file");
       exit(0) ;
     }
   n=0;
   for( n=0 ; n < 30000 ; n=n+1 )
     { putc('a',out) ; } ;
   fclose(out);
 }
^Z
```

LISTING 2 FILECOPY PROGRAM

```
/*     Filecopy Program      */

#include "stdio.h"
#define  NO_FILE     (-1)
#define  RD_MODE      0
#define  WR_MODE      1
```

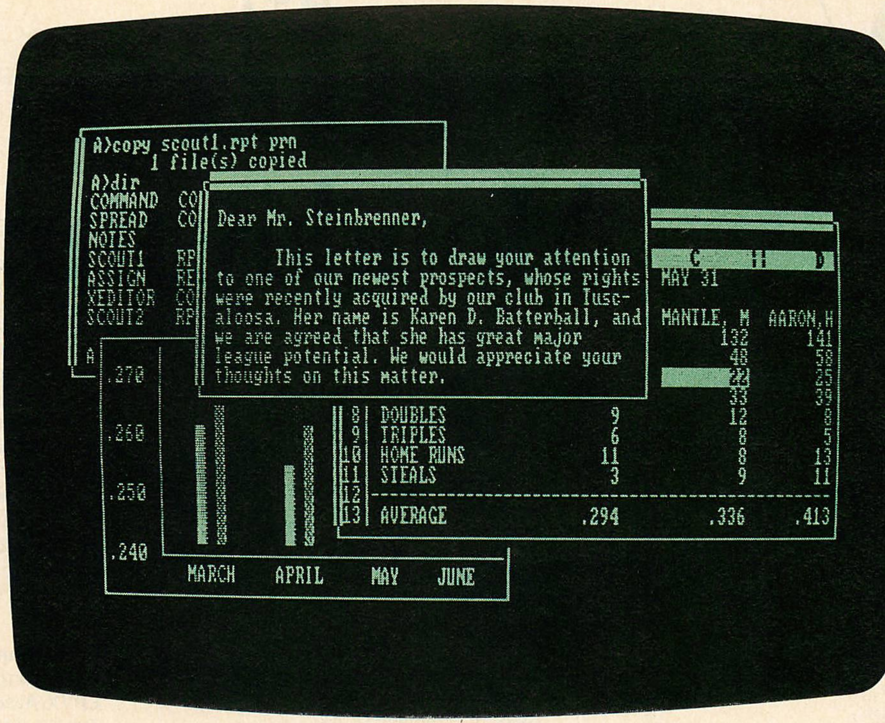
```
main(argc,argv)
 int argc ;
 char *argv[] ;
 {
    int     in ,
            out ;
    int c ;
    long n ;
    char buffer[16384] ;
    int nr ;

    if( argc < 3 )
      { printf("\n no file names \n");
        exit(0);
      }
    printf("\n bytes to read \n");
    scanf("%d",&nr);

    in = open(argv[1],RD_MODE);
    out = creat(argv[2],WR_MODE);
    if( (in == NO_FILE) || (out == NO_FILE) )
      { printf("can't open a file");
        exit(0) ;
      }
    n=0;
    c = read(in,buffer,nr) ;
    while( c > 0 )
      { n=n+c ;
        write(out,buffer,c);
        c = read(in,buffer,nr) ;
      } ;
    printf("\n thru -  %ld chars\n",n);
    close(in);
    close(out);
 }
^Z
```

LISTING 3 PRIME NUMBER SIEVE PROGRAM

```
/*    Prime Number Sieve Program     */


#define true 1
#define false 0
#define size 8190
#define sizepl 8191

#include "stdio.h"

main()
 {
    int i , niter , count ;

    printf("\n no. iterations:\n");
    scanf("%d",&niter);

    for( i=1 ; i <= niter ; i=i+1 )
       { count = sieve() ; } ;

    printf("\n thru - %d primes \n",count);
 }


int sieve()
 {
        int i,prime,k,count;
        char flags[sizepl];
            count=0;
            for(i = 0; i<=size;i++)
                flags[i]=true;
            for(i=0;i <= size; i++){
                if(flags[i]){
                    prime = i+i+3;
                    k=i+prime;
                    while(k<=size){
                        flags[k] = false;
                        k += prime;
                    }
                    count = count+1;
                }
            }
        return(count);
        }
^Z
```

LISTING 4 SOFTWARE INTERFACE ROUTINE

```
;       execute an s/w function call with all registers set up

;       EXAMPLE OF USE
;
;       struct regval{ unsigned ax,bx,cx,dx,si,di,ds,es;};
;       struct regval  input_regs ; /* input register values */
;                      return_regs; /* values returned in regs */
;
;       status = swint(fun_code,&input_regs,&return_regs);


;       structure for register values is
;               struct regval{ unsigned ax,bx,cx,dx,si,di,ds,es;};
regs    struc
reg_ax  dw      0               ; ax value
reg_bx  dw      0               ; bx value
reg_cx  dw      0               ; cx value
reg_dx  dw      0               ; dx value
reg_si  dw      0               ; si value
reg_di  dw      0               ; di value
reg_ds  dw      0               ; ds value
reg_es  dw      0               ; es value
regs    ends

;       define arguments
args    struc
ret_adr dw      0
old_bp  dw      0
int_no  dw      0               ; number of interrupt to issue
sreg    dw      0               ; address of input reg. values
dreg    dw      0               ; store returned reg. values here
args    ends


code    segment byte public
        assume  cs:code
        public  swint

swint:
        push    bp
        mov     bp,sp           ;set our arg pointer
        push    ds              ; save ds as a local variable
        push    es
        mov     al,byte ptr int_no[bp] ; insert int. no into the instruction

        mov     bx,offset int_instr
        mov     byte ptr cs:[bx+1],al
        mov     bx,word ptr sreg[bp] ; set up address of input register values
        mov     ax,word ptr reg_ax[bx] ; place values in registers
        mov     cx,word ptr reg_cx[bx]
        mov     dx,word ptr reg_dx[bx]
        mov     si,word ptr reg_si[bx]
        mov     di,word ptr reg_di[bx]
        mov     es,word ptr reg_es[bx]
        mov     ds,word ptr reg_ds[bx]
        mov     bx,word ptr ss:reg_bx[bx]
int_instr:
        int     00H             ; dummy int. number (filled in on each use)

        mov     bp,word ptr dreg[bp] ; set up address of return register area

        mov     word ptr reg_ax[bp],ax ; store register values there
        mov     word ptr reg_bx[bp],bx ; and store it
        mov     word ptr reg_cx[bp],cx
        mov     word ptr reg_dx[bp],dx
        mov     word ptr reg_si[bp],si
        mov     word ptr reg_di[bp],di
        mov     word ptr reg_ds[bp],cx
        mov     word ptr reg_ds[bp],ds
        mov     word ptr reg_es[bp],es
        pushf                   ; return flags
        pop     ax              ; in ax
        pop     es
        pop     ds              ; restore registers
        pop     bp
        ret

code    ends
        end
^Z
```



SOFTWARE FUSION

APX

CORE EXECUTIVE™

INTEGRATE VIRTUALLY ANY SOFTWARE

The APX CORE EXECUTIVE enables you to:

★ Run several programs simultaneously.

★ Control each program through interactive windows.

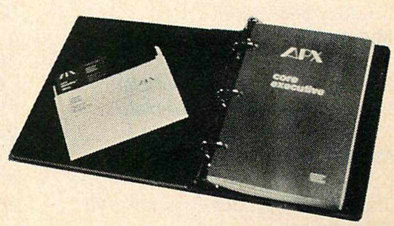
★ Change any window's size and position, and scroll within any window.

★ "Cut & paste" from one window to another automatically.

★ Save typed sequences for replay with a single keystroke.

All this, and more.... **$195.00**

The APX CORE EXECUTIVE (available for the IBM PC with DOS).



Application Executive Corporation

600 Broadway
Suite 4C
New York, NY 10012
(212) 226-6347

APX

Dealer inquiries invited.

Your after hou
Monday thru Satur

SOFTWARE

ApTec *(for color Prism Printers)*
Rainbow Writer Color Text Formatter . . . $119.
Rainbow Writer Screen Grabber . . . . 69.
Ashton Tate
dBase II (DOS or CP/M-86) . . . . 389.
Friday . . . . call
Best Programs
PC/Personal Finance Program . . . . 65.
PC/Professional Finance Program II . . . . 145.
PC/Fixed Asset System . . . . 279.
Bible Research
THE WORD *(KJV Bible - 7 disks)* . . . . 145.
Continental
Home Accountant Plus . . . . 95.
FCM *(was First Class Mail)* . . . . 79.
UltraFile *(file/report/graph)* . . . . 127.
Conceptual Instruments
The Desk Organizer *(1 yr. free updates, 30 day return guarantee, now has Meta Command)* . . . . 250.
Digital Research
CP/M-86 . . . . 39.
DR LOGO . . . . 109.
Financier
Financier Personal Series . . . . 119.
Financier Tax Series . . . . 119.
Hayden
PIE:Writer . . . . 149.
Hayes
Smartcom II . . . . 79.
IUS *(XT and DOS 2.0 compatible)*
EasyWriter II . . . . 195.
EasySpeller II *for EasyWriter II* . . . . 129.
A/R, A/P, G/L . . . . *each* 339.
Package Price for A/R, A/P, G/L . . . . 879.
Inventory . . . . 339.
Order Entry . . . . 339.
Lifetree
Volkswriter . . . . 119.
Volkswriter International . . . . 149.
Volkswriter Deluxe . . . . call
Link Systems
Datafax . . . . 189.
Lotus Development
1-2-3 *(version 1A — the newest!)* . . . . call
Micropro
WordStar 3.3 . . . . 269.
ProPak *(WordStar/MailMerge/SpellStar/StarIndex)* . . . . 397.
Microsoft
Multiplan . . . . 169.
Multi-Tool Financial *(for Multiplan)* . . . . 69.
Multi-Tool Budget *(for Multiplan)* . . . . 99.
Multi-Tool Word *(with mouse)* . . . . 349.
Microstuf
Crosstalk XVI . . . . 109.
Transporter *(includes Crosstalk XVI)* . . . . . 169.
PCsoftware
PCrayon *(create in full color with easy to use graphics tool)* . . . . 39.
CREATABASE . . . . 59.

PC Connection Software Special
through November 30, 1983

PETER NORTON
Norton Utilities
- Super utility package
- Works on any IBM-PC or XT
- Works with all DOS versions

ROSESOFT
ProKey
- Customize your keyboard
- Eliminate repetitive typing
- One key can issue a whole series of commands

PACKAGE PRICE FOR BOTH . . . . . . $99.

Peachtree
PeachText 5000 . . . . $237.
Pearlsoft
Personal Pearl . . . . 189.
Peter Norton . . . . *see above special*
Norton Utilities . . . . 55.
RoseSoft . . . . *see above special*
ProKey *(customize your keyboard)* . . . . . . 59.
Software Arts
TK!Solver . . . . 219.
Financial Management Pack . . . . 87.
Mechanical Engineering Pack . . . . 87.
Software Publishing
PFS/File . . . . 95.
PFS/Graph . . . . 95.
PFS/Write . . . . 95.
PFS/Report . . . . 79.
Softword Systems
Multimate . . . . call
Sorcim
Supercalc II . . . . 159.
System Software Services
PCModem 1.3 *(for Smartmodem 300)* . . . . 39.
PCModem 1.4C *(for Smartmodem 1200)* . . 69.
VisiCorp
VisiCalc IV *(w/StretchCalc)* . . . . 165.
VisiFile . . . . 195.
VisiSchedule . . . . 195.
VisiTrend/Plot . . . . 195.
VisiWord . . . . 269.
VisiSpell . . . . 159.

EDUCATIONAL

Comprehensive
PC Pal *(for first time users)* . . . . 27.
PC Tutor 1.1 *(more in depth instruction)* . . . 55.
PC Tutor 2.0 *(more in depth instruction)* . . . 55.
FriendlySoft
FriendlyWare/PC Introductory Set . . . . 39.
Lightning Software
Mastertype . . . . 34.
Spinnaker
Educational Games for Young Computer Users (requires graphics board)
Snooper Troops I *(ages 10 to adult)* . . . . . . 30.
Snooper Troops II *(ages 10 to adult)* . . . . $30.
Most Amazing Thing *(ages 10 to adult)* . . . 27.
Face Maker *(ages 4 to 12)* . . . . 23.
Story Machine *(ages 5 to 9)* . . . . 23.
Kinder Comp *(ages 3 to 8)* . . . . 23.
Rhymes and Riddles *(ages 5 to 9)* . . . . . . 20.
Hey Diddle Diddle *(ages 3 to 10)* . . . . 20.
Stone *(requires graphics board)*
My Letters, Numbers, and Words *(great graphics and sound — ages 1 to 5)* . . . . . 29.

GAMES

Broderbund
Apple Panic . . . . 23.
EPYX/Automated Simulations
Temple of Apshai . . . . 27.
Upper Reaches of Apshai . . . . 15.
Curse of Ra . . . . 15.
Star Warrior . . . . 27.
Rescue at Rigel . . . . 23.
Crush, Crumble, and Chomp . . . . 23.
FriendlySoft
FriendlyWare/PC Arcade . . . . 39.
Funtastic/
Snack Attack II *(a favorite)* . . . . 27.
Cosmic Crusader *(as good as above)* . . . . 27.
Big Top *(hours of fun!)* . . . . 29.
Master Miner *(1 or 2 players)* . . . . 29.
Infocom
High quality text games
Zork I . . . . 27.
Zork II . . . . 27.
Zork III . . . . 27.
Starcross . . . . 27.
Deadline . . . . 35.
Suspended . . . . 35.
Witness . . . . 35.
Planetfall . . . . 35.
Microsoft
Flight Simulator *(with 93 page manual)* . . . 35.
ScreenPlay *(mono or graphics board)*
Asylum . . . . 29.
Dunzhin *(with voice)* . . . . 29.
Sierra/On-Line
Frogger . . . . 27.
Crossfire *(keyboard or joystick)* . . . . 23.
Ulysses and the Golden Fleece . . . . 27.
Strategic Simulations
The Warp Factor . . . . 27.
Tigers in the Snow . . . . 27.
Epidemic . . . . 25.
Sublogic
Night Mission Pinball . . . . 29.
Zee Programming
Zuran Defender *(highly addictive)* . . . . 25.

INFORMATION SERVICES

Compuserve
Compuserve *(includes subscription, manual, 5 hours of connect time, and monthly publications)* . . . . 39.
Source Telecomputing
The Source *(subscription & manual)* . . . . . 69.

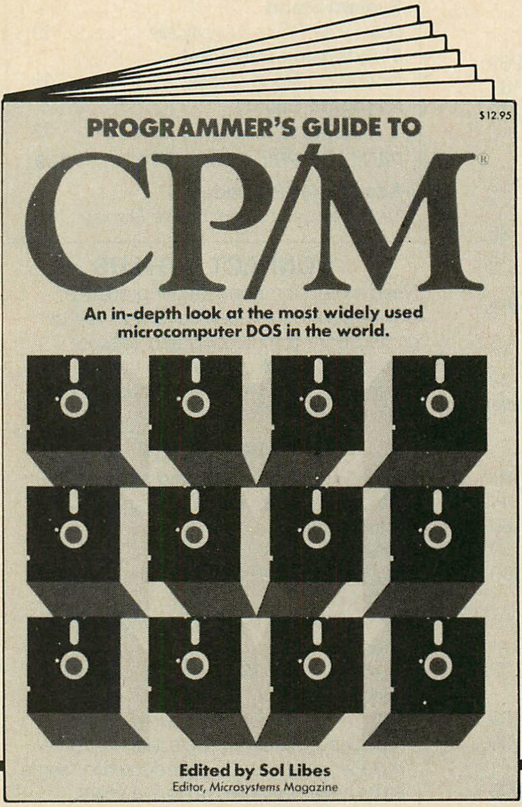
*OUR NEW HOURS START NOVEMBER 1.

PROGRAMMER'S GUIDE TO CP/M®

Edited by Sol Libes

Here's an important collection of CP/M insights that you'll never find in any CP/M manual. CP/M is the most popular microcomputer DOS in use today, and this widespread use has generated many innovative techniques and enhancements of CP/M. *Programmer's Guide to CP/M* tells you what these enhancements are and how to put them to use, how to get around apparent limitations of a CP/M system and why CP/M is far more versatile than you might have imagined. Every article in *Programmer's Guide to CP/M* originally appeared in MICROSYSTEMS between January 1980 and February 1982. Except for this collection, these articles are now unavailable! *Programmer's Guide to CP/M* gives you an in-depth look at CP/M from the viewpoint of the programmer—the individual who creates the software that interfaces directly with CP/M, or who is installing CP/M on systems for which configurations do not already exist.

Contents include "An Introduction to CP/M," "The CP/M Connection," "CP/M Software Reviews," "CP/M Utilities & Enhancement," "CP/M 86" and "CP/M Software Directories." $12.95.



Also available at your local bookstore or computer store.

For faster service, PHONE TOLL FREE
800-631-8112
(In NJ only: 201-540-0445)

CP/M is a registered trademark of Digital Research, Inc.

NH4F

MICROSYSTEMS PRESS

Dept. NF5F · 39 East Hanover Avenue · Morris Plains, NJ 07950

Please send me ______ *Programmer's Guide to CP/M* at $12.95* plus $2.00 postage and handling each. Outside USA add $3.00 per order. **#14C**

☐ **PAYMENT ENCLOSED** $______. *Residents of CA, NJ and NY State add applicable sales tax.

☐ **CHARGE MY:**
(Charge and phone orders $10 minimum.)
☐ American Express
☐ MasterCard ☐ Visa

Card No.____________ Exp. Date______

Signature____________

Mr./Mrs./Ms.____________
(please print full name)

Print Name____________

Address____________ Apt.______

City____________

State____________ Zip______

☐ Send me a FREE *Creative Computing* Catalog.

SOFTWARE REVIEW

APL TWO SYSTEMS: A Comparative Review

An expert looks at two of the big guns in APL.

BOB SMITH

For those in the APL community, having their favorite language on a micro is a dream come true. So when STSC introduced an APL system in January 1983, people got excited. Adding to the excitement was the knowledge that the IBM Madrid Scientific Center had a version for the PC. The competition couldn't help but benefit us APLers. In June the IBM system was announced. Now that two of the heavies in APL have delivered, the time is ripe for a close look at their handiwork. Reviewed here are the IBM Personal Computer APL Version 1.00 (dated May 23, 1983), and STSC's APL*PLUS/PC Application Development System Version 2.6 (dated April 29, 1983).

OPENING THE BOXES

The IBM system comes boxed in the now-standard D-ring binder in a pressboard sleeve. The manual contains about 360 pages divided into 12 chapters, three appendices, and an index. The 12 chapters are split into two parts—an operation guide and an APL reference guide.

The operation guide (150+ pages) introduces the system (backup, startup, the character set, input editor, etc.). It also describes the five application workspaces supplied with the APL system. The PRINT workspace (actually a transfer file) manages the printer; EDIT implements a full screen function editor; FILE manipulates PCDOS files; VM232 communicates with remote computers; MUSIC manages the speaker. The section on VM232 contains 11 pages of uncommented APL code to aid you in transferring data between your PC and a remote IBM VM/CMS.

Chapter 3 in the IBM manual discusses the distributed auxiliary processors (APs), which enable the system to deal with the outside world. The following chapter discusses how to build your own AP by programming in 8088 assembly language.

The second part (170+ pages) concerns the APL language, and describes system commands, function definition mode, and the like.

The three appendices discuss Alt-codes and associated characters, printer control codes, and internal representation of displayed characters (but not the atomic vector).

Stick-ons for the keyboard are provided to help you remember the location of the APL characters.

The STSC system is divided into a programmer's reference manual and two APL texts. One of the APL texts is the well-known Wiley publication, *APL–An Interactive Approach* (known to insiders simply as AIA), by Gilman and Rose. This 378-page book covers the APL language in a breezy style. The other text is an STSC publication, *APL Is Easy*, by Jerry Turner. This 173-page book shepherds novices through their first 10 or 15 hours.

Bob Smith is president of Qualitas, Inc., an IBM PC software vendor. He has 13 years experience in the APL field in everything from programming and marketing to system implementation and language design.

The STSC's programmer reference manual comes in a three-ring binder along with a character generator ROM for your monitor board, the system disk (which includes 14 workspaces of APL code), stick-ons for the key caps, a product registration card, a statement of support policy (they have a hot line, for example), and a 6-by-10-inch plastic card with a picture of the APL keyboard on one side and the Text keyboard on the other. The reference manual weighs in at 420+ pages with six chapters, nine appendices, a glossary, and an index.

The six chapters cover getting started, system commands, language summary, system features, keyboard and editing, and special hints. The appendices are packed with information. One couples a display of the atomic vector with the IBM character ROM (supplied with your monitor board) and the STSC ROM, for easy comparison. Others cover communications transmission code tables, PCDOS and the APL⋆PLUS/PC system, differences between the /PC system and other APL⋆PLUS systems, installing the system software, and more. The 26-page glossary should be helpful to novices. All in all, a hefty package.

Requirements

The IBM system needs a minimum 128K of memory, an 8087 floating-point coprocessor, and a color/graphics board and monitor. It will also use an optional graphics printer, monochrome monitor, and serial port.

The STSC system needs a minimum 128K and a monochrome or color/graphics board and monitor. If you have an 8087 installed, APL⋆PLUS will use it. Otherwise, the system automatically uses software simulation routines for floating-point work. STSC's version will also take advantage of optional printers, monitors, and serial ports.

Starting The Systems

With the STSC system, you must first install the character ROM, the directions for which are buried in Appendix I of the reference manual. There is a pointer to the installation instructions in the ROM's container.

With both systems, you can simply type APL. With the IBM system, first ensure that the default drive points to the one with the APL system diskette; the STSC system isn't picky about its drive.

The STSC system accepts an optional account number on the command line. At startup, it looks on the default drive for a workspace named INIxxxxx, that is, INI suffixed with the account number you entered (or 0 if none specified). If a workspace or that name is found, it is loaded. As usual, that workspace can automatically begin execution by appropriately specifying its latent expression.

The IBM system needs a minimum 128K of memory, an 8087 floating-point coprocessor, and a color/graphics board and monitor. The STSC system needs a minimum 128K and a monochrome or color/graphics board and monitor. APL⋆PLUS will use an 8087.

With the IBM system you have several choices at startup. This is the point at which you must decide which auxiliary processors you'll be using this session, and whether you'll be using the dyadic format primitive, a function that formats numbers to produce a character array (with APL, of course, not necessarily displayed). These decisions must be made at startup, because there's no way to access an AP (or dyadic format) unless it's made part of the system when you invoke APL.

The most curious aspect of IBM's system is its dyadic format, the code for which resides in a separate module called EXAPL.COM. Why split off dyadic format? For that matter, why split off any APL primitive? This is a mystery. Most people's view of APL is as a monolithic whole—it's all there. To chip off a primitive from a block and make it optional sounds odd.

For that matter, why not include all the APs, too? You can try to create a batch file which calls APL with EXAPL and all the APs as its arguments, but that doesn't quite work. There are seven names you'll need to include on the command line (6 APs plus EXAPL), but only six will fit. So you might omit the music AP and be done with it.

The IBM system also allows an optional system command at startup so you can load a workspace, which can then begin execution automatically via its latent expression.

Workspaces and Data

Once you get into either system you have a very powerful language at your command. Both systems support a workspace with a lot of memory. The STSC system uses all contiguous memory you might have, looking in the BIOS data segment at segment 40H to determine your machine size. The IBM system uses up to 544K only. Both companies are to be commended for their use of the system's memory—not many programs on the PC use as much memory as these two do.

The STSC system, whose features are contained within, provides about 20,000 bytes more workspace—minus the music AP—than a fully-loaded IBM system. Actually, with a 576K machine, I got an additional 32K of workspace.

The IBM system supports the usual four internal datatypes: Boolean (1 bit per element); character (1

QUANTUM'S MULTI-TASKING, MULTI-USER REAL-TIME DEVELOPMENT SYSTEM FOR THE IBM PC.

$650

THE QUANTUM SYSTEM FEATURES . . .

THE MULTI-TASKING MULTI-USER REAL-TIME MESSAGE-PASSING OPERATING SYSTEM (QNX)*

FASTER, SMALLER AND BETTER THAN UNIX!**

- ☐ Up to 250 Simultaneous tasks
- ☐ Either Four or Sixteen simultaneous users (specify on order entry)
- ☐ Code sharing and re-entrancy
- ☐ 16-level task priorities
- ☐ Alterable time-slicing
- ☐ 1-megabyte memory management
- ☐ Device independent input/output
- ☐ Disk-loadable drivers
- ☐ Davong & Genii Drivers standard
- ☐ Ramdisks standard
- ☐ Disk-loadable command shell
- ☐ Pipes in the shell
- ☐ Task Creation
  - Create a new task
  - Fork (make exact copy of a task)
  - Transform to new task
- ☐ Inter-Task Communication
  - Messages: Send, Receive & Reply
  - Ports: Attach, Detach & Signal
- ☐ 9.6KB Real-Time
- ☐ Command recall & Re-execute
- ☐ Type-ahead & command line editing
- ☐ Serial & Parallel printer support
- ☐ Printer spooling

THE QUANTUM C COMPILER &
8086/8087 ASSEMBLER
Full Kernighan & Ritchie V7

FILE SYSTEM

- ☐ Hierarchical file structure limited only by disk storage availability
- ☐ Time & date stamping of all files
- ☐ 16-character file and directory names
- ☐ User, File, Directory & Disk Security Record Locking via "Agent" tasks
- ☐ Multiple readers but one writer
- ☐ Random file input/output
- ☐ 32-megabytes per logical drive (8 total)

FULL SCREEN EDITOR

- ☐ Memory resident, Ultra-Fast
- ☐ 256 column window
- ☐ Insert, block copy, move & delete
- ☐ Autosave
- ☐ Word-wrap & autofill
- ☐ Powerful pattern matching and replacement
- ☐ Global commands and extensive macro capabilities
- ☐ Complete keyboard translation
- ☐ Color card supported
- ☐ The Quantum Line Editor is a subset

SYSTEM UTILITIES INCLUDE

- ☐ General listing & sorting
- ☐ Backup files by date, time & pattern
- ☐ Async Communications to 9.6KB
  - "TALK" to mainframes or micros
  - Secure (CRC, block re-send)
- ☐ Read and Write PC DOS files
- ☐ Debugger
- ☐ On-line command syntax help

*QNX is a trademark of Quantum Software Systems, Ltd. **UNIX is a trademark of Bell Laboratories

ADDITIONAL QUANTUM COMPILERS

All compilers use the INTEL 8087 coprocessor for floating point calculations
Separate compilation & cross linking, link modules from different languages for rapid system development
Single large shared library
Simple library update mechanism which allows new modules to be added using the editor alone

DOC – TEXT FORMATTER
A powerful imbedded text processing system
Recursive, macro extendable
Form letter and mailing list capabilities

BASIC (Compatible with PC Basic)	$300.00
FORTRAN (ANSI 77)	$300.00
PASCAL (With full extensions)	$300.00
INTEL 8087 COPROCESSOR	$250.00
MANUALS	$100.00
ON-LINE SYSTEM DOCUMENTATION	$100.00
SOURCE FOR THE SHELL	$100.00
ANNUAL SYSTEM UPGRADE	$200.00
DOC – TEXT FORMATTER	$300.00

QUANTUM
SOFTWARE SYSTEMS, INC.
7219 Shea Court
San Jose, California 95139
Tel: (408) 629-9402

I am a ☐User ☐Dealer ☐Distributor
☐Please send me a brochure

Name ________ Title ________
Company ________
Address ________
City ________ State ________ Zip ________

QUANTUM
SOFTWARE SYSTEMS, LTD.
P.O. Box 5318, Station "F"
Ottawa, Ontario, Canada K2C 3H5
Tel: (613) 235-4297

I am a ☐User ☐Dealer ☐Distributor
☐Please send me a brochure

Name ________ Title ________
Company ________
Address ________
City ________ State ________ Zip ________

CIRCLE NO. 192 ON READER SERVICE CARD

byte per element); integer (2 bytes per element); floating-point (8 bytes per element).

The STSC system supports just three of the above datatypes, omitting Boolean. This is a major shortcoming as it discourages the use of certain sorts of algorithms. Both systems deserve high marks for using the IEEE format for storing binary floating-point data.

Both systems have limits on data size. STSC limits you to 64K bytes per object. The IBM limits you to 32K bytes, but there's a catch, which needs explanation.

IBM uses a two-part workspace. In the main workspace, computation takes place and all data objects are created or modified. Objects can remain in the main workspace as long as the space they occupy isn't needed for some other calculation. If the space is needed, objects are moved to the elastic workspace (this is transparent to the user, except by the time it takes). This means that for every primitive calculation, the arguments must be brought in, and the result created, in 60K (64 K minus overhead).

This raises a couple of problems. For one thing, it's a lot of data movement! For example, if a 32,000-byte array isn't in the main workspace it costs over 900 milliseconds just to determine its shape. If it were already in the main workspace, the shape could be obtained with no measurable cost. That makes it nearly impossible to tune algorithms, because of both the 900 ms spike in timings and the difficulty in determining where your data are.

Another problem with IBM's approach to workspace management is that though the system ostensibly allows up to 32 K per data object, the size of the main workspace may impose a lower limit. For instance, although you might be able to get the shape of your 32,000-byte array, you won't be able to add it to another similarly shaped array, because you can't fit two 32,000-byte arguments and a 32,000-byte result into 60K. Thus, given the size of a data object and the sorts of operations you want to perform, you may have to limit yourself to less than the allotted 32 K.

Character Set Display

As mentioned, IBM uses the color/-graphics board/monitor to generate the special APL characters. STSC supplies its own ROM which works in either the monochrome or color/-graphics board.

The STSC ROM in the monochrome board provides crisp APL characters, which can't be matched by either company on the graphics board. "The STSC character generator is a real plus if one is doing any serious APL programming," says

Although the IBM system ostensibly allows up to 32K per data object, the size of the main workspace may impose a lower limit.

Joey K. Tuttle, branch manager of research at I.P. Sharp Associates, a leading supplier of APL applications and system software and APL time sharing services.

The ability to display the APL characters is not without cost. About 55 of the characters in the original ROM have been axed to enable the STSC to display APL symbols.

Will you miss any of the 55 excised characters? This is the question you need to ask yourself, as you're not likely to switch ROMs with the same frequency as you switch diskettes. Characters changed from the old ROM include novelty characters (e.g., the playing card suits, except the diamond), Greek characters (gamma, pi, upper and lower case sigma, etc.), mathematical symbols (radical sign, two characters which form the upper and lower parts of an integral sign, etc.), and a number of others. Some applications on the market are beginning to use a few of the excised symbols (like the filled-in arrow heads and the one-half and one-quarter symbols), but in general the characters you need are still there. Finally, the question boils down to how much you're going to use the product. The reduced eyestrain of seeing APL characters on the monochrome screen is a plus for any serious user.

APL Characters and the Keyboard

Because the APL character set contains many more characters than are available on single keys or in combination with the usual shift key, the systems need to devise an additional way to enter these characters. The extra characters (like logarithm, domino, etc.) are usually entered using the Alt key, but not consistently. The most widely used APL keyboard that has the composite APL symbols as single keys is the IBM 3270 series. The STSC system follows that layout almost to the letter. The IBM follows it mostly, but misses on about six characters, and on the change to the ISO standard keyboard layout, which for the APL-ASCII Overlay Convention moved the APL right arrow from shift-left arrow to the unshifted key to its right. The STSC system caught the change.

Users of the IBM key layout have not been happy with it. Says Joey Tuttle, "IBM has reproduced the worst features of 2741s and 3270s . . . and ignores completely the fact that the PC keyboard is an ISO standard layout. In general, the STSC treatment of the keyboard is all right, athough a few more refinements could be made."

On both systems, lowercase characters are entered via the Alt key with the corresponding letter. These lowercase letters may be used in identifier names.

Input Editing

Both systems provide access to inputs and outputs still on the screen. Both allow you to move the cursor to any line on the screen, modify it or not, and press ENTER to execute it. From there, they differ.

The STSC system makes editing of the selected line very convenient. Its list of editing features is extensive. The left and right cursor keys perform as expected, as well as the TAB and shift-TAB keys. Moreover, HOME and END move the cursor to the beginning or end of the line. DELETE removes the character at the cursor, and BACK (above the ENTER key) deletes the character to its left. Also, there are keys for clearing the entire screen, clearing the screen from the cursor to the end, clearing the current line from the cursor to either end, or deleting the current line from the screen and scrolling up the lines below.

On the STSC system, there is no replace mode. You are always in insert mode. It may take you a while to get accustomed to this.

On the STSC system, the INS key is used as an alternate means of entering composite APL characters. For example, if you've forgotten where the quote-quad symbol is on the keyboard (or forgotten how to enter it), you type quad, INS, quote. After you have pressed the INS key, the blinking cursor moves to the left one character position to the quad and, continuing to blink, fills the character matrix to indicate the change of mode. When you press the quote key, the desired composite character is produced. The composite APL symbols are also available as single keys in conjunction with the Alt-key.

On the STSC system, input lines longer than screen width are handled via a continuation character (the underbar) automatically generated by the system. A single input line of up to 511 characters can be entered and edited this way.

One problem with the STSC approach is that if you re-execute a previous line on the screen, its result is displayed directly below it and whatever was there before is not automatically cleared. Instead, the new result overwrites the old result. This can lead to confusion if the new result is shorter than the old one. The trailing characters of the old result appear after those of the new. To be safe, you must go to the end of the line and clear to the end of the screen. I know of one senior APL systems programmer who, because of this problem spent many hours trying to find out why ⎕*TS* occasionally printed four digits in the millisecond position.

STSC's system provides no access to lines scrolled off the top of the screen.

The IBM system's approach to input editing preserves the sequence of executed lines. Once you've selected a line to modify you may delete single characters or all characters to the right of the cursor.

> *Like the IBM system, STSC has weak and strong interrupts. It's also checked with many primitives, which help tame runaway programs.*

The system is normally in replace mode—characters entered on top of existing characters replace them. The INS key toggles between replace and insert mode during editing. After the line is entered, the system reverts to replace mode. When you press ENTER on the line, it is copied to the line below the last line displayed on the screen and executed, thus preserving sequence.

A few hints: Lines longer than the screen width cannot be entered or edited without help from an auxiliary processor and the EDIT workspace distributed with the IBM system. No access is provided to lines scrolled off the top of the screen. The TAB key does nothing useful unless you redefine it with a program like PROKEY.

Keyboard Usage

With the IBM system, the ESC key is used to interrupt execution. Pressing it once generates a weak interrupt (halt at the end of a statement); pressing it twice generates a strong interrupt (halt as soon as the statement is detected). I noticed while doing the benchmarks of the IBM system, that the strong interrupt does not happen to be detected within a primitive, and some of the primitives can take a very long time. Thus, once you start it, you had better be prepared to finish it. Oddly enough, a weak interrupt also triggers an event if execution is under the control of the system function ⎕*EA*. A weak interrupt also cancels all output until the interrupt is acted upon. If you have an IBM Graphics Printer and you load the printer auxiliary processor AP80 at the start of your session, Shift-PrtSc will dump the contents of the screen to the printer. Ctrl-PrtSc toggles on/off sending input or output to the printer as well as sending it to the screen. If you make the mistake of hitting Ctrl-Break, you'll find yourself back in DOS.

One other annoying drawback of the IBM system is the lack of type-ahead. It would be very convenient to be able to enter the next line or two before the current one has finished processing. But with IBM you can't. This drawback is puzzling because the system doesn't steal the keyboard interrupts. Thus there is the usual DOS-provided 15-character type-ahead buffer, but it is ignored. On the other hand, because the keyboard interrupts are DOS's, keyboard enhances like PROKEY can be used. For instance it's possible to define usefully the TAB keys. No means is otherwise provided to define the function keys.

With the STSC system, Ctrl-Break is used to interrupt execu-

tion. Like the IBM system, STSC's system has weak and strong interrupts. It's also checked with many primitives, which help tame any runaway programs. Unlike the IBM system, the STSC system doesn't trigger an exception with its interrupt. Shift-PrtSc and Ctrl-PrtSc, which send output to the printer, are always available because the STSC system is integrated with its printer interface. There are also key combinations that pause and resume output as it is being displayed, as well as keys to slow it down.

The STSC system provides its own keyboard handling routines, with, among other things, a 160-character type-ahead buffer. On the one hand, this seems to be a nice feature, one that DOS should have. On the other hand, this means that programs like PROKEY cannot be used. There is, though, a distributed workspace where function keys in their unshifted, shifted, and control forms can be defined.

System Features

Both systems support a full set of APL primitives and system functions.

The IBM system is mostly VSAPL with some features, such as a peek and poke facility, added specifically for the PC, and some features, such as support for tabs, removed. It also contains features from APL2, IBM's experimental mainframe offering, such as picture format and the transfer form. Other features such as printer support, full screen function editing, access to PCDOS files and the operating system are available through auxiliary processors.

The STSC system provides system features through system functions—plenty of them. Thirty-one additional system functions alone support its two file systems, one a component-oriented APL file system, the other a native file system that provides access to any kind of PCDOS file.

System Commands

With a few exceptions, both systems provide the usual collection of workspace inquiry and management commands. The IBM system has two kinds of disk storage formats for APL objects: the usual workspace (.APL), and another form called a transfer file (.AID). The workspace contains APL objects with the execution stack and the workspace environment. The transfer file contains named data and function objects only. It is managed via)IN and)OUT, which transfer objects between the active workspace and the transfer file. The transfer file is vital because there is no)COPY command in the IBM system, and so there is no way to

copy objects from a saved workspace to the active workspace. To copy objects from your previous work, you save them in transfer file format. In a sense, then, saved workspaces represent work-in-progress and saved transfer files represent completed work.

Curiously,)IN cannot bring in objects if the active workspace has any suspended functions. So if you get partway through the executions of a code, and find you need some other function or variable, you have to clear the suspensions, bring in the other function or variable, and start over.

While the STSC system does not support transfer files, it does allow you to)COPY objects. Suspended functions do not bother it.

More shortcomings of the IBM system: Rather than displaying alphabetically, as they do with the STSC system,)FNS and)VARS display in the same order they were entered into the symbol table. And where the STSC system's)XLOA allows you to load a workspace without executing its latent expression, the IBM system has no counterpart.

Numeric Accuracy

When it comes to numeric accuracy, or the exactness of results, both

> *With a few exceptions, both systems provide the usual collection of workspace inquiry and management commands.*

systems have some shortcomings. As mentioned, both systems use the 8087 for all floating-point calculations and for calculations involving integers outside the range ¯32768 to 32767 .

Few problems could be found with STSC's 8087 algorithms. Things like `1E105-10*105` or `1E¯17-10*¯17` are non-zero (differing in the last bit—the 1E forms are correct) which implies some inaccuracy in their exponentiation routines. Their software simulation routines also occasionally are inaccurate. For example, 25 ×÷25 isn't exactly 1 using the simulation; the same expression works fine when using the 8087.

The IBM system suffers from similar problems at lower thresholds. For example, `1E16-10*16` and `1E¯1-10*¯1` (or `1E¯1-÷10`) are both non zero.

Beyond this, though, the IBM system has serious numeric accuracy problems. Some are perhaps excusable because they involve arguments outside one's normal computational domain. Others are less excusable. Hardest to understand is the fact that `10* 5 5` returns two

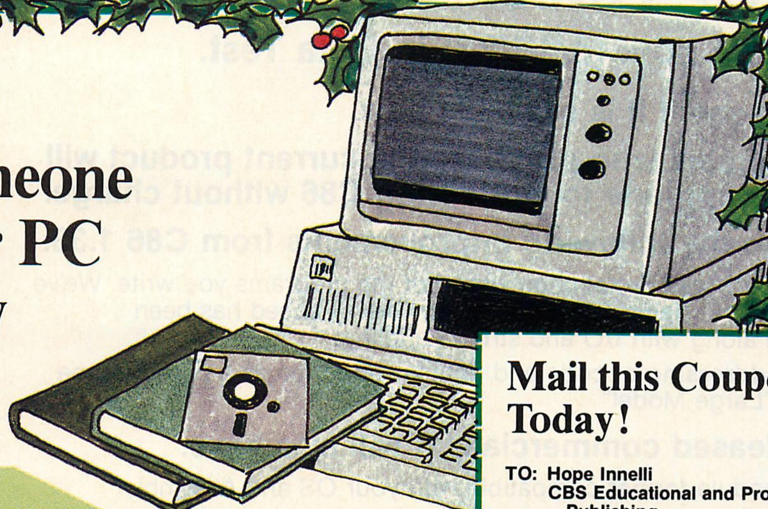
different numbers! That is, `-/10* 5 5` is non-zero. To be sure, the two numbers are close (the second result is one bit low in the last place), but that's no excuse. A general-purpose exponentiation algorithm using the 8087 isn't easy to get right; whatever algorithm is employed, results should be repeatable.

Also, as Cory Skutt, an independent consultant in San Antonio, TX, pointed out, the IBM system gives the result of `2| ¯1+2*51` as `¯1`. That's not even in range. It's also possible to construct a two-element vector (say `Q`) such that `Q-Q[2]` returns two non-zero values. This quirk occurs because the indexing primitive attempts to do type-demotion from 8-byte floating point format to 2-byte integer format (a questionable idea), but does so inaccurately. Thus if `Q[2]` is almost an integer (but not exactly so), it will be rounded to one anyway.

The list of such errors generated by the IBM system goes on and

The IBM system has serious numeric accuracy problems. Frequently, there are errors related to rounding in the last position.

on. Frequently, for instance, there are errors related to rounding in the last position. The 8087 provides four separate rounding modes: round to nearest or even (the default), round up (towards positive infinity), round down (towards negative infinity), and chop (towards zero). Unless one is doing certain special purpose calculations (like interval arithmetic), the best mode is generally the default. STSC uses this, but IBM uses chop, which likely is a partial cause of rounding-related errors.



Numeric Input/Output Conversion

When you enter two distinct decimal numbers that can be represented distinctly in the machine's floating-point format, you'd like them to be so represented. If two numbers in the machine are computationally distinct (e.g. their difference is non-zero), then you'd like to be able to display them distinctly, too. These issues are in the domain of input and output conversion.

According to the latest Draft ISO APL Standard, an APL system should provide two forms of output conversion: formatted and unformatted. The former is used by dyadic format; the latter is used by the system for default output and is dependent on print precision. Let's discuss the latter case first.

The term *full print precision* refers to the minimum number of significant decimal digits needed to distinguish the decimal representation of two machine-representable numbers. For the IEEE double-precision floating-point formula used by these two systems, the full print precision is 17.

As it happens, although both systems use IEEE format, neither allows full print precision. STSC limits ⎕*PP* to 16 digits, IBM to 15. Relatively speaking, that means you'll have less trouble with I/O conversion on STSC's system.

While you can find on both systems a pair of numbers that are computationally distinct, the systems won't distinguish their display when using default output (which uses print precision). For example, function line display uses maximum print precision. On both systems it's possible for an expression in a function line to display as 1000000-1000000 but compute a non-zero difference.

Another test of input/output conversion is whether

0≠*X*-⍎⍕*X*

is true for any X, with ⎕*PP* at its maximum allowable value. By definition, if ⎕*PP* is allowed to reach

XCOM

A NEW MODEM FOR THE IBM PC.

WE COULD HAVE BEEN FIRST; BUT WE'LL SETTLE FOR BEST!

We could have introduced our IBM PC Modem ahead of the competition. But just being first wasn't enough. We wanted to be the best. So after untold hours of nitpicking, analyzing, and redesigning, we've come up with the best fully-equipped modem on the market today. Meet XCOM—the modem that gives you all the features you'll ever need. Don't just take our word for it; compare for yourself.

Features	XCOM	Smartmodem 1200B	Rixon	Bizcomp	Wolfdata
Internal Mount	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
1200/300 bps	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Auto-Dial/Auto Answer	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Auto Speed Select	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ring Back Detect	✓		✓	✓	
Busy Detect	✓		✓	✓	
Dial Tone Detect	✓			✓	
Auto Select Touch Tone/Rotary	✓				
Two Year Warranty	✓	✓		✓	✓
Price	$449	$599	$499	$499	$495
Software Package	CROSSTALK*	Smartcom II	PC COM I	PC:Intelli-Modem	QUIKCOM

*XCOM includes the industry standard communication product CROSSTALK XVI. CROSSTALK includes the following functions; smart terminal emulation, total modem control, data capture, data transmission, and error-checked file transfers.

Feature for feature XCOM is way ahead of the rest. And in keeping with our philosophy, we're saving the best news for last. The XCOM modem comes complete with CROSSTALK XVI software for $449. Sometimes a person has to settle for BEST.

For more information, write or call:

XCOM
3213 Ramos Circle
Sacramento, CA 95827
(916) 366-7071

IBM PC, Touch-Tone, CROSSTALK, Smartmodem 1200B; Smartcom II, PC COM I, PC:IntelliModem, QUICKCOM are trademarks, respectively, of IBM Corp., American Telephone and Telegraph, Microstuf, Inc., Hayes Microcomputer Products, Inc., Rixon, Inc., Business Computer Corporation, Wolfdata, Inc. Prices and specifications subject to change without notice.

CIRCLE NO. 256 ON READER SERVICE CARD

full print precision, this can never occur. A function that tests the above inequality using random numbers generated by (?32767) ÷ 32767 stops quickly on both systems with a value which satisfies the inequality.

For the second form of output conversion, formatted output produced by dyadic format, the programmer specifies exactly how many significant digits are desired. The issue is then one of proper rounding for display. Neither system works perfectly here. On the IBM system, for instance, 15⍕2 is 1.999999999999999 (15 of them). The STSC system doesn't share this problem, but fails to produce all the significant digits necessary to represent certain numbers.

Input conversion occurs when you enter numbers either from the keyboard or through execute. A system should accept at least full-print-precision-significant digits in this case. In fact, there's no reason it shouldn't accept as many digits as are entered. Again, neither system fully satisfies these needs.

The ISO Draft Standard rule is that every internally-representable number should have a distinct output form and should be accessible through some sequence of digits entered from the keyboard.

Numeric input and output conversion is not an academic matter: Real programs encounter it. Any time you transfer numeric data in any form (e.g. numeric constants in functions, or numeric variables) to the PC, you may run up against the above-mentioned limitations. In my mind there's no reason to lose precision unnecessarily.

Printer Output

Both systems provide access to the printer—STSC via internal code, IBM via an auxiliary processor.

The STSC system supports parallel and serial printers, five different translation codes including EPSON dot graphics, and the

transmission protocols XON/XOFF and/or RTS/CTS. It allows you to specify which of two serial or three parallel ports to use, as well as reading from the screen directly to the printer. Sample output is contained in figure 1.

The IBM system supports the IBM Graphics Printer only, not, for example, an EPSON FX-80. It's possible to print data on an FX-80, but not all APL characters will be properly graphed (the upstile for instance). (In figure 2, character positions 141 through 223 [except 172], 238, 239, and 254 are not displayed correctly because they were done on an FX-80.

In the IBM system, most special APL symbols are printed in graphics mode at 10 pitch only. Strangely, if you attempt to print text in other than 10 pitch (say in compressed mode), a line that contains a mixture of graphed APL symbols and others (for example, letters and numbers) is printed in two pitches. The graphed APL symbols are 10 pitch; the other symbols are on the same output line but are superimposed and printed at the pitch at which the printer is set. The mixture is hard to read.

> *IBM supports the IBM Graphics Printer only.*

The STSC system has no such problems.

File Systems

Both systems provide access to PCDOS files. The IBM system does this through AP210 in conjunction with a distributed transfer file. This arrangement seemed to work passably well, but it isn't designed to manage APL data. It does not, for instance, support replacement of variable length records. Eric Baelen, director of business systems development for RCA, expands, "I cannot deal with IBM's file system, be-

Word processing software may save you time, but it can't write your letters.

Gentlemen:

Our company has always given generously to the larger funds, but the turtles . . .

Gentlemen:

Although this company feels it is important to save the turtles . . .

Gentlemen:

Due to the recession our company has had to cut back on contributions. Although we would like to contribute . . .

Gentlemen:

We regret that we will be unable to contribute to your fund to save the turtles. The company policy dictates that we limit our contributions to large multi-purpose campaigns. Each year we cooperate with the employees of our company on a national basis in providing support for the United Way and the National Museum Foundation.

It is in this fashion that we are best able to serve a number of worthy causes. We trust you will understand our position. We support your goals and stated purpose and wish you every success in your campaign.

Sincerely,

Or can it?

You really can save time, write better letters and have a complete reference to both commonly and rarely used letters and forms. 1000 professionally written letters and forms are on diskette and can be read, modified and printed using most word processing software. It is easy to find the letter or form that is best for almost any situation in the categorized and indexed manual. The topics covered include agreements, announcements, charities, condolences, collections, congratulations, employees, employers, general business, general forms, legal forms, ordering, personal, promissory notes, sales, schools, shipping, stockholders and writer's reference . . . just to name a few.

Letterform 1000 requires:

A computer that can read double-sided IBM Personal Computer diskettes

Word processing software that can read standard ASC II files.

Available at most computer software dealers $95
Call or write for more information:

PBL Corporation
PO Box 559
Wayzata MN 55391
612 473-8998

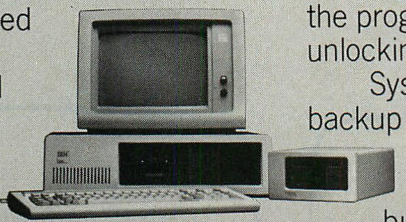
Letterform 1000™

If you've invested in the IBM PC-XT or an IBM expansion chassis, chances are you're doing important things. Office work. Lots of writing. Managing a portfolio.

Nice going.

Now: May we suggest that you think ahead to the unthinkable: total wipe-out. Your hard disk may never crash and destroy all your files. But it *can*.

That's why we invented The Sysgen Image.



It lets you back up all your data—your entire hard disk—in about five minutes a day. On a handy little tape cassette. It's insurance against the unlikely event that your hard disk will lose what you've stored on it.

Just stop and ponder a moment about what would happen to your operation if you somehow lost all the data, letters, invoices, and phone numbers on your XT's hard disk.

At $995, we think you'll agree that the Sysgen Image is very inexpensive insurance.

Stop by any smart IBM PC dealer for a demo. Bring this ad; if he hasn't got a Sysgen Image in stock yet, have him call us.

Included with your Sysgen Image is a free data cassette loaded with industry-accepted applications software. It has been protected by Softlink's™ SoftLok™ encryption. If you decide you want to buy any of the programs you preview, you can get the unlocking code from your dealer.

Sysgen: the company that provides backup for your IBM PC, with or without hard disk. (Our Sysgen II 10- or 20-Mbyte hard disk systems, with built-in streaming tape backup, start at $2995.) 47853 Warm Springs Blvd., Fremont, CA 94539. Telex: 4990843. Phone 800-538-8157, Ext. 970. In California, call 800-672-3470, Ext. 970.

SYSGEN
·INCORPORATED·

THE BEST INSURANCE FOR YOUR $4995 IBM PC-XT: A $995 SYSGEN IMAGE.™

CIRCLE NO. 232 ON READER SERVICE CARD

cause it does not allow replacement of variable-sized data."

Along with a native file system, which manipulates PCDOS files, the STSC system has a component-oriented APL file system which can be used for storing and retrieving APL data. In that file system, you can easily replace variable length components: Components are referred to by number and may be read or written to in any order. This file system is nearly identical to the one jointly designed and implemented by STSC and I.P. Sharp Associates in 1969-1970. It has become nearly an industry standard in the APL community.

Figure 1: STSC Printer Output

0	NUL	26	→	52	4	78	N	104	h	130	é	156	£	182	╢	208	╨	234	χ
1	⍎	27	ESC	53	5	79	O	105	i	131	â	157	¥	183	╖	209	╤	235	≁
2	≠	28	⊣	54	6	80	P	106	j	132	ä	158	⍮	184	╕	210	╥	236	∇
3	⍷	29	⊢	55	7	81	Q	107	k	133	à	159	⍨	185	╣	211	╙	237	⍞
4	⋄	30	⍋	56	8	82	R	108	l	134	≠	160	á	186	║	212	╘	238	∊
5	¨	31	⍒	57	9	83	S	109	m	135	ç	161	í	187	╗	213	╒	239	∩
6	←	32		58	:	84	T	110	n	136	ê	162	ó	188	╝	214	╓	240	≡
7	BEL	33	!	59	;	85	U	111	o	137	ë	163	ú	189	╜	215	╫	241	⍙
8	BS	34	"	60	<	86	V	112	p	138	è	164	ñ	190	╛	216	╪	242	≥
9	HT	35	#	61	=	87	W	113	q	139	ï	165	Ñ	191	┐	217	┘	243	≤
10	LF	36	$	62	>	88	X	114	r	140	î	166	ª	192	└	218	┌	244	⍒
11	⊂	37	%	63	?	89	Y	115	s	141	Γ	167	⍀	193	┴	219	█	245	⍋
12	FF	38	&	64	@	90	Z	116	t	142	Ä	168	¿	194	┬	220	▄	246	÷
13	NL	39	'	65	A	91	[	117	u	143	L	169	⌷	195	├	221	▌	247	¨
14	⊃	40	(	66	B	92	\	118	v	144	É	170	ÿ	196	─	222	▐	248	°
15	●	41	)	67	C	93	]	119	w	145	∆	171	⍢	197	┼	223	▀	249	○
16	⌹	42	*	68	D	94	^	120	x	146	×	172	⍣	198	╞	224	α	250	∨
17	⍂	43	+	69	E	95	_	121	y	147	ô	173	¡	199	╟	225	ß	251	⍴
18	⍸	44	,	70	F	96	`	122	z	148	ö	174	«	200	╚	226	⍳	252	∪
19	⍫	45	-	71	G	97	a	123	{	149	⎕	175	»	201	╔	227	⍤	253	¯
20	ù	46	.	72	H	98	b	124	¦	150	û	176	░	202	╩	228	⍥	254	∣
21	⌶	47	/	73	I	99	c	125	}	151	⍌	177	▒	203	╦	229	⍫	255	
22	⍋	48	0	74	J	100	d	126	~	152	⌸	178	▓	204	╠	230	⊥		
23	⍵	49	1	75	K	101	e	127	DEL	153	Ö	179	│	205	═	231	⊤		
24	↑	50	2	76	L	102	f	128	Ç	154	Ü	180	┤	206	╬	232	⌽		
25	↓	51	3	77	M	103	g	129	ü	155	¢	181	╡	207	╧	233	⊖		

Remote Communications

Both systems provide a means of communicating with remote computers. With the STSC system, you turn on your modem, set the BPS rate with the DOS MODE command, enter APL, and press Alt-F8. At that point you can enter the usual modem commands. It's also possible to communicate with the modem under program control via a system function. STSC includes a workspace to aid you with doing this.

With the IBM system, you use

Why buy an IBM® XT when you can buy an IBM PC or compatible, our Pegasus XT Conversion Kit,™ and save yourself almost $1,600?

For $1,295 you can buy our internal 10 megabyte hard disk system installed in an IBM PC or compatible of your choice.

Think about it. When you consider buying an IBM XT or XT look-alike, you're after large storage, the convenience of IBM compatible software, and the peace of mind associated with a quality product. But one thing you're not looking for is paying more than you have to.

The Savings

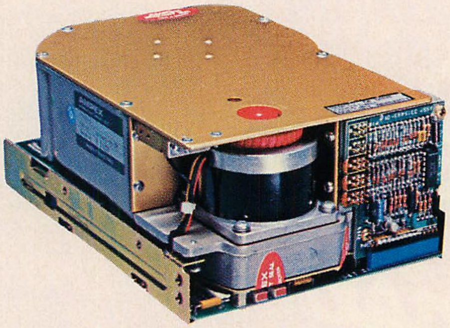
If you buy an IBM XT, it's going to cost you $4,995 for the XT system unit. You'll get 10 megabytes of hard disk storage, one 320 Kbytes floppy disk drive, 8 slots, a $120 asynchronous communication adaptor, 128K of RAM and the three IBM intials.

We recommend instead, that you buy the IBM *PC* for $2,104. You'll get one 320 Kbyte floppy disk drive, 5 slots, 64K of RAM, the same three IBM initials, a space for your dealer to put the Pegasus XT Conversion Kit, and an extra $2,891 to buy it with. But since the Pegasus XT Conversion Kit costs only $1,295 installed, you'll have an extra $1,596 — almost $1,600 — left over. With many compatibles you'll have even more.

But if you already own an IBM PC and were thinking you'd just get the XT expansion chassis, we have a surprise for you. If you add the $1,295 cost of the Pegasus XT Conversion Kit to the $2,104 price of an IBM PC, you can have a second computer — instead of a dumb box — for less than the price of the XT expansion chassis.

Hard Disk Quality

Now, before you start thinking that IBM's hard disk is better than ours, remember that IBM doesn't make their own hard disk for the IBM XT. They go into the marketplace, just like we do, and strike the best price they can. If you were to buy an IBM XT, your hard disk might come from one

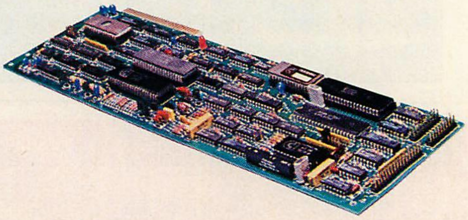


of four manufacturers. It's possible, in fact, that the IBM XT might have the same hard disk that you'd get in our Pegasus XT Conversion Kit.

The Role of the Controller

But the hard disk is not the whole story. It takes a controller card to get your files from the hard disk to your computer so you can use them.

The IBM XT has a good controller card. Unfortunately, it is not designed to take advantage of some of the advances in hard disk technology. Our controller card will work with our 10 megabyte hard disk all the way up to our 140 megabyte hard disk — and everything in between. With the IBM XT controller, you're limited to four manufacturers. The Pegasus controller board, on the other hand, configures to whatever hard disk you may want to install in the future. There is virtually no limit on hard disk size or number of manufacturers you can use.



Larger Disks

Pegasus offers an entire line of hard disks. You can expand your IBM PC far beyond the storage of the IBM XT. You can add our 23 megabyte hard disk for only $1,995, or our 40 megabyte for only $800 more. And if you really need storage, we offer a 65 and 140 megabyte hard disk that slides right into the same space that IBM and the compatible manufacturers put their 10 megabytes.

So, before you decide to spend more money than you have to, consider the Pegasus XT Conversion Kit. You'll get dealer support, the same 90 day warranty IBM gives, and have enough money left over to buy one of our larger hard disks. And isn't larger storage why you were looking at the hard disk in the first place? Contact your computer dealer today.

PEGASUS

A DIVISION OF
GREAT LAKES COMPUTER PERIPHERALS, INC.

2200 West Higgins Road, Suite 245
Hoffman Estates, Illinois 60195
In Illinois (312) 884-7272
800-323-6836
Dealer Inquiries Invited

CIRCLE NO. 157 ON READER SERVICE CARD

an auxiliary processor (AP232) in conjunction with a transfer file included on the system disk. Unfortunately, the design seems oriented towards acoustic couplers or direct connections to the remote computer, and I couldn't get it to work with a Hayes Smartmodem.

Benchmarks

This topic is clouded by the numeric inaccuracies in the IBM implementation. My criticisms are based on the assumption that IBM can correct its accuracy problems without penalizing execution speed overmuch.

One large problem with benchmarking the IBM system is the 900 millisecond penalty that it exacts to empty the main workspace when it gets full. In general, it's very difficult to achieve repeatable timings because of this penalty. It's almost enough to make one give up belief in deterministic events. The timings on the STSC were rock-solid.

Figure 2: IBM Printer Output

0		26	<	52	⍺	78	Q	104	p	130	LF	156	ü	182	6	208	P	234	‼
1	←	27	≤	53	⍵	79	R	105	q	131	BS	157	°	183	7	209	Q	235	♂
2	→	28	⍲	54	à	80	S	106	r	132		158	é	184	8	210	R	236	♀
3	↑	29	⍱	55	'	81	T	107	s	133		159	£	185	9	211	S	237	♫
4	↓	30	^	56	;	82	U	108	t	134	⎕	160		186	:	212	T	238	☼
5	∊	31	∨	57	]	83	V	109	u	135	⍞	161	´	187	;	213	U	239	è
6	⍳	32	⍋	58	[	84	W	110	v	136	'	162	″	188	<	214	V	240	`
7	⍴	33	⍒	59	)	85	X	111	w	137	R	163	#	189	=	215	W	241	@
8	,	34	⍝	60	(	86	Y	112	x	138	▼	164	$	190	>	216	X	242	"
9	?	35	⍉	61	:	87	Z	113	y	139	⍫	165	%	191	?	217	Y	243	#
10	~	36	⊖	62	A	88	Δ	114	z	140	¨	166	&	192	@	218	Z	244	$
11	○	37	⌹	63	B	89	a	115	⍙	141	Ä	167	'	193	A	219	[	245	%
12	+	38	⍕	64	C	90	b	116	_	142	à	168	(	194	B	220	\	246	&
13	−	39	⍎	65	D	91	c	117	¯	143	ç	169	ù	195	C	221	]	247	¶
14	÷	40	⌶	66	E	92	d	118	0	144	ò	170	*	196	D	222	^	248	§
15	⍟	41	⊥	67	F	93	e	119	1	145	¿	171	+	197	E	223	_	249	↨
16	*	42	⊤	68	G	94	f	120	2	146	R	172	∪	198	F	224	▬	250	↕
17	×	43	⌿	69	H	95	g	121	3	147	æ	173	-	199	G	225	☺	251	{
18	!	44	⍀	70	I	96	h	122	4	148	Ø	174	ì	200	H	226	☻	252	↔
19	|	45	/	71	J	97	i	123	5	149	ø	175	Ñ	201	I	227	♥	253	}
20	)	46	\	72	K	98	j	124	6	150	¨	176	0	202	J	228	♦	254	
21	⌊	47	∩	73	L	99	k	125	7	151	Ä	177	1	203	K	229	♣	255	
22	=	48	⍷	74	M	100	l	126	8	152	Å	178	2	204	L	230	♠		
23	≠	49	⊂	75	N	101	m	127	9	153	Ü	179	3	205	M	231	BEL		
24	>	50	⊃	76	O	102	n	128	.	154	ä	180	4	206	N	232	►		
25	≥	51	∘	77	P	103	o	129	NL	155	ö	181	5	207	O	233	◄		

Both systems provide accounting information for elapsed CPU or session time (they're the same if no I/O occurs). STSC's time is returned in seconds (possibly fractional); IBM's in an integral number of milliseconds. All times reported below are in milliseconds.

In order to properly interpret benchmark results, you must first know the timer resolution. I executed `(⎕AI-⎕AI)[2]` in a loop to look for the smallest non-zero value. This number should be the timer resolution—the smallest resolvable time span. On STSC, it's about 55 ms, which corresponds to

the PC's timer interrupt frequency of 18.2 per second. On IBM, it's between 5 and 6 ms! Clearly, IBM marches to the beat of a different drummer. Perhaps they've reprogrammed the 8253 timer chip directly. I'm not sure. In any case, these numbers tell us not to trust times that are a small multiple of these values. In all the timings reported on below, I've tried to ensure that actual times were sufficiently large to not be affected by noise caused by the timer resolution.

Knowing the timer resolution, I then attempted to separate the algorithm time from the storage management time, which was necessary because of the storage management scheme in the IBM system. This was not necessary with the STSC system. The following concerns algorithm times only, as best as I could do them. In all IBM timings I attempted to eliminate the 900 ms portion, although I may not have succeeded in all cases.

In general, the IBM floating-point algorithms are *significantly* faster than those of STSC—typically by a factor of 9 or 10 to 1. Exponentiation with the IBM is even faster, usually by a factor of nearly 40 to 1. One way IBM may have picked up speed over STSC is in the use of the 8087's exception handling for overflow and divide-by-zero. This way, the extra step of checking for those conditions (which occur rarely anyway) is taken automatically. The STSC system appears not to use an exception handler, however it's hard to believe that that lack accounts for the full difference.

One large problem with benchmarking the IBM system: the 900 millisecond penalty it exacts to empty a full workspace.

Reductions and scans on Boolean data are common operations in APL code, and over the years APL system implementors have created some impressively fast algorithms to deal with these cases. Unfortunately, neither system seems to use any of the standard. When dealing with reductions and scans, for instance, APLers typically implement stopping rules, without incurring any additional overhead, by using an algorithm discovered by E.E. McDonnell of I.P. Sharp Associates 10 years ago when he was at IBM [ref 1]. For example, ∧/ can stop when it encounters a zero in its argument, as can ∧\.

Now both systems properly recognize the associative functions with the scan operator and use the linear algorithm. But then, when they should go on to use a non-associative function <\ that could be implemented using McDonnell's linear algorithm, both systems use the quadratic algorithm instead. The IBM is the only one that could

This One Decision Saved our Business and Grossed over $1,000,000. in Sales

In 1979, our recreational manufacturing business was booming. And we had developed a new product that looked like a real winner. The new product was extremely important, in that it appeared to be the answer to a seasonality problem associated with our other product lines.

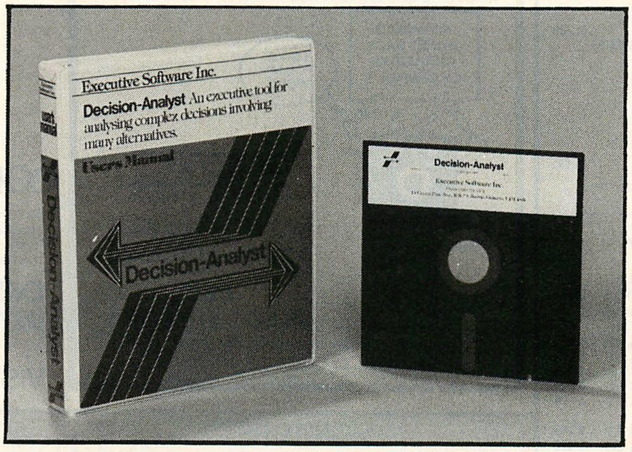
By early summer, our order book was bulging. It really looked as if our off-season sales and production problems were over. Then just as quickly the roof fell in. Gas shortages devastated the recreational vehicle market overnight. And our order book for over two million dollars worth of the new product disintegrated.

Faced with a fall and winter of virtually no sales, many thousands of dollars of unneeded parts and excess production staff, I had no choice but to shut down the production lines. And if a solution to our problem couldn t be found, the business itself was in jeopardy.

A life saving decision

I spent many sleepless nights trying to come up with a solution to this nightmarish situation. Then I remembered a course I had taken in decision analysis. I spent the rest of that night reviewing course material and other books I had bought on the subject. The next day, I called an emergency meeting.

Using the decision making techniques I had learned, we spent the rest of the week searching for and analysing potential solutions. The net result was that not only was the company pulled back from the brink of destruction, but we added over $1,000,000.00 in gross sales during that off-season.



A way of life

From that point on, almost every critical decision (and there were many) regarding new products, marketing channels, pricing, advertising, production equipment, engineering projects, received this same type of analysis.

Although the process was very time consuming and clumsy, because it had to be done by hand, our decisions were much improved. And there were some real benefits that we had not anticipated.

1. Our understanding of each problem was greatly increased.
2. We uncovered opportunities that we would not have thought of in any other way.
3. Our decisions were documented, preventing us from slipping off the selected path or 'rehashing' the same things over and over.
4. Consensus became easier because we were forced to focus and resolve each part of the problem, one piece at a time.

The birth of Decision~Analyst™

Decision~Analyst was created because the process of evaluating complex decisions with multiple alternatives and many criteria is very tedious and time-consuming if you do it on paper. And doing it in your head is virtually impossible.

Any complex decision usually requires multiple revisions to criteria, alternatives, weights and values assigned to them. If done manually, the ordeal of rewriting, recalculating and redocumenting tends to discourage revisions, thus producing poor results.

Decision~Analyst overcomes these problems by asking for the minimum input possible from you, in the correct sequence. It leads you step by step through the decision making process, then does all the necessary calculations and produces polished reports without any further effort. And all of your input is stored on your disk so that revisions and updates can be made easily at any time.

Comprehensive but easy to use

Decision~Analyst is probably the easiest program you'll ever use. You can literally learn to operate the program using only the 'help' screens. But it comes with a thoroughly indexed manual which includes many pages of examples plus a step by step guide to the decision making process.

And Decision~Analyst is no fly-weight. It uses over 100,000 bytes of fast compiled code and a 40,000 character help file. The program is extremely 'bullet proof' and does all the work . . . you do the thinking. And there is no danger of missing a critical step because your analysis is guided through each of the eight menu-driven sections.

Endless opportunity for use

If you're saying to yourself that you really don't have any earth shattering applications for Decision~Analyst . . . then consider this. If you're in business, chances are that the most important thing you do is make decisions.

Decision~Analyst can help you select key personnel, decide on new machinery or equipment, prioritize major projects and allocate resources, choose a new product or a better price strategy, select new offices or plant locations, select the most profitable marketing channel or the best piece of computer hardware or software. Use it to analyse any decision which has more than one viable alternative.

In your personal life, it can help you choose the best job, select the right business, career or franchise, determine the best field of investment or even the right home, boat or car. In fact, improving your decisions is probably the most rewarding thing you can do.

Let us help you make a $139^{00} decision

If there's a chance that Decision~Analyst could help you improve even one decision, would it pay for itself? Chances are it would. In fact, it's likely that it could save you the price many times over!

So why not take advantage of this special $139.00 introductory price (plus $5.00 shipping) by calling us today? We'll even refund your money, within 30 days, if you're not completely satisfied.

Available for virtually every make of micro-computer using CP/M, CP/M-86, MS-DOS or PC-DOS operating systems. Requires an 80 column screen and an 80 column printer for reports.

Executive Software Inc.

Call Collect
(705)722-3373

U.S.A.
Executive Software Inc.
Dept. #1032
Two North State St.,
Dover, Delaware
19901

Canada
Executive Software Inc.
Dept. #1032
14 Green Pine Ave.,
Barrie, Ontario, Canada
L4M 4S5

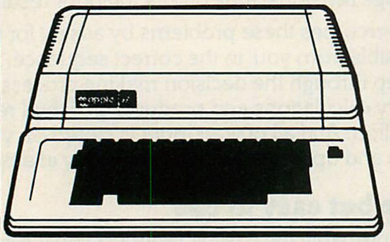
Great Britain & Europe
Microcomputer Products
International Ltd.,
Central House,
Cambridge Rd., Barking
Essex, England 1G11 8NT

DA6

™ Decision~Analyst is a Trademark of Executive Software Inc.
® MS-DOS is a Registered Trademark of Microsoft Corp. ® CP/M ™ CP/M-86 Registered Trademarks of Digital Research Inc. ® PC/DOS is a Registered Trademark of I.B.M.

The Choice of

SAVE THIS AD
IT IS YOUR CATALOG
AND CHANGES MONTHLY



apple II+/IIe

	OUR PRICE
APPLE IIe. STARTER SYSTEM BY APPLE (System A) 64K and 80 column; Disk II with controller; Apple Monitor III; Monitor Stand	$1,650
APPLE IIe STARTER SYSTEM BY CONROY-LA POINTE [SYSTEM B] 128K and 80 column; 1 Micro-Sci Drive with controller; Filer. Utility and DOS 3.3 Diskette; Sanyo 9" Green Monitor; RF Modulator (for color TV); Game Paddles; Game with color graphics and sound; 20 Blank Diskettes	$1,695

WARRANTY: Limited warranty is 100% Parts & Labor for 90 days by us.

DISK DRIVES for APPLE II+/IIe

	LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
★ **CENTRAL POINT**. Filer. Utility and Apple DOS 3.3	$ 20	$ 15
MICRO-SCI A2. 5-1/4". 143K Disk Drive	$ 479	$ 219
Controller Card for A2 Drive	$ 100	$ 79
★A40. 160K. 40 Track Drive	$ 449	$ 299
★A70. 286K. 70 Track Drive	$ 599	$ 299
A40/A70 Controller Card	$ 100	$ 79
Rana Elite 1. 163K. 40 Tracks	$ 379	$ 249
Elite 2. 326K. 80 Tracks	$ 649	$ 399
Elite 3. 652K. 160 Tracks	$ 849	$ 499
Elite Controller w Manual & Diskette	$ 145	$ 84
TEAC ✱143K Disk Drive. 1/2 High	$ 379	$ 259
Controller Card.	$ 89	$ 69
✱Electronics by ComX		
VISTA Solo. 5" 143K Disk Drive Std. Height	$ 300	$ 249
Controller Card	$ 89	$ 75
DiskPak V1200. 6MB Backup Sys.	$1549	$1049
★V1000 Dual 8". Std. Format w Controller. Complete for Apple	$2195	$ 995

WHILE THEY LAST • OVERSTOCK SPECIALS •

FOR APPLE II/II+/IIe	LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
★ **ALS**. Synergizer - Supercalc - Condor for (II+)	$ 749	$299
★ **Axlon**. 320K RAM Disk System (+ or e)	$1000	$695
★ **CCS.** Serial Interface 7710A (Can Set Baud)	$ 150	$ 99
★ **ComX**. 16K RAM Card. 1Yr. Warranty. for II+	$ 179	$ 39
Microsoft. 16K RAMCard for II+	$ 100	$ 69
Saturn Systems. 32K RAM Card for II+	$ 249	$169
64K RAM Card for II+	$ 425	$299
128K RAM Card for II+	$ 599	$399
Silicon Valley. Word Handler	$ 250	$ 39
★ List Handler	$ 90	$ 35
Videx. Videoterm. 80 column card for II+	$ 345	$229

FOR ATARI

	LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
RANA 1000 Disk Drive, 320K	$449	$369
KOALA. Graphics Pad	$100	$ 75

H P 41C Calculator	$ 195	$ 149
H P 41CV Calculator with 2.2K Memory	$ 275	$ 219
Call for HP41 accessories & software		Call

DISKETTES

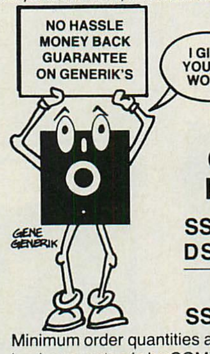
CONTROL DATA CORPORATION Certified Top Quality Diskettes.

	LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
CDC, 100 each, 5-1/4, with ring, SS, DD, 48T (Apple, IBM, etc.)	$ 550	$ 179
10 each, 5-1/4, with ring, SS, DD, 48T (Apple, IBM, etc.)	$ 55	$ 19
100 each, 5-1/4 with ring, DS, DD, 48T, (IBM, H/P, etc.)	$ 750	$ 295
10 each, 5-1/4, with ring, DS, DD, 48T (IBM, H/P, etc.)	$ 75	$ 35
DYSAN, 10 each, 5-1/4, SS, SD, (Apple, etc.)	$ 69	$ 39
10 each, 5-1/4, DS, DD, 48T (IBM, H/P, etc.)	$ 89	$ 49
MAXELL, 10 each, 5-1/4, MD-1, SS, SD or SS, DD	$ 55	$ 29
10 each, 5-1/4, MD2-D, DS DD, 48T (IBM, H/P, etc.)	$ 75	$ 39
VERBATIM, 10 each, 5", Verex, SS SD, (Apple, Atari)	$ 40	$ 21
10 each, 5", MD525-01, SS SD, (Apple, Atari)	$ 49	$ 25
10 each, 5", DD34, DS DD, (IBM, H/P)	$ 84	$ 45
10 each, 5", Optima, DS DD, (IBM, H/P)	$ 121	$ 65

ComX GENERIK™ DISKETTES – AS LOW AS $1/DISK

	LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
100 each SS, SD, 35 Track (Apple, Atari, etc.)	$ 415	$ 130
★ 1000 each SS, SD, 35 Track (Apple, Atari, etc.)	$4150	$ 995
100 each DS, DD, 40 Track (IBM, H/P, etc.)	$ 626	$ 170
★ 1000 each DS, DD, 40 Track (IBM, H/P, etc.)	$6260	$1400

With jackets, no labels, top of the line manufacturer. 90 day limited warranty by us.



GENERIK™ DISKETTES

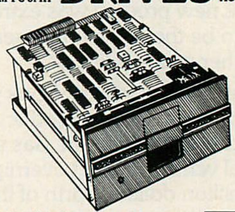
SS SD	$1.00 Each
DS DD	$1.40 Each

CDC

SS SD	$1.79 Each

Minimum order quantities apply. See above money back guarantee is by COMX Corporation not us.

for the IBM-PC or XT DRIVES AND ACCESSORIES



CONTROL DATA OR Tandon

With Detailed Installation Instructions.
60 Day Warranty by Factory Authorized Distributor.

$239 $229 Two or more.
320K/360K DS DD DISK DRIVE
Same as now installed by IBM.

$199
HALF HEIGHT
320K/360K DS DD DISK DRIVE

	LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
CORVUS 6 Meg Hard Disk, w/o Interface	$2395	$1895
11 Meg Hard Disk, w/o Interface	$3195	$2695
20 Meg Hard Disk, w/o Interface	$4195	$3495
IBM-PC Interface (IBM DOS), Manual & Cable Kit	$ 300	$ 239
Mirror built in for easy backup	$ 790	$ 595
Apple Interface, Manual & Cable Kit	$ 300	$ 239
Other Interfaces, Omni-Net, Constellation, Mirror, All in Stock		
★ **DAVONG** INTERNAL Hard Disk, 5-6MB (For PC-1, complete) CLOSE OUT	$1995	$ 995
MAYNARD, Floppy Drive Control Board, for up to 4 drives.	$ 195	$ 165
same with Parallel Port	$ 275	$ 205
VISTA, IBM-PC/XT 6MB Backup for Hard Disk, V1200	$1549	$1049

MONITORS AND ACCESSORIES

	LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
★ **AMDEK**, 12" Green, #300G	$ 200	$ 135
★ 12" Amber, #300A	$ 210	$ 149
★ 12" Amber, 310A for IBM-PC XT	$ 230	$ 159
★ 13" Color I, Composite	$ 379	$ 289
★ 13" Color II, RGB, Hi Res (Ap. II, III & IBM-PC)	$ 529	$ 439
★ 13" Color III, RGB, Commercial. (Ap. II, III)	$ 479	$ 399
DVM, Color II/III to Apple II Interface	$ 199	$ 175
NEC, 12" Green, Model JB1201M	$ 249	$ 159
12" Color, Composite, Model JC1215M	$ 400	$ 299
12" Color, RGB, IBM Model JC 1203	$ 699	$ 569
PRINCETON, RGB Hi Res, HX-12	$ 795	$ 539
★ **QUADRAM**, Quadchrome 12" RGB Color, 16 colors up to 690X480	$ 795	$ 499
Quadrscreen 17", 968 x 512, 2 pages, w. cable, card, disk	$1995	$1595
SANYO, 9" Green, Model DM5109	$ 200	$ 139
12" Green, Model DM8112CX	$ 260	$ 199
13" Color, Composite, Model DM6013	$ 470	$ 349
ZENITH, 12" Green, Model ZVM121	$ 150	$ 89

PRINTERS AND ACCESSORIES

DOT MATRIX PRINTERS:	LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
EPSON, MX80F/T, 80 CPS, with Graftrax +	$ 745	$ 485
FX80, CPS		Call
MX100F/T, 80 CPS, with Graftrax +	$ 995	$ 639
FX100, CPS		Call
Apple II Graphics Dump Program	$ 15	$ 9
Graftrax Plus, specify for MX80 or MX100	$ 95	$ 79
LEADING EDGE, Gorilla Banana NEW!	$ 250	$ 209
OKIDATA, Microline 82A, 80 col., 120 cps, Para., friction & pin feed	$ 549	$ 448
Microline 83A, 132 col., 120 cps, Para., friction & tractor feed	$ 899	$ 699
Microline 92, 160 CPS, 80 Col., Para, Graphics	$ 699	$ 559
Microline 93, 160 CPS, 136 Col., Para, Graphics	$1249	$ 969
ORANGE MICRO, Grappler +, for Apple, specify printer	$ 165	$ 119
PRACTICAL PERIPHERALS, Microbuffer In-Line 64K, Parallel	$ 349	$ 259
Microbuffer In-Line 64K Serial	$ 349	$ 259
★ **STAR MICRONICS**, 9x9 Dot Matrix, 120cps, 2.3K, Gemini 10"X	$ 499	$ 289
9x9 Dot Matrix, 100cps, 2.3K, Gemini 15"	$ 649	$ 389
9x9 Dot Matrix, 100cps, 2.3K, Gemini 15"X		Call
IBM-PC to Epson or Star Micronics Cable	$ 60	$ 35
Apple Interface and Cable for Epson or Gemini	$ 95	$ 59
LETTER QUALITY – DAISY WHEEL PRINTERS:		
JUKI, 6100, 17cps, 80 Col., Parallel	$ 700	$ 539
NEC, 3550 IBM Parallel, 33 cps, 136 Col.	$2350	$1995
★ **TTX**, 13 cps, 10-12-15 Pitch, Para. & Ser, Pin & Friction	$ 649	$ 499

SUPPLIES: Tractor Feed Paper, Ribbons, Qume Daisy Wheels and Ribbons.

MODEMS AND ACCESSORIES

	LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
ANCHOR, Signalman MK I Modem (RS232)	$ 99	$ 75
HAYES, IBM-PC Smartmodem 1200 B plus Smartcom II	$ 599	$ 439
IBM-PC Smartcom II Software	$ 119	$ 89
Stack Chronograph (RS-232)	$ 249	$ 189
Stack Smartmodem 300 (RS-232)	$ 289	$ 225
Smartmodem 1200 (RS-232)	$ 699	$ 535
Micromodem 100 (S-100 bus)	$ 399	$ 275
Micromodem II (for the Apple II)	$ 379	$ 275
Apple Terminal Program for Micromodem II	$ 100	$ 65
IBM-PC to Modem Cable	$ 39	$ 29
NOVATION, Applecat II Modem, 300 BAUD	$ 389	$ 269
212 Apple Cat, 1200 BAUD	$ 725	$ 599
Cat	$ 189	$ 139
D-Cat	$ 199	$ 159
J-Cat	$ 149	$ 109
212 Auto Cat	$ 695	$ 579
Smart Cat 103/212	$ 595	$ 435
Apple Cat II	$ 389	$ 269
212 Apple Cat	$ 725	$ 595
SSM, Transcend 1 for Apple II Data Comm.	$ 89	$ 69
ModemCard for the Apple II	$ 299	$ 259
Transmodem 1200 (110/300/1200)	$ 695	$ 559

8" CP/M-80 SOFTWARE MUCH MORE IN STOCK

	LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
ASHTON-TATE, dBase II	$ 700	$ 395
MICROCRAFT, Verdict (Legal) or Billkeeper (Professional), each	$ 995	$ 469
MICROPRO, WordStar* plus free WordStar Training Manual	$ 495	$ 239
MailMerge™ (Call on 2 Pak, 3 Pak and others)	$ 250	$ 129
WordStar Professional, 4 Pak, 3 above + StarIndex	$ 895	$ 429
MICROSOFT (MORE IN STOCK) Multiplan	$ 275	$ 199
Fortran 80 Compiler	$ 500	$ 325
BASIC Compiler	$ 395	$ 295
COBOL-80 Compiler **CLOSEOUT**	$ 750	$ 450
muLisp/muStar-80	$ 200	$ 145
Macro-80	$ 200	$ 145

PLOTTERS

ENTER COMPUTER, Sweet-P, with Apple Interface and Software	$ 795	$ 595
AMDEK, DXY-100, 10" x 14", Centronics Parallel	$ 749	$ 599
Amplot II, 10" x 14", 6 color, RS232 and Parallel	$1299	$ 999

ORDERING INFORMATION AND TERMS: **All Mail: P.O. Box 23068, Portland, OR 97223, Include telephone number.** All items usually in stock. We immediately honor Cashiers Checks, Money Orders, Fortune 1000 Checks and Government Checks. Personal or Company Checks allow 20 days to clear. No. C.O.D. Prices reflect a 3% cash discount so ADD 3% to above prices for VISA or MC. For U.S. Mainland, add 3% for shipping, insurance and handling (SI&H) by UPS with $5 minimum for SI&H. UPS ground is standard so add 3% more for UPS Blue with $10 minimum for SI&H. Add 12% total for SI&H for US Postal, APO or FPO with $15 minimum for SI&H. For Hawaii, Alaska and Canada, UPS is in some areas only, all others are Postal so call, write, or specify Postal. Foreign orders except Canada for S.I&H add 18% or $25 minimum for SI&H except for monitors add 30% or $50 minimum for SI&H. Prices subject to change and typo errors, so call to verify. All goods are new, include warranty and are guaranteed to work. Due to our low prices, ALL SALES ARE FINAL. Call before returning goods for repair or replacement. Orders received with insufficient S.I&H charges will be refunded. ORDER DESK HOURS 6 A.M. to 6 P.M. PST, Monday through Friday and 10 to 4 Saturday. 6 A.M. here is 9 A.M. in New York.

OUR REFERENCES: We have been in computers and electronics since 1958, a computer dealer since 1979 and in mail order since 1980. Banks: 1st Interstate Bank, (503) 643-4678 We belong to the Chamber of Commerce (503) 644-0123, Better Business Bureau (503) 227-0648 and Direct Marketing Association, or call Dunn and Bradstreet if you are a subscriber. Fastrak™ and Generik™ are trademarks of ComX Corporation. WordStar, MailMerge, StarIndex, InfoStar, are trademarks of MicroPro.

★ **Means a BEST buy** | **AD #982**

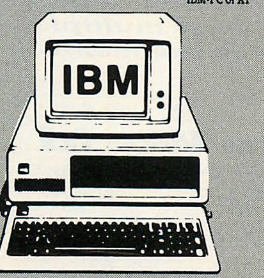
CASH & CARRY OUTLETS:
Over-the-counter sales only. Open Monday through Saturday 10:00 until 5:00.
PORTLAND, OREGON, 11507-D S.W. Pacific Hwy, Terrace Shopping Center, Tigard. On 99W between 217 and I-5. Call 245-1020.
SEATTLE, WASH., 3540 128th Ave. SE, Bellevue, WA 98006, Tele.: 641-4736, between Lochmann's Plaza and Factoria Place, SE of Hwy. 405 & 90 and at SE 38th & 128th.

Professionals T.M.

DEALERS WE BUY EXCESS INVENTORIES

CIRCLE NO. 128 ON READER SERVICE CARD

HARDWARE for the IBM-PC or XT



IBM is a trademark of IBM Corporation.

IBM-PC
System Includes
Two 320K Disk Drives by CDC
90 Day Warranty By Us
Call For Details And Configurations

	LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
MEMORY CHIP KITS Add-on to your memory cards or mother board. 100% tested. With 90 day warranty.		
★ 64K Kit, 200NS, 9 chips, 4164	$ 150	$ 45
16K Kit, 200NS, 9 chips, 4116 (for PC-1 motherboard)	$ 30	$ 16
AMDEK, 4-IN-1 Multiple Board, Color Graphics, Mono, 128K	$ 599	$ 519
AST Combo Plus, 64K w/ser., async para & clock/calendar	$ 395	$ 279
Above Combo Plus, 256K, S/P/C	$ 695	$ 475
MegaPlus II, 64K, 2-S/P/C, and software	$ 495	$ 345
256K, 2-S/P/C, and software	$ 795	$ 495
Expand 256K MegaPlus II to 512K Kit	$ 395	$ 285
CCS SuperVision, monochrome 132 Col. x 44 line video board	$ 850	$ 680
Z/Plus 64, fast Z80B, 64K (expand to 192K), para port	$ 875	$ 695

	LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
★ **ComX** 256K RAM Card with Fastrak™ RAM disk emulator and printer spooler software. 2 Year Warranty	$ 695	$ 256
CURTIS, PC Pedestal™ for Display on PC	$ 80	$ 65
9 Foot Cable for IBM Keyboard (extends 3' to 9')	$ 50	$ 35
Vertical "System Stand" for PC CPU	$ 25	$ 19
HERCULES, Hi Res Graphics Board	$ 499	$ 379
Key Tronic, KB5150, Standard Typewriter keyboard	$ 269	$ 199
Koala, Koala Pad™, Touch Tablet	$ 150	$ 109
Programmer's Guide	$ 15	$ 12
MICROSOFT 256K RAM Card SPECIAL	$ 875	$ 495
64K System Card, 4 Function	$ 395	$ 295
256K System Card, 4 Function	$ 625	$ 465
ORCHID, PCnet™, Local Area Networking Starter System, 2.0	$1490	$1190
Monochrome Graphics Adapter, 720H x 350V, w/64K	$ 499	$ 379
PLANTRONICS/FREDERICKS, ColorPlus, 16 color brd. w/Para Port	$ 475	$ 379
QUADRAM		
★ Quadlink, Apple II Emulator NOW IN STOCK NEW!	$ 680	$ 485
★ Quadboard, no RAM, expandable to 256K, 6 function NEW!	$ 295	$ 215
Quadboard 64K, expandable to 256K, 6 function	$ 395	$ 279
★ Quadboard 256K, 6 function	$ 595	$ 395
Quadboard II, 64K, 6 function	$ 395	$ 285
Quadboard II, 256K, 6 function	$ 595	$ 395
Quad 512+, 64K plus serial port, expandable to 512K, 6 function	$ 325	$ 265
Quad 512+, 256K plus serial port, expandable to 512K, 6 function	$ 550	$ 420
Quad 512+, 512K plus serial port, 6 function	$ 895	$ 625
Quadcolor I, board, 16 colors	$ 295	$ 225
Quadcolor II, board, use with Quadcolor I, set 640 x 200	$ 275	$ 209
Microfazer, w/Copy, Par/Par, 8K, #MP8 w/Power Supply	$ 189	$ 129
Microfazer, w/Copy, Par/Par, 64K, #MP64 w/Power Supply	$ 319	$ 219
Microfazer, w/Copy, Par/Par, 128K, #MP128 w/Power Supply	$ 465	$ 295
Microfazer, Snap-on, 8K, Par/Par, Epson, #ME8, w/Power Supply	$ 179	$ 145
Microfazer, Snap-on, 64K, Par/Par, Epson, #ME64, w/Pwr. Supply	$ 319	$ 235
All Microfazers are expandable (w/copy to 512K) (Snap-on to 64K)		
Tecmar 1st MATE Board, 64K	$ 389	$ 295
1st MATE Board, 256K	$ 589	$ 439
Graphics Master Board	Call	Call
TG PRODUCTS, Joystick	$ 65	$ 49

$45 $40 Ten or more.
64K CHIP KIT
9 Each, 4164, 200 ns, MEMORY EXPANSION.
90 Day Warranty by us.

$256 $239 Two or more.
256K RAM BOARD
Fully Compatible. 2 Year Warranty by ComX.
With Fastrak RAM/Disk Emulator and Spooler Software.
Works on DOS 1.1 or 2.0.

★ **Means a BEST buy. AD #982**

SOFTWARE for the IBM-PC or XT

BUSINESS

			LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
ASHTON-TATE, dBase II, requires PC-DOS & 128K			$ 700	$395
dBase II User's Guide by Software Banc			$ 30	$ 20
Everyman's DB Primer (Book)			$ 15	$ 12
The Financial Planner			$ 700	$449
Friday			$ 295	$199
APPLIED SOFTWARE TECHNOLOGY, Versaform			$ 389	$265
CONTINENTAL, The Home Accountant Plus			$ 150	$ 95
FCM (Filing, Cataloging, Mailing)			$ 125	$ 95
Property Management			$ 495	$329
DATAMOST, Write-On (Word Processor Program)			$ 130	$ 89
DOW JONES, Market Analyzer			$ 350	$279
Market Manager			$ 300	$239
Market Microscope			$ 700	$525
EAGLE SOFTWARE, Money Decisions			$ 150	$119
EINSTEIN, Writer			$ 300	$199
Memory Trainer			$ 80	$ 55
FOX & GELLER, Quickcode (MSDOS)			$ 295	$179
dGraph (MSDOS, requires color graphics adaptor)			$ 295	$179
dUtil for IBM PC DOS			$ 99	$ 59
HAYDEN, IBM Pie Writer		NEW!	$ 200	$135
HOWARDSOFT, Real Estate Analyzer II			$ 250	$189
INFORMATION UNLIMITED, EasyWriter II (Word Processor)			$ 350	$259
EasySpeller II (88K Words)			$ 225	$149
EasyFiler (a DBMS)			$ 400	$299
Inventory Control			$ 595	$395
★ **INSOFT**, Data Design (a powerful easy to use DBMS)		NEW!	$ 225	$169
Data Base Made Easy (Book)		NEW!	$ 17	$ 12
★ **LOTUS**, 1-2-3			$ 495	$329
MICROCRAFT, Verdict (Legal) or Billkeeper, each (CP/M86)			$ 995	$469
MICRO LAB, Miner 2049			$ 40	$ 29
MICROPRO, WordStar™ plus free WordStar Training Manual			$ 495	$239
Mail Merge™ (Call on 2 Pak, 3 Pak and others)			$ 250	$129
SpellStar™			$ 250	$129
★ WordStar Professional, 4 Pak, 3 above + StarIndex			$ 895	$429
StarIndex™ $ 195			$ 195	$109
InfoStar™			$ 495	$259
Report Star™			$ 350	$199
★ **MICROSOFT**, Multiplan	MSDOS		$ 275	$175
Multitool Word	MSDOS	NEW!	$ 375	$275
Multitool Word with Mouse	MSDOS	NEW!	$ 475	$339
Multitool, Financial Statement	MSDOS	NEW!	$ 100	$ 69
Multitool, Budget	MSDOS	NEW!	$ 150	$109

BUSINESS

			LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
MULTISOFT, StretchCalc (makes a close Lotus out of Visicalc)		NEW!	$ 99	$ 59
NORTH AMERICAN BUS SYSTEM, The Answer			$ 250	$169
★ **OSBORNE/COMX**, (Book & Disk: Business, Statistics & Math Programs)				
Some Common Basic Programs (70 programs)			$ 100	$ 69
Practical Basic Programs (40 more programs)			$ 100	$ 69
PBL CORPORATION, Personal Investor			$ 145	$ 94
PEACHTREE SOFTWARE, Peach Pak 3 (GL, AR & AP) Series 4			$ 595	$239
Peach Text 5000 (MSDOS)		NEW!	$ 395	$239
PERFECT SOFTWARE, Perfect Writer™			$ 389	$149
Perfect Speller™ or Perfect Calc™, each			$ 295	$ 99
Perfect Filer™			$ 595	$199
SOFTWARE ARTS, TK! Solver			$ 299	$219
SOFTWARE PUBLISHING, PFS:File			$ 140	$ 94
PFS:Report			$ 125	$ 84
PFS:Write		NEW!	$ 140	$ 95
PFS:Graph		NEW!	$ 140	$ 95
SORCIM, SuperCalc II			$ 295	$195
SuperWriter			$ 295	$199
STONWARE, D.B. Master (a DBMS)			$ 490	$329
SYNAPSE, File Manager			$ 100	$ 67
SYNERGISTIC, Data Reporter			$ 250	$169
T/MAKER, T/Maker III			$ 275	$169
VISICORP, VisiCalc®/256K			$ 250	$179
VisiDex or VisiSchedule, each			$ 250	$189
VisiFile or Desktop Plan I, each			$ 300	$239
VisiWord with VisiSpell (requires 128K)			$ 375	$269

UTILITY & SYSTEM

			LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
HAYES, Smartcom II			$ 119	$ 89
MICROCOM, Microterminal			$ 100	$ 65
MICROSOFT, muMath/muSimp	MSDOS	NEW!	$ 300	$225
Business BASIC Compiler	MSDOS	NEW!	$ 600	$450
Pascal Compiler	MSDOS	NEW!	$ 350	$255
C Compiler	MSDOS	NEW!	$ 500	$369
BASIC Compiler	MSDOS	NEW!	$ 395	$285
Fortran Compiler	MSDOS	NEW!	$ 350	$255
COBOL Compiler	MSDOS	NEW!	$ 750	$559
BASIC Interpreter	MSDOS	NEW!	$ 350	$255
★ **NAGY SYSTEMS**, Copy PC Backup and Utilities		SPECIAL	$ 35	$ 25
NORELL DATA, System Backup			$ 50	$ 39
NORTON, Norton Utilities. 14 powerful programs, 3 disks			$ 80	$ 65

UTILITY & SYSTEM

1983 CL SOFTWARE AWARD:
"Copy II PC by Central Point Software is the best CL software buy of 1983. It will copy more copy protected software and faster than any other backup system. Unlike other copiers it makes an exact duplicate of your original and it does 100% verification of copy. Documentation is excellent."

		LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
★ **CENTRAL POINT**, Copy II PC. Backup and Utility		$ 40	$ 35
★ **COMX**, Fastrak™, RAM/Disk emulator and printer spooler program. Works on any PC DOS version or RAM Card. Menu Driven.	NEW!	$ 100	$ 59
DIGITAL RESEARCH, Concurrent CP M-86™		$ 350	$225
CBASIC 86™		$ 200	$135
CP M86		$ 60	$ 40
Pascal/MT + (CP/M-86)		$ 400	$239
Pascal/MT + (MSDOS)		$ 600	$399
PL/1 (MSDOS)		$ 750	$499
Access Manager (MSDOS)		$ 400	$179
Display Manager (MSDOS)		$ 500	$339
Speed Programming Package (CP/M-86)		$ 200	$135

HOME & EDUCATIONAL

		LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
EPYX/Automated Simulations, Temple of Apshai		$ 40	$ 29
Oil Barons	NEW!	$ 100	$ 75
★ **ARMONK**, Executive Suite		$ 40	$ 27
BLUE CHIP, Millionaire		$ 60	$ 39
BPI SYSTEMS, Personal Accounting		$ 195	$139
★ **BRODERBUND**, Apple Panic (Reg. Color Graphic Brd.)		$ 30	$ 19
COMPREHENSIVE, PC Tutor (Specify 1.1 or 2.0)		$ 60	$ 40
CONTINENTAL, the Home Accountant Plus		$ 150	$ 95
DATAMOST, Pig Pen or Space Strike, each		$ 30	$ 22
DAVIDSON, The Speed Reader II		$ 75	$ 55
INFOCOM, Deadline		$ 50	$ 33
Zork I or Zork II or Zork III, each		$ 40	$ 27
★ **INSOFT**, Word Trix or Quotrix, each	NEW!	$ 35	$ 29
MICRO LAB, Miner 2049		$ 40	$ 29
MICROSOFT, Flight Simulator (by Sub-Logic)		$ 50	$ 33
PBL CORP., Personal Investor		$ 145	$ 99
SPINNAKER, Snooper Troops #1 or #2 each		$ 45	$ 35
Story Machine or Face Maker or Rhymes & Riddles, ea.		$ 35	$ 24
STRATEGIC, the Warp Factor		$ 40	$ 30
SUBLOGIC, Might Mission Pinball		$ 40	$ 27

THE WORLD'S LARGEST COMPUTER MAIL ORDER FIRM

CONROY-LA POINTE™

Formerly **Computer Exchange**™

VISA master charge

SHOWROOMS AT: 11507D SW PACIFIC HWY., PORTLAND, OR. OPEN M-SAT 10-5
SEATTLE, WA OPEN M-SAT 10-5

ALL MAIL: P.O. Box 23068, Portland, OR 97223

NATIONAL ORDER DESK **TOLL FREE (800) 547-1289**

Order Desk Hours: 6AM to 6PM PST

Oregon TOLL FREE [800] 451-5151 Portland: 245-6200	Hot Line For Information On Your Order [503] 245-1030

ANNOUNCING

PC WEEK

News relating to the use of IBM Personal Computers in DP/MIS and other multiple unit environments.

Volume 1, Number 2 | August 1, 1983 | $2.95 a copy; $120 a year

Portables Catch On In Corporate World

The first newspaper designed to give top level management the latest IBM Personal Computer news and analyses—up to 2 months faster than any monthly publication.

Finally, a newspaper that keeps up with the rapidly-changing developments in the IBM Personal Computer marketplace for today's busy executive. PC WEEK is the first and only weekly newspaper to offer the news of a tabloid and the features and analyses of a monthly publication. Which means you get the news you need to make important business decisions . . . up to 2 months faster than any other publication.

PC WEEK delivers the latest breaking stories—as they develop. Unlike monthly magazines, which require almost 2 months lead time to publish a story, PC WEEK follows and reports the news up to 48 hours before publication. So you learn what's new *when* it's new.

PC WEEK updates the research, analyzes the strategies, reviews the hardware and software releases, offers insights on future industry concerns, relates the timely information you need to help make you more productive.

Here are just some of the features and departments you'll get each and every week in PC WEEK. . .

- **News: PC WEEK brings you analytical reports on the major topics of the day. Trends are analyzed, product announcements and company changes put into perspective.**
- **Strategies: Each week, you get an in-depth profile of a leading user company and how it handles the Personal Computer. Case studies tell why an application succeeded or failed.**
- **Software Review: What packages are right for you PC WEEK compares and analyzes important releases. . . tells you how to use them effectively.**
- **Hardware Survey: A business-oriented buyer's guide and a product directory detail the features of product classification and give you the technical and financial considerations involved.**
- **DataComm Lines: How to communicate with other Personal Computers . . . without the jargon . . . without the confusion.**
- **Data Base Report: We'll examine outside data bases, such as the Dow Jones News Retrieval Service, and tell you how to access them to increase your efficiency.**

Now, you won't have to wait for the news you need. You can get it first . . . with PC WEEK.

All this and more is yours in each issue of PC WEEK. Best of all, your subscription is complimentary, if you qualify. So take a moment to complete and mail the qualification form at the right.

PC WEEK

Because you need fast-breaking news as it breaks.

Ziff-Davis Publishing Company, 381 Elliot Street, Newton, MA 02164 617-965-8850

actually use McDonnell's algorithm to its full potential, because only it has a separate Boolean datatype. Because of this, IBM is much faster than STSC, typically by a factor of about six.

Sorting is a common computer task, so common that both systems basically provide it as a primitive. The grade primitives (grade up/down) return the indices necessary to order the argument ascendingly or descendingly. Both systems provide a very powerful function, unmatched by any I have seen in other languages. It may be another of APL's unique contributions to computing. Thanks go to Howard Smith of IBM for the idea [ref 2]. Let's see how it works.

Here's a typical problem. Your defined function has a number of labels in it all of the form A1 to A99, B1 to B99, etc. Given a three-column matrix containing the names (left-justified), how do you put them in order? Not just any order, though. The alphabet prefixes must be in alphabetic order and within equal prefixes the numeric suffixes must be in numeric order. How do you get L2 to sort between L1 and L10? Will you have to split apart the prefixes and suffixes and sort them separately somehow? No! It can be done using the grade up primitive alone with an appropriately defined collating array as its left argument. They key is to break the bounds of thinking of a collating sequence as a one-dimensional vector in which the relative positions of two values determine their relative order. Instead, Smith conceived of a multidimensional collating array where relative order along rows determines two character's relative order. If the two characters compare equally along all rows, the algorithm shifts to compare them along columns, and so on to higher dimensions until the relative order is resolved. (See Smith's article.)

The collating array used in this benchmark is a 10-by-2-by-28-character array. It can be created using the code in figure 3. Figure 4 shows the code involved in sorting a matrix M according to the collating sequence CS. Smith's algorithm can be implemented quite efficiently without all the searching that the above description implies. STSC seems to have a better grasp of how to do this. For a 100, 250, and 500-row-by-3-column matrix, the STSC system took 275, 604, and 1044 ms respectively. For the same arrays, the IBM system took 7064, 11995, and 19033 ms.

What about real world problems? The answer must always take into account the 900 ms spike in the IBM system's timings. When dealing with code fragments any larger than a primitive or two and with reasonable-sized data it's very difficult to get repeatable timings. If the timings aren't stable, comparisons are less meaningful. How do IBM and STSC handle this prob-

Figure 3: APL Code Used to Create Benchmark Collating Array

```
CS← 10 2 28 ρ' '
CS[1;1;1+⍳26]←'ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ'
CS[2;2;1+⍳26]←'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz'
CS[;1;28]←'0123456789'
```

Figure 4: APL Code Used to Sort a Matrix

```
      ⎕←M← 4 3 ρ'L20L10L1 L2 '
L20
L10
L1
L2

      M[CS⍋M;]
L1
L2
L10
L20
```

lem? Mostly, one is left with subjective impressions. Overall, the STSC system is faster.

Although the IBM system may have better algorithms in some cases, it suffers quite a bit from poor agoranomics, or space management. Shuffling objects in and out of the main workspace just to get them all under one segment register is slow: there's a severe execution penalty for any but the shortest piece of code. Those 900 ms spikes add up pretty quickly.

The Systems Compared

Table 1 shows a side-by-side comparison of the two systems. Positive number limit is the largest representable number in the system (obtained from L / ⍳ 0). Positive counting number limit says that all integers between 1 and this number are uniquely representable. Index limit is the largest subscript which may be used. Length limit is the maximum number of elements any array can hold. Rank limit is the largest allowed rank. Identifier length limit is the number of characters distinguished in an identifier name. It's quite small on the IBM system. Moreover, neither system signals an error if an identifier is entered which exceeds the limit. That's certainly less of a problem at 77 than it is at 12.

Miscellaneous

Neither system allows self-localized functions—user defined functions that re-use their name in the new context. The STSC system simply rejects such attempts. The IBM system usually chokes on them, either displaying a real live SYSTEM ERROR, or going belly up (system reset time). This SYSTEM ERROR message actually is a good sign as it implies that there are checks in the system of its own assumptions. Non-orthagonal internal design in a system this large and complex is unavoidable, so it's reassuring to see such checks in place.

One assumption IBM failed to check is the presence of an 8087. As you might expect, the system hangs on a CPU WAIT instruction preced-

How to dress up your IBM PC.™

Fred Molinari, President

Low cost data acquisition and control for the IBM Personal Computer.

Data Translation is fashioning a new look in the personal computer market.

Our new single board plug-ins bring complete analog and digital I/O capability to your IBM Personal Computer.

The complete DT2801 I/O system fits on just one board. It includes A/D with programmable gain, D/A, digital I/O, and a programmable clock and has direct memory access capabilities. The DT2805 features the same functionality, with provision for low level analog input.

Whether your application is in laboratory research or industrial process control, our board family provides power and performance to match that of the IBM PC ...up to 28kHz A/D throughput, DMA, 10, 12, or 16-bit A/D resolution, or 4 channels of simultaneous sample and hold.

The DT2801 and DT2805 are easy to use. Just plug either one into an IBM Personal Computer expansion slot. No need for separate housing or cables. A screw terminal panel with optional thermocouple cold junction compensation is available for connecting analog and digital input signals.

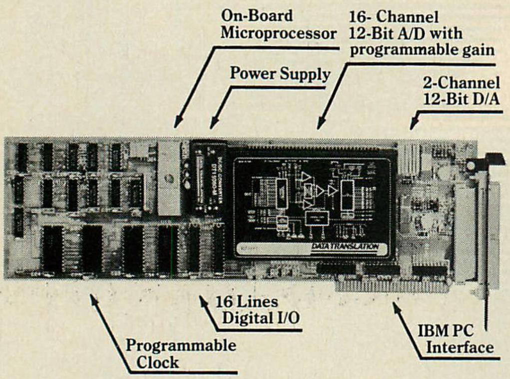
And they're easy to program. More than 30 I/O functions are accessed with just 3 commands from BASIC. Programming instructions and example programs are detailed in the comprehensive User Manual. Optional PCLAB and PCTHERM software packages provide sophisticated BASIC-CALLable macro-routine libraries for fast real-time programming.

Plus, as with all Data Translation products, the DT2801 and DT2805 are fully backed by our service and support team.

No other analog I/O systems for the IBM Personal Computer offer such quality, power, and performance for such a reasonable price.

But, by now you probably expect that from Data Translation.

We don't just follow the latest trends. We set the style. **Call (617) 481-3700.**



The DT 2801 and DT 2805 are complete single board data acquisition systems for the IBM Personal Computer.

DATA TRANSLATION

World Headquarters: Data Translation, Inc., 100 Locke Dr., Marlboro, MA 01752 (617) 481-3700 Tlx 951-646.
European Headquarters: Data Translation, Ltd., 430 Bath Rd., Slough, Berkshire SLI 6BB England (06286) 3412 Tlx 849-862.

CIRCLE NO. 137 ON READER SERVICE CARD

ing an FINIT if the chip is not installed. That's a minor oversight. It would take only six instructions to determine its presence or absence.

The two systems support both monochrome and graphics monitors, although IBM supports the monochrome monitor only in conjunction with a graphics monitor. Of course, you can't get APL characters on the monochrome screen with the IBM system. As it turns out, the STSC character ROM on the monochrome screen correctly displays many of the IBM system's APL characters, but not enough to make it interesting. Those with both monitors, will find it very convenient to switch between the two (and between 40 and 80-column mode on the graphics monitor) on the IBM system. To make the switch with the STSC, you have to write a small but non-trivial APL program, which writes into the BIOS data segment, and more. This program is not provided with the STSC system, although it can be obtained from the company.

The STSC system allows end-of-line comments, IBM doesn't. In a limited-screen environment like that of the PC, it pays to make the most of the screen's space—end-of-line comments do this.

The STSC system supports values for *⎕PW* up to 255; IBM limits it to 80. Curiously, the default width in the IBM system is 79, not 80. Perhaps that's because output doesn't work quite correctly at width 80 (or 40 for that matter when in 40-column mode). For example, on the IBM system, a two-by-screen-width matrix of, say, A's prints on four lines—A's, a blank line, more A's and another blank line. This effect is most noticeable in 40-column mode when files are being listed on a diskette with)LIB. Each line of output is just 40 characters long, hence they're all double-spaced. Fully half the screen is wasted. Also, curiously at a *⎕PW* of 40 only two 13-wide columns of names are displayed from)FNS and)VARS although there is sufficient room for three columns.

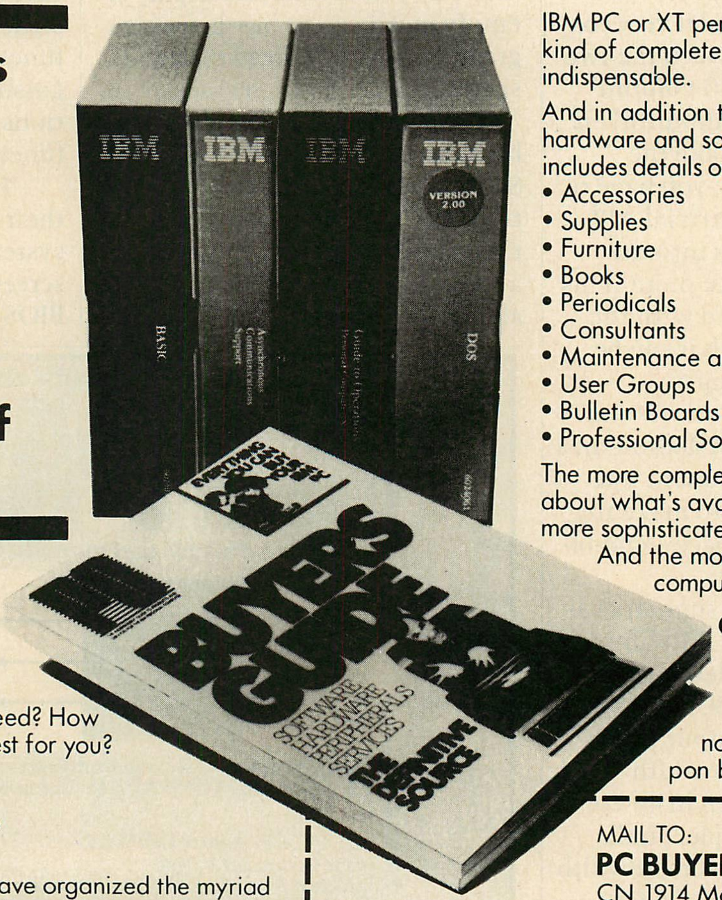
Empty matrices display differently on the two systems. On STSC, 3, 2, 1, and 0-row matrices display on 3, 2, 1, and 0 lines respectively. On IBM, the same matrices display on 3, 2, 1, and 1 line. It is true that empty matrices in IBM's mainframe VSAPL program product behave the same way, but that system was designed in the early '70s. On IBM's experimental APL2 system, empty matrices are treated correctly, and in fact better than either PC system. The misdisplay of empty matrices is a hassle for programmers. They'll need to code special checks for such cases.

The IBM system supports ambivalent user-defined functions; STSC doesn't. Ambivalent functions are like primitives in that they may be called with or without a left argument. Within the ambivalent function, this condition can be tested for and the cases split. This very nice feature is slightly flawed in its implementation. The problem occurs for the careful programmer when writing a dyadic-only function. You must now remember to check for the absence of the left argument and then figure out what to do without it. Since there's no way in the IBM system to signal a SYNTAX ERROR to the calling environment, there's no way to mimic the way the system handles a dyadic-only primitive called with only one argument. You're left with no good choices. One solution is for the system designers to implement ambivalent functions in a way which distinguishes them for other user functions, perhaps with a marker in the function header.

The two systems also differ in their speed of display. The STSC system does direct writes to the screen buffers; IBM uses its own BIOS calls (perhaps there's a rule in

ANNOUNCING THE MASTER DIRECTORY— THE COMPLETE GUIDE FOR YOUR IBM PC OR XT

Over 500 pages of listings for IBM-compatible hardware, software, accessories and services—from the publishers of *PC Magazine*...



There are literally thousands of different products on the market that are compatible with your IBM PC or XT. And new ones are being introduced every day.

How do you find the ones you need? How do you decide which ones are best for you? With *PC Buyers Guide*.

Thousands of products in one convenient source.

The publishers of *PC Magazine* have organized the myriad of IBM-compatible products, services and support items into one comprehensive, easy-to-use guide. It's the quickest and most reliable way to put your finger on exactly what you need to enhance the usefulness of your computer.

Every product in the directory is fully and accurately described. You'll find out what it is, what it does, how much it costs, and where to get more information about it. You'll know what level of skill is required—novice, intermediate or technical. And everything is cross-referenced so you won't miss a thing!

Get more from your PC or XT

The documentation you received from IBM is only the beginning. Finding the right software and hardware is what really makes the difference in how effectively your IBM PC or XT performs. That's why this kind of complete product information is indispensable.

And in addition to thoroughly covering hardware and software, *PC Buyers Guide* includes details on all the important extras:

- Accessories
- Supplies
- Furniture
- Books
- Periodicals
- Consultants
- Maintenance and Support
- User Groups
- Bulletin Boards
- Professional Societies

The more complete your knowledge is about what's available for your PC, the more sophisticated a user you'll become. And the more you'll get from your computer.

Order your copy today

Demand for *PC Buyers Guide* is great, so be sure to order your copy now. Simply fill in the coupon below and mail it today.

MAIL TO:
PC BUYERS GUIDE
CN 1914 Morristown, NJ 07960

Please send me ________ copy(ies) of *PC: The Product Directory.* I enclose $7.95* for each copy, plus $1.50 for postage and handling.

Outside the U.S.A., the price is $10.00; send U.S. funds only. *Residents of CA, CO, CT, DC, FL, IL, MA, MI, MD, NJ, NY State and VT add applicable sales tax.

Name________________________________
(please print)

Address______________________________

City_________________________________

State________________Zip______________

NG5F

IBM about that). In any case, the STSC system gives a much spiffier appearance as a result.

Summary

In the end, how does one choose? The STSC system has extensive features and is heavily documented. The ROM makes viewing the characters a pleasure. Its interface to the screen (not covered in this review), to PCDOS files, to BIOS (also not covered), to remote computers, to its input editor, and to the printer are all simple and straightforward to use.

The IBM system has lots of bugs and they're not all obscure. It has a number of shortcomings including a crude interface to the above-mentioned areas where the STSC system shines: numeric inaccuracy, and a poorly-designed storage management scheme. However, its floating-point algorithms put those of STSC to shame. Some of these shortcomings are more easily corrected than others. About the only one that likely would involve substantial work is the storage management problems. I look forward to another version that addresses these problems.

Also, there is a substantial price difference. You get a lot from STSC for $595, but the IBM system costs only $195 (assuming you already have an 8087 and a color graphics adapter and monitor).

As usual, you'll need to decide for yourself.

References

1. *McDonnell, E.E.,* The Caret Functions, Proc. of the Sixth International APL User's Conference, *Anaheim, Calif., 1974.*
2. *Smith, Howard J., Jr.,* Sorting: A New/Old Problem, APL79 Conference Proceedings, *Rochester, NY, Association for Computing Machinery, 1979.*

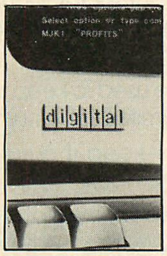
Table 1: ISO and APL Upclose

	IBM	STSC
Positive number limit	*1.7977...E308*	*1.7977...E308*
Positive counting number limit	*2*53*	*2*53*
Index limit	*32767*	*32767*
Length limit	*32767*	*32767*
Rank limit	*63*	*63*
Identifier length limit	*12*	*77*
Print precision limit	*15*	*16*
Full print precision	*17*	*17*
Function line limit	*1000*	*32767*

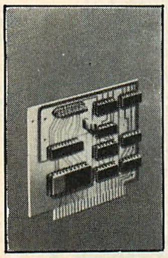

digital review
Home Financial And General Ledger Programs
How To Start A User Group
Kurt Vonnegut's Epicac
Visicalc Utilities
A Quick New Word Processor
THE DEC FOR EDUCATION
FOR DIGITAL MICROCOMPUTING
SEPTEMBER 1983
VOL. 1 NO. 1
$2.95

Now, the most significant advance in DEC software ever

Announcing DIGITAL REVIEW...the monthly magazine exclusively for your DEC microcomputer.

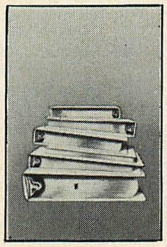


HARDWARE: Each and every month, you'll get all the latest technological developments—minicomputers... microcomputers... peripherals... telecommunications—and what they mean to you.

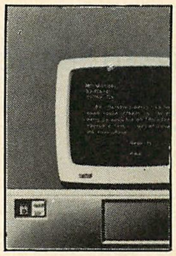


I/O FEEDBACK: A chance for you—the user—to network your application needs and ideas.

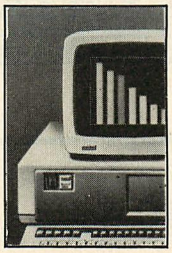
SOFTWARE: Whether it's the newest in operating systems... or advances in computer networks, DIGITAL REVIEW keeps you up-to-date... and spotlights releases that are changing the way businesses conduct their business.



PROGRAMMING: All the latest in programming techniques with special features devoted exclusively to traditional and new software applications.



WORD PROCESSING: You'll learn the newest techniques that will make your office as efficient and as cost-effective as possible.



COMPUTER GRAPHICS: Color visual tools for the financial analyst, the laboratory technician, and the physics major. DIGITAL REVIEW reports on the latest innovations and how you can use them in your field.

Save up to 36%!

Now, through this Special Introductory Offer, you can save up to 36% when you subscribe to DIGITAL REVIEW.

digital review
P.O. Box 2989
Boulder, CO 80322
8H112

YES! I want to subscribe to Digital Review for:

- ☐ One year (12 issues) for $24.97—I save 17%!
- ☐ Two years for $43.97—I save 27%!
- ☐ Three years for $57.97—I save 36%!

Savings based on full one-year subscription price of $29.97
4X001

Name ____________________

Address ____________________

City ____________ State ________ Zip ________

Add $13 for Canada and all other foreign countries. Please allow 30 to 60 days for delivery of first issue.

Check one: ☐ Payment enclosed ☐ Bill me

Charge my: ☐ American Express ☐ MasterCard ☐ VISA

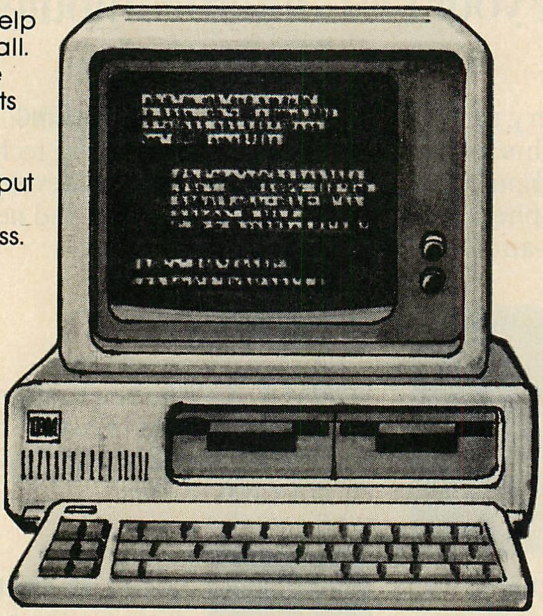
Account No. ____________________ Exp. Date ________

Would you like to receive special offers from qualified users of our mailing list? ☐ Yes ☐ No

On the Fine Art of Family Business Management.

Keeping family business matters, under control is difficult ... Write this check ... Pay that bill ... Insurance premiums due ... All the paperwork adds up to a headache. You need all the help you can get to stay on top of it all. The **HOUSEHOLD AIDS** software package from N.F. Systems puts an end to guesswork, paper shuffling and haphazard accounting. Buy it today and put the power of the P.C. to work managing your family business.

N.F. Systems Software for the IBM PC



HOUSEHOLD AIDS

A group of six programs designed to organi and control paperwork for the entire family. $49.

1 **HOUSEHOLD INVENTORY**—26 categories of po sessions. Totals by category including cost and curre value. Display/Print. Insurance companies love it!

2 **VITAL RECORDS**—keep lists of social security numbe bank accounts, wills, credit cards, insurance, etc. must for everyone!

3 **VCR INDEX**—also could be used to keep track of reg lar cassettes, or books. Unlimited tape numbers.

4 **RESUME**—keep it handy—keep it current. Keep r sumes for several family members

5 **PERSONAL STATEMENT**—keep available to print needed. Covers all topics. Works for any bank.

6 **NAME/ADDRESS/PHONE**—also, allows space for ch dren's names and a miscellaneous field for birthday Christmas cards, etc. Search on last name.

STOCK PORTFOLIO

Major Features:

- **Enter Security Purchases/Sales**
- **Value Portfolio**
- **List Portfolio**
- **List Portfolio Transactions**
- **Create Year-End Tax Information**

This user friendly program allows you to keep multiple portfolios for you and your family. Use the power of the computer to track your investments. All reports can be displayed on the screen and/or printed on your printer. **$39.95**

ICARUS PROBE

Your mission, should you decide to take it, is as follows: Fly and land the Daedalus Space Probe to the inner-most chamber of the Panamon Complex on the planet Armitron. This will take you through many twisting tunnels which you must navigate in order to succeed. Failure means instant death. Your fuel supply is limited as you thrust through the mountainous terrain headed for the landing pads. An exciting game utilizing the monochrome display. **$34.95**

All use 1 disk and 40 or 80 character display. 64K except where noted.

CIRCLE NO. 177 ON READER SERVICE CARD

N.F. SYSTEMS, LTD.
P.O. BOX 76363, ATLANTA, GA 30358

404-252-3302—VOICE 404-252-4146—DATA

MASTERCARD/VISA
Add $2.50 Postage & Handling

CATALOG AVAILABLE

TECH NOTEBOOK 8

Basic Table Lookups

BASIC's string handling capabilities provide rapid access to small tables

J. EDWARD VOLKSTORF, JR.

Creating tables and searching for the existence of a particular entry is a standard software problem. Tables in BASIC, which are often in the form of numeric or string arrays, can be searched via FOR/NEXT or WHILE/WEND loops with an appropriate IF statement. More exotic techniques such as hash coding, linked lists, and the like, are overkill for small tables.

But the problem can be approached from another angle. Tables can be coded as a series of characters, i.e., a string variable, and quickly accessed with a single BASIC statement using the INSTR function. The key to this technique lies in properly coding the table as a string of characters.

In one variation INSTR takes two string-valued arguments and returns the starting character position in the first string where the second string can be found. If the second string is not found, a zero is returned. The command **INSTR("to be or not to be", "be")** returns a 4, whereas **INSTR("that's the question", "be")** returns 0.

The second variation of INSTR includes a numeric argument which is the character position where the search for the second string begins. **INSTR(5, "to be or not to be", "to")** returns a 14, and **INSTR(8, "to be or not to be", "or")** returns 0.

Without this argument the search will always begin with the first character in the string being searched.

Consider an invoicing system where a small set of payment terms that must be validated upon entry are used. The terms are phrases such as NET, COD, OTHER. Placing a unique character between each term, creates a string variable containing them that can be used for validation. (See listing 1.)

Concatenating the PT$ variable with backslashes on either side in line 120 insures that only valid matches are found in TERMS$. Without them an entry such as NET 3 would be considered valid.

Suppose you wanted a table look-up to return a sequential position number for the item found, and to validate an item. With INSTR, the table must be structured as a group of fixed length fields. Valid entries in the table will then always be found at character positions equal to a multiple of the field width plus one, where the entries are numbered from zero.

To determine position numbers for the above payment terms example, let each term take 7 characters in TERM$. Valid PT$ values will always begin at character positions 1, 8, 15, and so on. (See listing 2.)

Line 115 converts PT$ to a 7–character string with trailing dashes. As before, this is necessary to insure a unique match in TERMS$. The P-value is first used to validate PT$ and is then converted to the relative position in TERMS$ where PT$ was found.

INSTR can also be used to determine a second value associated with the table entries. A table with a few of the 8086 control mnemonics and their hexadecimal values, for example, can be accessed as shown in listing 3.

Ed Volkstorf's company, New Venture Systems, produces educational administrative software. His book, Graphics Programming on The IBM Personal Computer, *was published this fall by Prentice-Hall.*

LISTING 1 VALIDATION TABLE

```
100 TERMS$="/NET/NET 10/NET 30/COD/OTHER/"
110 INPUT"Enter payment terms: ",PT$
120 IF INSTR(TERMS$,"/"+PT$+"/") > 0 THEN 140
130 PRINT"Invalid.  Please re-enter." : GOTO 110
140 ...   ' terms ok;  program continues
```

LISTING 2 DETERMINING POSITION

```
100 TERMS$="NET----NET 10-NET 30-COD----OTHER--"
110 INPUT"Enter payment terms: ",PT$
115 PT$=LEFT$(PT$+"-------",7)
120 P=INSTR(TERMS$,PT$) : IF ((P-1) MOD 7)=0 THEN 140
130 PRINT"Invalid.  Please re-enter." : GOTO 110
140 P=P\7 + 1 ' calculate relative position in table
150 . . .     ' terms ok; program continues
```

LISTING 3 TABLE LOOK-UP

```
100 PROC.CTL$="/CLC,F8/CMC,F5/CLD,FC/CLI,FA/HLT,F4/LOCK,F0"
110 INPUT"Enter mnemonic: ",M$
120 P=INSTR(PROC.CTL$,"/"+M$+",") : IF P>0 THEN 140
130 PRINT"Invalid.  Re-enter." : GOTO 110
140 P=INSTR(P+1,PROC.CTL$,",")  ' find comma after mnemonic
150 H$=MID$(PROC.CTL$,P+1,2)    ' get hex for this mnemonic
```

INTERRUPTS AND THE IBM PC PART 1

Another gap in IBM documentation: How the 8259A interrupt controller works.

CHRIS DUNFORD

As Roseanne Rosannadanna so sagely observes, it's always something. I recently had to write a special purpose communications program, so I turned to my usual development language, Pascal. But it was lacking in support for communications. So I tried 8088 assembler. With it, I lost input data every time the program initiated disk or printer I/O. I tried C: the same problem. There was nothing left but BASIC, and I am no fan of BASIC. Even if I were, it would have been too slow to handle all the 1200 baud processing I had in mind.

So, I decided to go back to assembler and try to solve the lost data problem. As you know, data communications under the PC's scheme of things is an asynchronous process—one whose timing is not under program control. And you are probably also aware that communications support from DOS and BIOS is unbuffered. Combine these two, and you've got the essence of the problem: how to guarantee that a program will always be prepared to handle incoming data, given unknown arrival times for data, and the inability of DOS and BIOS to help?

The natural way to solve the problem is to use interrupts. In examining the PC's interrupt system, I found that it is very flexible and functional, but largely undocumented by IBM. Virtually ignored in the literature is the 8259A interrupt controller on the system board, the powerful and versatile chip that is essential to interrupt handling.

This two-part article will describe the PC's interrupt system in depth. Part I will examine the workings of interrupts: how they are triggered and serviced; how you can control the interrupt system on the PC. We'll spend considerable time in the depths of the 8259's microcircuitry. Next month, we'll demonstrate how to use the interrupt system by building a simple but functional interrupt-driven terminal emulator.

The interrupt technique is useful, because an interrupt can halt virtually anything, even DOS and BIOS routines.

A LITTLE BACKGROUND

There are two fundamental techniques for dealing with asynchronous data: polling and interrupts, both fairly simple concepts. Polling means checking periodically to see if certain things need attention. An automobile driver, for instance, polls things: At reasonably regular intervals, he polls the speedometer, the fuel gauge, the rear-view mirror, and so on. In terms of computer communications, polling would mean doing something such as periodically checking the RS232 port to see if data is available, and taking appropriate action if it is.

Now, polling is suitable in some cases, but it can't help very much with the problem at hand. In order to ensure no loss of data, the software would have to poll at least every hundredth of a second at 1200 baud. If the program were in control at all times, that wouldn't be very difficult, but the fact is that control is relinquished to the system every time service is requested from DOS or BIOS. During that time, no polling can take place. If the service requested is an I/O process such as disk or printer output, loss of data is virtually assured. So polling is ruled out as a valid solution here.

The second asynchronous data technique involves the use of interrupts, or signals indicating that something needs attention. A ringing telephone is an example of interrupts in the real world: It is an interrupt signalling the occurrence of an asynchronous event—a tele-

phone call. If there were no interrupt, we'd have to poll the telephone every 20 seconds or so to see if there were an incoming call. The red "idiot" lights in autos are interrupts signalling critical events; the manufacturer has saved us from having to poll a temperature gauge by adding an overheat interrupt.

In terms of computer communications, if the RS232 port were to interrupt when it had data ready, the system could go on about its business, ignoring the port completely until then. What makes the interrupt technique so useful is

Polling can't help with the lost data problem—the software would have to poll at least every hundredth of a second at 1200 baud.

that an interrupt can halt virtually anything, even DOS and BIOS routines. The communications program can do whatever it wants: scan the keyboard, initiate I/O processes, or play PC-MAN, secure in the knowledge that control will be regained whenever the RS232 port has data available.

INTERRUPTS AND THE PC

The 8088 microprocessor on the PC's system board is capable of responding to three basic types of interrupts: software, nonmaskable external, and maskable external. I'm assuming that you already have some familiarity with 8088 assembly language, and so know about software interrupts. Nonmaskable interrupts are usually reserved for critical events: impending power failures, reset keys, and the like. (In the PC, the maskable interrupt is used when parity errors in memory are discovered.) The final type, maskable interrupts, is the one we're interested in here.

A maskable interrupt is an interrupt from an external device that can be masked (ignored) if desired. (Note that external here means outside the 8088, not necessarily outside the computer.) The PC is designed to allow for eight maskable interrupts, and they are called IRQ0 through IRQ7 (IRQ stands for Interrupt ReQuest). As delivered, the PC uses three of these interrupts—IRQ0 is used by the system timer, IRQ1 by the keyboard, and IRQ6 by the diskette adapter. The rest are not used by the system software, although they are available for use by properly wired cards in the peripheral slots.

What are IRQs? They are essentially "hard wired" interrupt signals leading from peripherals, that tell the system which peripheral wants to be heard. As mentioned, the keyboard is wired to IRQ1. When you press a key, the keyboard uses IRQ1 to tell the CPU that it wants attention.

Figure 1 is a simplified block diagram of the interrupt system as implemented on the PC. Notice that the eight IRQ lines (one from the system timer, one from the keyboard, and six from the peripheral slots) are inputs to a chip designated as the 8259A PIC, and that a pair of lines leads between the 8259 and the 8088 CPU. It would appear that the 8259 in some manner takes eight interrupt inputs and converts these into a single interrupt to the CPU, and that is exactly what it does. The 8259 (formal title: Intel 8259A Programmable Interrupt Controller) is the heart of the interrupt system.

The best way to explain what the 8259 does is to run through an example. Let's look at what happens when a key is pressed on the keyboard, assuming, for the moment, that no other interrupts are

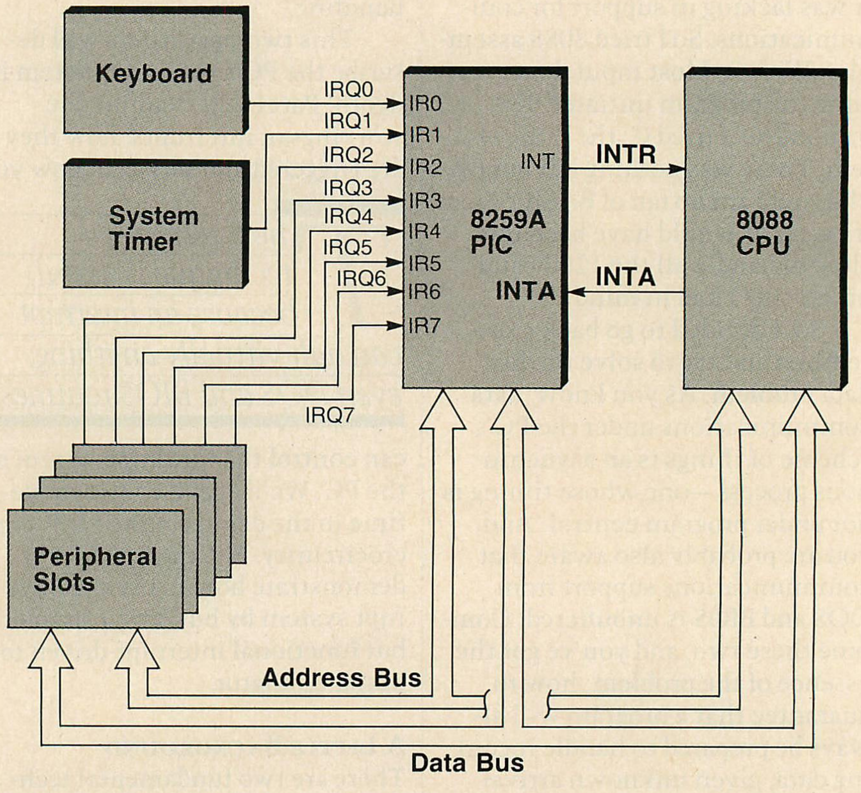


Figure 1: IBM PC Interrupt System—Simplified Block Diagram IRQ6 Used by Diskette Adapter Card

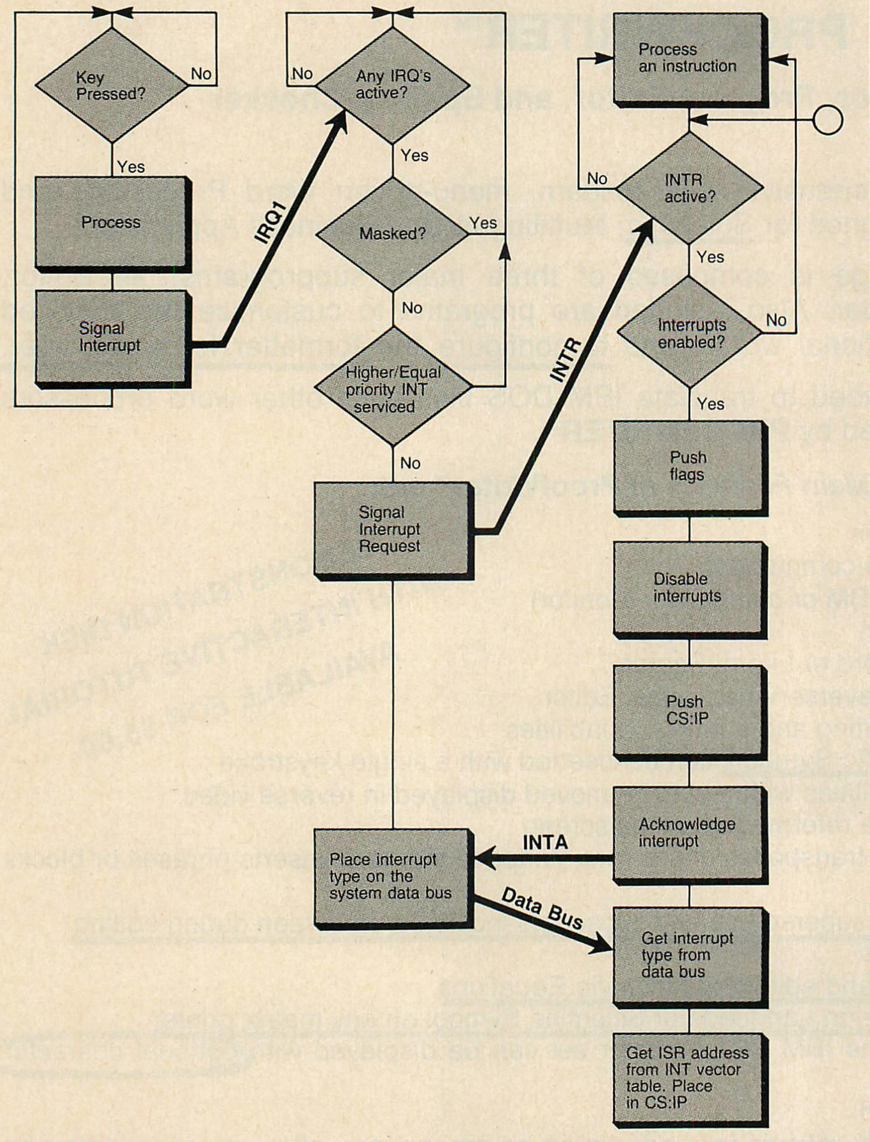


Figure 2: Interrupt/Acknowledge Cycle for Typical Interrupt. The final step of the 8088 process is, in effect, a jump to the interrupt service routine. The IRET at the end of the ISR restores the flags and continues execution at point A.

pending or in service. Figure 2 is a flow chart of a typical interrupt and acknowledge sequence. Note that double lines do not represent flow of control, but signals on various system lines.

1. There is a microprocessor in the keyboard that handles most of the work involved in keyboard scanning. When the processor senses that a key has been pressed, it determines which key it was and then sends out a signal to the 8259 (via IRQ1) indicating that it has data ready.

2. The 8259 checks to see if the interrupt is masked: is the system interested in IRQ1? It does this by looking at an internal 8-bit register called the Interrupt Mask Register (IMR). The eight bits in the IMR correspond to the eight maskable interrupts; IMR bit 0 is a mask for IRQ0, IMR bit 1 for IRQ1, and so forth. A one bit indicates that the corresponding interrupt is masked. In the PC, the 8259 finds a zero in bit 1 of the IMR, so IRQ1 is not masked. In other words, yes, the system is interested in IRQ1. (If the 8259 were to find a one in the bit corresponding to the current interrupt channel, no further action would be taken.)

3. Having determined that interrupt channel 1 is unmasked, the 8259 alerts the 8088 of the interrupt request by sending it a signal on the CPU's INTR input. You can think of INTR as standing for INTerrupt Request.

4. The CPU finishes any instruction it is currently executing and checks its interrupt enable flag. If interrupts are disabled (via a CLI instruction), no further action is taken, and the interrupt remains pending. If interrupts are enabled (via an STI instruction), the 8088 acknowledges the interrupt request, in effect saying, "I am now prepared to handle your interrupt." The CPU does this by sending a signal to the 8259 on INTA (INTerrupt Acknowledge).

5. The 8259 releases an 8-bit interrupt type number to the system data bus. This type number is constructed by adding the interrupt channel number—1, in this case—to a predefined base. In the PC, this base will be 8; thus, for IRQ1, the quantity released to the CPU is 9.

6. The CPU treats this quantity almost as though it were a software interrupt type; in other words, it behaves as though its next instruction was INT 9. It therefore begins executing the interrupt service routine whose address is the segment/offset address found at hex memory location 0000:0024. The flag register and CS:IP are saved, exactly as though a software INT 9 had been encountered in the code stream. The only significant difference between the CPU's behavior on a maskable interrupt and a software INT is that the CPU disables interrupts when it responds to a maskable interrupt.

Thus, in a rather roundabout way, the system executes an INT 9 instruction whenever the keyboard has information to send. One key point here is that *nowhere in the system software will you find an INT 9 instruction.* This is a hard-

ware interrupt; the combination of the IRQ1 signal and the 8259's logic causes the 8088 to suspend whatever it is doing and behave as though the next instruction were an INT 9. From that point on, of course, software takes over again. The INT 9 vector sends the CPU to an interrupt service routine which obtains the keyboard's data and handles it appropriately before returning to the interrupted program.

THE 8259'S COMPONENTS

The 8259 interrupt controller is a busy chip: It watches for interrupt requests from peripherals, maintains order by prioritizing multiple requests, keeps track of which interrupts are currently being serviced, masks unwanted requests, and more. All of this is under software control, which the remainder of this article will examine. The 8259 has many capabilities, but I will omit those not relevant to the PC. Full documentation is available from Intel (see references). Figure 3 shows a simplified block diagram of the 8259. The major blocks are as follows:

Interrupt Request Register (IRR): an 8-bit read-only register used to keep track of which peripherals are requesting attention. Bit zero corresponds to IRQ0, and so on.

The 8259 interrupt controller watches for interrupt requests from peripherals, prioritizes multiple requests, keeps track of which interrupts are currently being serviced, masks unwanted requests, and more.

In-Service Register (ISR): an 8-bit read-only register that specifies which interrupt levels are currently being serviced. Again, the bits correspond to IRQ lines. An ISR bit is set when an interrupt has been acknowledged by the CPU and the interrupt type number has been released to the system data bus.

Interrupt Mask Register (IMR): as described above, an 8-bit read/write register that is used to mask specific interrupts. A one in any bit indicates that the corresponding interrupt is masked.

Priority Resolver (PR): this important component combines the status of the IMR, the ISR, and the IRR, looks at some information it has regarding priorities, and then decides whether the *Control Logic* should assert an interrupt to the CPU via INTR.

These elements combine to control the operation of the 8259 and, hence, the entire maskable interrupt structure of the PC. In fact, what actually causes an interrupt

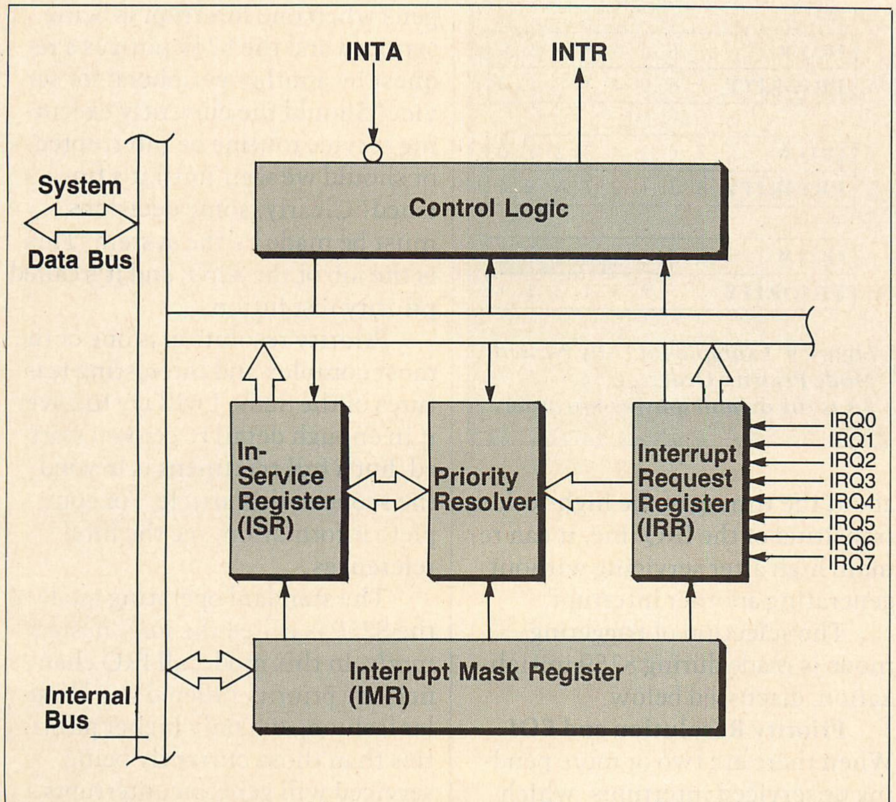


Figure 3: 8259 Programmable Interrupt Controller—Simplified Block Diagram

request to the CPU is a combination of a one in an IRR bit (peripheral requesting service), zeroes in the corresponding IMR and ISR bits (not masked, not currently in service), and a genial nod from the priority resolver.

Operation of the 8259

The operation of the 8259 can be divided into four categories: priorities, triggering, status, and vectoring. Let's look at each.

Interrupt Triggering One prerequisite for a CPU interrupt request is that an IRR bit must be set. What triggers the setting of an IRR bit? Obviously, the status of the associated IRQ line has a lot to do with it, but there's more. The 8259 has two triggering modes: level triggered and edge triggered. In the level triggered mode, an IRR bit will be set whenever its corresponding IRQ line is active. A consequence of this mode is that one

interrupt request from a peripheral can generate multiple interrupts; this will occur if the peripheral's IRQ line remains active after the interrupt service routine has signalled to the 8259 that servicing is complete. While there are uses for this mode, you probably won't have too much need for it on the PC.

The second mode, edge triggering, is the primary mode for the PC. In this mode, an IRR bit will be set only when an IRQ line makes the transition from low (inactive) to high (active). Thus, an IRQ line which goes active and remains active will generate only one interrupt because its IRR bit will be set only on the low-to-high transition. Another interrupt can only occur when the IRQ line has gone inactive and then back to active. The edge triggering mode is easier to work with from a programming standpoint for various reasons. For one thing, you need not worry

A	**IRQ #**	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	PRIORITY	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
B	**IRQ #**	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	PRIORITY	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4
C	**IRQ #**	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	PRIORITY	0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1

Figure 4: Examples of Fully Nested Mode Priority Ordering 4A is the default (power-up) order.

about the timing of the high-to-low transition of the IRQ line; it can remain high after servicing without generating another interrupt.

The selection of triggering mode is made during 8259 initialization, discussed below.

Priority Resolution and EOI

When there are two or more pending unserviced interrupts, which one gets serviced first? What happens when one interrupt is being serviced and the 8259 notices a request by another peripheral for service? Should the currently executing service routine be interrupted, or should we wait until it's finished? Clearly, some decisions must be made by the system. This is the job of the 8259, and it's called priority resolution.

Priority resolution is one of the most complex and interesting features of the 8259. I will try to cover it in enough detail to get you started, but a full treatment is beyond the scope of this article. For complete information, see the Intel references.

The standard operating mode of the 8259 is called the *fully nested mode*. In this mode, all IRQ channels are priority ordered in a circular fashion, and only higher priorities than those currently being serviced will generate interrupts. Figure 4 shows several examples of

priority ordering in the fully nested mode. In the figure, the lower the priority number, the higher the priority; thus, Priority 0 is the highest priority, and Priority 7, the lowest. Note the circularity of the priority levels. On initialization, priorities are ordered as in figure 4A, that is, IRQ0 has the highest priority, followed by IRQ1, and so on, down to IRQ7 with the lowest priority.

After the 8259 receives an interrupt acknowledgement from the CPU, it then decides which of the pending requests has the highest priority. As described shortly, the 8259 then determines the interrupt vector to be placed on the data bus for the CPU's use. Finally, it sets the corresponding ISR bit, indicating that the routine for this interrupt is currently in service.

In the fully nested mode, when an ISR bit is set, all interrupt requests of an equal or lower priority are temporarily inhibited; only requests of a higher priority will generate a CPU interrupt. For example (assuming that the scheme of figure 4A is in effect), suppose that the peripheral attached to IRQ3 has requested and been granted a CPU interrupt. As soon as the IRQ3 vector has been placed on the data bus, ISR bit 3 will be set. Until it is reset, the 8259 will not request a CPU interrupt for IRQ3 through IRQ7; only IRQ0, IRQ1, and IRQ2 will receive attention if they ask for it. It thus becomes clear that the resetting of the ISR bits is critical. It, in the

> *The resetting of ISR bits is critical, if they're to be granted interrupt servicing.*

above example, ISR bit 3 were never reset, IRQ3-IRQ7 would never be granted interrupt servicing. How does the ISR bit get reset? Through two EOI (*E*nd *O*f *I*nterrupt) commands, and one special EOI mode.

Non-Specific EOI Command. This software command tells the 8259 that the CPU has completed processing an interrupt, without specifying which one it was. The 8259 then resets the correct ISR bit. How does it perform this magic? Simple: In the fully nested mode, the service routine just completed will always be the highest priority routine of all currently active. This makes sense if you think about it for a while. If the 8259 will only generate interrupt requests for interrupts of higher priority than those currently executing, the current service routine must be the highest priority of those currently in service.

Therefore, while in fully nested mode, all you need do is issue a non-specific EOI command at the end of each service routine. The 8259 will correctly track which

routines are completed and which are not.

Specific EOI Command. In some cases (which will be described shortly), the 8259 may not be able to determine which EOI has been specified. In these cases, a specific EOI command is available; this specifies the exact ISR bit to be reset. The specific EOI command can be used at any time, even in the fully nested mode. However, the non-specific command is cleaner from a program structure point of view; you won't have to change the command if the interrupt number is changed at a later date.

Automatic EOI mode. The 8259 can be programmed into an automatic EOI mode. In this mode, the programmer does not send any EOI commands to the chip; the 8259 will automatically issue a non-specific EOI command to itself as soon as it has completed the interrupt/acknowledge sequence with the CPU. In effect, the ISR bits are reset immediately after they have been set.

The auto-EOI mode is one of two cases that destroy the fully nested mode. If the ISR bits are always reset, the interrupt controller has no way of knowing that any service routines are being executed. Thus (assuming interrupts are enabled), *any* subsequent interrupt will be serviced immediately, regardless of its priority. Automatic EOI has its share of difficulties.

When should you use automatic EOI? On the PC, probably never.

Suppose, for example, that you have programmed the 8259 into level triggering and automatic EOI, and a peripheral decides to send a continuous interrupt request over its IRQ line. The 8259 will interrupt continuously, and you'll fill 64K of stack space pretty quickly, if you haven't crashed the machine entirely.

When should you use automatic EOI? On the PC, probably never. If you do, Intel suggests leaving interrupts disabled during all service routines. Then, on return from the routine (bear in mind that the IRET will reenable interrupts), the highest priority outstanding will be serviced first.

How does one go about changing the priority ordering of the 8259? There are several means to do this: automatic rotation, specific rotation, and the special mask mode. Let's take each in turn.

ORYX SYSTEMS inc.

For complete selection of software and accessories for the IBM/PC and compatible computers.

SOFTWARE

Alpha Software
Data Base Manager II . $195
Mailing List 72
Executive Package . . . 105
Type Faces 99
Question 35
Apple — IBM Connection 130

d-BASE II CORNER

Ashton-Tate
D-Base II . . . . $ Call
Bottom Line Strategist 299
FPL 475
Friday 225

Human Soft
dB Plus . . . . $ 99

Fox & Geller
Quick Code $225
D Util 60

Software Banc
d-Base II User's Guide:
w/ d-Base II Purchase . $ 15
w/o d-Base II Purchase 20

Anderson-Bell
Abstat $349

Tylog Systems
d-Base Window $206

Central Point
Copy II PC . . . . $ 34

Compuview
Vedit 8086 CP/M 86 . . . $160
Vedit MS-DOS 130

Condor III $385

Decision Resources
Chartmaster $310

Digital Research
Concurrent CP/M 86 . . $225
CP/M - 86 50
Cobol 86 499
Pascal MT + 86 w/SPP 375
SPP 86 150
SID 86 113
C Basic 86 135

Dow Jones
Market Analyzer 279

Eco-Soft
Microstat $230

Emerging Technologies
Edix (editor) $150
Wordix (formatter) . . . 150

Graphic Software
Super Chartman II . . . 299
Super Chartman IV . . . 199
Both 350

Financier Inc.
Financier Personal Series $135
Tax Series 119

Harvard Associates
PC Logo . . . . $ Call

Hayes
Smartcom II 79

Howard Software
Creative Financing . . . $145

ICR — Future Soft
QuickPlot $299

Innovative Software
T.I.M. III $345
Fast Graphs 249

Lexisoft
Spellbinder $259

Lifetree Software
Volkswriter $135

Lotus 123 . . . . . . $ Call

Mark of the Unicorn
Mince $154
Final Word (WP) 239

Microfocus
Cobol Level II $1250

Micro Pro
WordStar . . . . $ Call
Infostar . . . . $ Call
Pak (WS/MM/SS/Index) $ Call

Microsoft
MuLisp/MuStar $199
MuMath/MuSimp 240
MS/DOS $225
Business Basic Compiler MS/DOS . . 460
MS Pascal Compiler . . 275
C Compiler 375
Basic Compiler 299
Multiplan 199

Microstuf
Cross Talk $135

Norell System Saver . $ 42

Northwest Analytical
Stat Pak $379

Oasis
The Word Plus $120
Punc & Style 99

Satellite Software
Personal Word Perfect . $149
P-Edit 75
SSI Forth (w/source code) . . . 75

Software Arts
TK! Solver $219

Software Publishing
PFS: Report . . . . $ 94
PFS: File 99
PFS: Graph . . . . $ 99
PFS: Write 99

Supersoft
C Compiler-8086 . . . . $350
Star Edit 180
Disk Edit 80
Basic Compiler 325
Fortran IV PC/DOS or 8086 325
8087 Support 40
Diagnostics II 100
Optimizer 149
Personal Data Base . . 99
Investment Tax Pac . . 160
Scratch Pad 219

Systems Plus
Landlord (prop. mgmt.) 375
Runtime Basic (req'd for above) . . . 45

Woolf Software Systems
Move it (PC to CPM &PC to PC) $109

. . . and many more.

BOARDS

AST Research
ComboPlus 64K Clock/ Calendar, Serial & Parallel, I/F, Expandable to 256K $287
MegaPlus 64K, Clock/ Calendar, Serial Port, Expandable to 512K w/Megapak 287
Extra ports available for Megaplus and I/O Plus II includes Game, Parallel & Serial 35
Megapak 256K upgrade for Megaplus . . . . $ Call
I/O Plus II Clock/Calendar and Serial Port 118

BYAD
BYAD DS-II (64K, Z80, CP/M) . . . $599

Quadram
Quadboard 64K, Clock/ Calendar, Serial & Parallel Ports, Software $296
Microfazer Stack Printer Buffer (expandable to 512K)
• Parallel/Parallel 8K . . . 145
• Parallel/Parallel 64K . . 188
• Serial/Parallel 8K 170
• Serial/Serial 8K 189
Quadlink 64K Memory, Game port allows Apple Software to run on IBM/PC. . . . $559

Tecmar Products . . . $ Call

Xedex/Microlog
Baby Blue $475

Tall Tree
512K JRAM Mem. Board $699

Display Cards Corner
Hercules Graphics Board $369
Orchid Monochrome Graphic Adapter . . . 432
Plantronics Colorplus . 389
USI Display Card (color/monochrome) $ Call
Amdek MAI Card . . . . $ Call
Tecmar Graphic Master $ Call

PEACHTREE CORNER

Peachtree Software

• PeachText 5000 Personal Productivity System. Includes: PeachText Word Processor, Random House Electronic Thesaurus, Spelling Proofreader, PeachCalc Electronic Spreadsheet and List Manager.
FREE: One box of Wabash 5¼″ Diskettes.
BONUS: A coupon to get Access Pak (Retails for $525) for only $10.00
All of the above for only $239
Call for information on other Peachtree Software.

MONITORS

Amdek Video 300A Amber $180
Amdek RGB 520
NEC 12″ Hi-Res Green . 187
Sanyo 12″ Hi-Res Green 199
USI Hi-Res 12″ Amber . 169
NEC JB-1260 Green . . 99
PGS RGB Color . . . . . $ Call
NEC JC-1203 RGB . . . 725
Quadram Quadchrome $ Call
Taxan 12″ Amber Monitor 149
Taxan 12″ Green 136
Taxan 12″ Medium RGB 323
Taxan 12″ High RGB . . 512
Taxan RGB Cable for PC 17

MODEMS

Hayes Smartmodem 300 . . . . $205
Hayes Smartmodem 1200 509
Hayes Chronograph . . 189
Novation 212 Auto-Cat . 585
US Robotics Auto-Dial (full auto 300/1200) . . 459
US Robotics Auto-Link (auto answer 300/1200) 379
US Robotics Password 395

DISK DRIVES

Tandon TM-55-2 . . . . . $275
Tandon TM-100-2 240
Davong DSI-501 Hard . $ Call
Davong DSI-512 Hard . $ Call
Davong DSI-519 Hard . $ Call
Corona 5 MG Hard Disk 1,560
Corona 10 MG Hard . . 1,995
CDC 1800 270
Corvus . . . . $ Call
Tall Grass . . . . $ Call

PRINTERS

C. Itoh Startwriter 1,350
C. Itoh Prowriter 8510 . 425
C. Itoh Prowriter 1550 . 725
NEC 3550 . . . . $ Call
NEC 8023A 475
Okidata Microline 82A . 450
Okidata Microline 83A . 675
Okidata Microline 92 . . 525
IDS Prism 80 (w/4 options) 1,399
IDS Prism 132 (w/4 options) 1,547
IDS MicroPrism 565
Silver-Reed Daisy Wheel . . . . . $ Call
Star Micronics Gemini 10X 325
Star Micronics Gemini 15 489
GE Printers . . . . $ Call
Epson FX-80 599
Transtar T-130-P 725
Transtar T-315P Color . 519
Mannesman Tally MT160 549

. . . and much more.

DISKETTES

3M 5″ DS DD Box . . . . $ 40
BASF 5″ DS DD Box . . 37
Maxell 5″ DS DD MD2 Box 40
Verbatim 5″ DS DD Box 35
Ultra Magnetics 5″ DS, DD, Bonus Box (12 diskettes) 35

PLOTTERS

Enter P100 Sweet P . . 599
Panasonic Digital Plotter . . . . $ Call
Strobe M100 Plotter (RS 232) 539

Miscellaneous

Symtec Light Pen $140
TG Joystick 49
Kraft Joystick 56
VersaWriter Tablet . . . 259
Keytronic WP Keyboard 209
Mouse Systems PC Mouse 229

GAMES

Automated Stimulation, Armonk, Avalon Hill, Blue Chip, Broderbund, Data Most, Infocom, On Line, Spinnaker Software, Sierra/On-Line, Sublogic, etc...

Please call for accessories and hardware not listed.

ORDER TOLL FREE - Outside WI - 1-800-826-1589

Please:
• Wisconsin residents — add 5% for sales tax.
• Add $3.50 for shipping per software and light items. For multiple and other items, call.
• Foreign — add 15% handling & shipping for prepayment. (Int'l money order)
• Prices subject to change without notice.
• All items subject to availability.

We welcome:
• Visa, Mastercharge & American Express — (Add 4%)
• Checks (Allow 1-2 weeks for clearing)
• COD (Add $2.00 per shipment — Cash or certified check required)

Working Hours: Mon.- Th. 8:30 - 5:30 • Fri. 8:30 - 6:30
Sat. 10:00 - 2:00 • Central Time

Store prices are strictly retail.
For technical information & in Wisconsin: 715-848-2322

ORYX SYSTEMS, INC.
205 Scott St. • P.O. Box 1961
Wausau, WI 54401

— Int'l. Telex —
260181 ORYX SYS WAU

CIRCLE NO. 181 ON READER SERVICE CARD

	IRQ #	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
A	PRIORITY	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	ISR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	IRQ #	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
B	PRIORITY	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	ISR	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
	IRQ #	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
C	PRIORITY	4	3	2	1	0	7	6	5
	ISR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 5: Effect of ROTATE ON NON-SPECIFIC EOI Command 5A: Pre-existing condition. 5B: Condition while servicing IRQ2. 5C: Condition after execution of command.

Automatic Rotation: Suppose you have a number of interrupt sources, all of which have equal priority. By necessity, each source is assigned to a specific IRQ line. Therefore, the sources attached to lower-numbered lines will have higher priorities. In a worst case scenario, the peripheral hooked to IRQ7, the lowest priority, may never get serviced, while IRQ0 has all the fun. The nice thing to do is to give everyone a fair shake by rotating priorities after each interrupt. There are a couple of ways to accomplish this.

The *rotate on non-specific EOI* command is a combination command that performs two functions. First, it resets the highest priority ISR bit currently set, just as does the simple non-specific EOI command. Second, it adjusts the priority ordering such that the interrupt channel just serviced is given the lowest priority. Figure 5 is an example of the effect of this. Suppose that the default condition is in effect: IRQ0 has the highest priority, and IRQ7 the lowest (5A). Now suppose that IRQ2 is activated and serviced (5B), and that the service routine concludes with a rotate on non-specific EOI command. The command will reset ISR bit 2, and then reorder the priorities to make IRQ2 the lowest priority (5C). If we assume that all of the peripherals are interrupting randomly, the effect of rotate on non-specific EOI will be to allow all sources to be serviced equally, regardless of the IRQ lines to which they are attached.

If you are in automatic EOI mode, you can additionally specify the *rotate in automatic EOI mode.* In this mode, a priority rotation will occur after each automatic EOI. This rotation is identical in function to the rotation occurring after the rotate on non-specific EOI command.

Specific rotation: Specific rotations allow the programmer to specify which interrupt channel has the lowest priority. There are again two ways to accomplish this.

The *set priority command* allows the programmer to tell the 8259 which IRQ line should be as-

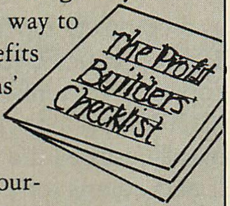
Applications Software Developers

How Whitesmiths' better system software can help you build a better bottom line.

The portability of Whitesmiths' C Compilers and Idris operating system enables you to offer your applications to a wide range of end-users without reworking your code. Just one development effort works on many architectures, because Whitesmiths' C Compilers span over 30 systems, and Idris, the most complete and portable UNIX-like system for micros, is UNIX-compatible in both directions. You can also lower costs and simplify distribution by eliminating end-users licenses using Whitesmiths' new "licensing under copyright" Authorization Seal.

SEND FOR OUR FREE BOOKLET "THE PROFIT-BUILDERS' CHECKLIST"

Our new booklet gives you a quick and easy way to check the benefits of Whitesmiths' products for your operation. See for yourself how we can cut your costs, widen your markets, and build your bottom line.



Idris is a trademark of Whitesmiths, Ltd.; UNIX is a trademark of Bell Laboratories.

Whitesmiths, Ltd.
97 Lowell Road
Concord, Mass. 01742
(617) 369-8499

NAME ______
TITLE ______
COMPANY ______
ADDRESS ______
CITY ______
STATE ______ ZIP ______
TELEPHONE ______

CIRCLE NO. 220 ON READER SERVICE CARD

How to use computers to teach math!

COMPUTERS IN MATHEMATICS:

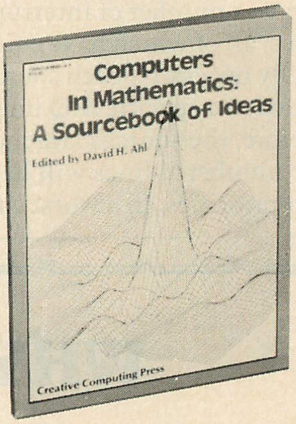
A SOURCE BOOK OF IDEAS

Now that more and more math departments have access to a microcomputer, the problem becomes: How to use the computer effectively as a teaching aid?

Here's where COMPUTERS IN MATHEMATICS can help you. This book of reprints from *Creative Computing* magazine is a goldmine of learning ideas, problem-solving strategies, programming hints, puzzles, brain teasers, and much more!

COMPUTERS IN MATHEMATICS covers nine subject areas:

- Computer literacy and computers in society.
- Thinking strategies and how to solve problems.
- Computer simulations and how to write them.
- Probability.
- Mathematical miscellany, from circular functions to differential equations.
- Art and graphics and their relation to mathematics.
- Computer Assisted Instruction (CAI).
- Programming style.
- Puzzles, problems and programming ideas.



8¼" x 11", softcover, hundreds of black-and-white diagrams and illustrations.

In all, COMPUTERS IN MATHEMATICS contains 77 fascinating articles, over 200 problems for assignment, and nearly 100 programs. Edited and with a preface by David H. Ahl, Editor-in-Chief of *Creative Computing,* this immensely practical volume is an invaluable classroom tool for teachers and students of all grades.

USE THE COUPON TO ORDER YOUR COPY TODAY!

CREATIVE COMPUTING PRESS Dept. NB2B 39 East Hanover Avenue Morris Plains, New Jersey 07950

Please send me ______ copies of COMPUTERS IN MATHEMATICS: A Sourcebook of Ideas, at $15.95, plus $2.00 postage & handling,* each. #12D

CHECK ONE: ☐ **Payment enclosed $** ______ (CA, NJ and NY STATE residents add applicable sales tax.)

☐ **Charge my:** ☐ American Express ☐ MasterCard ☐ Visa

Card No. ______ Expire Date ______

Signature ______

Mr./Mrs./Ms. ______
(please print full name)

Address ______ Apt. ______

City ______ State ______ Zip ______

*Outside USA add $3.00 per order.

For faster service, call **TOLL FREE 800-631-8112.** (In NJ call 201-540-0445.)

		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	IRQ #	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
A	**PRIORITY**	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	IRQ #	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
B	**PRIORITY**	2	1	0	7	6	5	4	3

Figure 6: Effect of SET PRIORITY Command
6A: Pre-existing condition. 6B: Condition after execution of command specifying IRQ4 as low priority.

signed the lowest priority. Figure 6 is an example. In 6A, the default condition exists; 6B shows the status after the programmer has specified IRQ4 to be the new lowest priority. (Note that the priorities are in all cases ordered—we just specify who has the highest/lowest.) The program can issue this command at any time, either in the program mainline, or during a service routine.

There's at least one possible trap here for the unwary. Suppose that a) the default ordering exists, b) the routine for IRQ6 is executing, and c) the IRQ6 routine is then interrupted by IRQ2. Figure 7A illustrates the conditions. Now further suppose that the service routine for IRQ2 issues a set priority command causing IRQ2 to be assigned the lowest priority (7B). What happens if the IRQ2 routine concludes with a non-specific EOI? Because the command causes the highest priority ISR bit to be reset, ISR bit 6 will be cleared. It's the wrong bit. Best to use the specific EOI command at the end of any service routine that issues a set priority command.

	IRQ #	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
A	**PRIORITY**	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	ISR	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0
	IRQ #	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
B	**PRIORITY**	4	3	2	1	0	7	6	5
	ISR	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0

Figure 7: Improper Use of Nonspecific EOI
7A: Service routines are currently running for IRQ6 and IRQ2. 7B: Condition after IRQ2 changes priority. Nonspecific EOI will reset bit 6 of ISR (wrong) instead of bit 2 (right).

set, and the corresponding IRQ channel is assigned the lowest priority.

Special Mask Mode: An interesting feature, the special mask mode allows the programmer to temporarily enable interrupts from levels lower in priority than those currently in service. Suppose, again, that the default ordering ex-

The second way to cause a specific rotation is to issue the *rotate on specific EOI command.* This command avoids the trap described in the last paragraph by combining two commands: set priority and specific EOI. When this command is issued, the specified ISR bit is re-

Figure 8: The Special Mask Mode

		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
A	**IRQ #**	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
A	**PRIORITY**	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
A	**ISR**	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0
A	**IMR**	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
B	**IRQ #**	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
B	**PRIORITY**	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
B	**ISR**	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0
B	**IMR**	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0

ists, and that ISR bits 4 and 6 are set. Necessarily, this means that the IRQ6 routine was being executed when IRQ4 interrupted. IRQ4 service is now in progress. All interrupts are unmasked (Figure 8A). To enter the special mask mode, we would do two things: first, set IMR bits 4 and 6; second, issue the special mask mode command (8B).

What happens? IRQ0-3, IRQ5, and IRQ7 are enabled. In other words, all IRQs are enabled *except* those that are masked. This allows, say, IRQ5—a lower priority—to interrupt the currently executing IRQ4 service routine. Pursuing this further, you might ask why this is different from simply setting and/or resetting IMR bits. And why couldn't you accomplish the same thing by issuing an EOI command early in the IRQ4 service routine? Can you use a non-specific EOI command when in the special mask mode? Intel's documentation helps with the answers.

One final point on the subject: When does priority resolution occur? Suppose, for example, that priorities are normally ordered, that the service routine for IRQ0 is executing, and that an interrupt is pending for IRQ7. What happens if the IRQ0 routine issues a set priority command specifying IRQ4 as the new low priority? You can draw yourself a priority diagram which will show that IRQ7 (which is pending) now has a higher priority than IRQ0 (which is executing). Will the IRQ7 interrupt be asserted immediately? No. Priority resolution occurs only when a) an inter-

PULL. PULL. STICK. STICK. CHANGE PERFORMANCE THAT QUICK.

What you see here is a remarkable system that will change the personality of your IBM Personal Computer. A system that makes it possible for you to use your PC to develop applications that normally require the resources of a much bigger computer. A system that quite literally transforms your computer from personal to professional. Here's how:

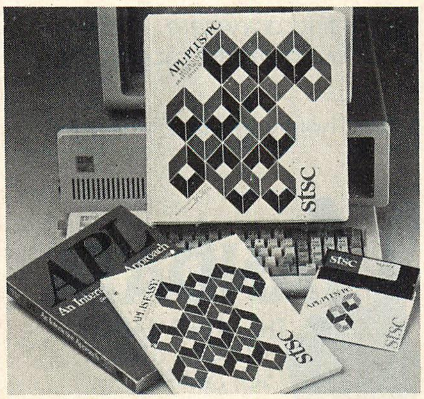
Easy As A,B,C

First you apply the character labels to your keyboard, then you plug in the custom ROM that will enable your PC to display these new characters. Third, you insert the disk and load the software to complete the change: APL★PLUS®/PC System from STSC.

Now, instead of limiting yourself to off-the-shelf spreadsheets, word processors, or slow program development in BASIC, you can develop custom solutions to problems that previously were beyond the scope of your PC.

The APL★PLUS/PC System is a complete APL language processor from STSC, the leading supplier of APL products and services for more than 14 years. It also includes STSC's business report formatting feature, communications capabilities, and data management features.

The APL★PLUS/PC System can interface to non-APL programs and data files so you can integrate your other software packages with the APL★PLUS/PC. And APL programs developed on your PC will run on other desktop computers, minis, and mainframes that support APL. Software developers may license the APL★PLUS/PC System to develop APL applications for resale using a run-time version of the system.



Everything You Need for Application Development

It's all here in our comprehensive package. In addition to the keycap labels, custom ROM, and software disk, you also get a reference manual, an introductory tutorial, and a widely used APL textbook. All for only $595.*

The APL★PLUS/PC System requires an IBM PC or IBM PC XT with PC DOS, at least 128K RAM memory, and one floppy disk drive. To order APL for your PC, call or write STSC, Inc., 2115 East Jefferson Street, Rockville, Maryland 20852, (301) 984-5123.

*U.S.A. price only.

stsc
A Contel Company

CIRCLE NO. 208 ON READER SERVICE CARD

rupt request is first received over an IRQ line from a peripheral, and b) the CPU acknowledges an interrupt request from the 8259.

Vectoring: Vectoring, the third of the four major categories of 8259 operation, is relatively uninvolved. When the CPU has acknowledged an 8259 interrupt request, the 8259 must return to the CPU an interrupt type number. This specifies where in the interrupt vector table the CPU should look for the service routine's address. Where does it get this number? It's simply an 8-bit number, whose first 5 bits are specified at initialization, and whose last 3 bits are the IRQ number to be serviced. In the PC, the 5 bits specified at initialization are 00001B. So if IRQ3 wants attention, the 8259 will construct the number starting with 00001B and ending with 011B (011 binary = 3 decimal). The result is 00001011B, or 11 decimal.

The CPU recognizes this as an interrupt type number, and multiplies it by 4 to find the absolute memory location where the service routine's address is stored. In this case, the IP portion is at location 44 (hex 0000:002C), and the CS at location 46 (hex 0000:002E).

By reinitializing the 8259, you can change the top 5 bits of the vector, but remember that the BIOS has set pointers to all of its own interrupt service routines, which must be copied into the new vector table.

Status Reporting to the CPU

The 8259 permits the programmer to ascertain the exact status of the interrupt system at any time. The contents of the three registers—IMR, IRR, and ISR—can be read, and a modified version of polling is supported.

The three register reads are straightforward (see the 8259 programming section), but the modified polling deserves a brief description. It allows use of a simplified polling mechanism to replace or augment the interrupt structure al-

Never again worry about computer theft or damage

What could be better than full replacement?
By now, you've probably heard or read about SAFEWARE℠ Insurance for microcomputers. But you may still wonder just what it protects, or whether it's really worth the investment. If you've never lost any part of your computer system or software, you probably don't yet realize the limitations of most standard insurance coverages. Or the agonies you could face in trying to recover even the simplest piece of peripheral equipment.

What do you mean it's not covered?!
Operating your computer system without SAFEWARE protection is fine as long as you don't have to worry about an accident or loss. But what if you came home one night to discover you'd been robbed? Or that a pipe had burst and caused water damage? Or that your system, too, had fallen victim to a leading destroyer of microsystems—a power surge? All events beyond your control. If something like this should happen to you, you're likely to find out the hard way just how limited your standard insurance policy's protection really is. And no matter how little or how much you have invested in your computer system, discovering that it's not covered can be an expensive lesson.

Now you can be sure
SAFEWARE was developed by an insurance professional who was shocked to learn that his very own personal computer was at risk. Can you imagine? What he discovered was that his homeowners insurance policy excluded coverage as soon as he began operating his first business program. Even his simplest spreadsheet voided coverage. Because most homeowners policies *won't cover any equipment used for business,* no matter how infrequently. Out of this need was born SAFEWARE. A simple, easy-to-understand coverage you can count on. Full replacement coverage of hardware, software and media, after a low $50 deductible.

With SAFEWARE there's no need for you to schedule equipment or software as you do with the "rider" type of policies. So your coverage can grow with your system, providing protection for its full value rather than each individual item. This will be especially important to you if you're ever planning to buy additional equipment or software. Even just one peripheral.

What the editors are saying
Desktop Computing: . . . "Given the amount of money that business users spend on computer equipment . . . it's not too farfetched to say that an insurance policy may be the most important new accessory that you could add to your desktop computer system."
Computer Decisions: . . . "Your personal computer might not be safe at home. If it is not insured, then you're running the risk of losing the thousands of dollars you've invested . . ."
Personal Computing: . . . "Replacing hardware may be more of a problem than you thought it would be . . . That's why (a computer consultant) suggests that you get the computer insured."
Wall Street Journal: . . . "Columbia National General Agency introduces a policy that covers home computers regardless of use. The usual premium: about $75 a year."

An All-Risk, no risk offer
SAFEWARE is an *All-Risk* plan of insurance, which means that it covers *all* hardware, *all* purchased software, and *all* media. Your complete system is protected against theft, fire, accidental damage, even damage sustained while the computer is being transported in your car. SAFEWARE even covers damage caused by power surges . . . the leading destroyer of microcomputers. And, now, SAFEWARE is available on a *no risk* basis. If you are not completely satisfied with the protection afforded by SAFEWARE, you may return the policy for a full refund within the first 10 days after you've received it.

Thousands have said "yes!"
Since it was first introduced in 1982, thousands of computer owners, like you, have said *"yes"* to the SAFEWARE offer. Owners of systems from the smallest portable micros to larger sophisticated business systems are finding that SAFEWARE offers the most affordable and complete security. And the simplest peace of mind available to ensure carefree computing.

The cost: pennies a day
As you can see from the table, the annual premium for a typical system consisting of a $3,000 processor, a disk drive and printer worth $1,100, and $900 in software, is just $60. And you can save even more since the cost of insurance for personal computers used for business may be tax deductible. To determine your rate of coverage, just add up your total system value. Then, find the premium in the table.

Easy to order
Choose from three simple ways to pay for your complete SAFEWARE protection: Call the toll free phone number listed and we'll charge your premium to your VISA or MasterCard. Or, you can mail us your order along with your check. Or, send us the coupon and charge your policy to your credit card.

Total Hardware, Media & Software System Value	Annual Premium
Up to $ 2,000	$ 35
$ 2,001-$ 5,000	$ 60
$ 5,001-$ 8,000	$ 75
$ 8,001-$11,000	$ 90
$11,001-$14,000	$105
$14,001-$17,000	$125
$17,001-$21,000	$140
$21,001-$24,000	$155
$24,001-$27,000	$170

Call toll free for rates on higher coverages

Not available in DC, HI, KY, LA, ME, MS, NV, SC, WY

800-848-3469
(In Ohio call 800-848-2112)
Phones open 8 a.m. to 8 p.m., Monday through Saturday

SAFEWARE™

Columbia National General Agency
88 E. Broad Street, Columbus, OH 43215

With SAFEWARE you get . . .
- Full replacement coverage.
- Freedom from worries of fire, theft or accident.
- Ultimate in power surge protection.
- Costs as low as $35 a year.

Yes, my computer needs immediate protection.
Please issue my SAFEWARE Insurance Policy.

Name ____________
Street ____________
City ____________
State ______ Zip ______
System value $ ____________
☐ Check Enclosed ☐ VISA
☐ MasterCard
Card # ____________
Exp. Date ____________

No risk. You may return policy for full refund within 10 days. Coverages and limits are subject to the terms, conditions and exclusions in the policy.

Mail to: SAFEWARE, P.O. Box 02211, Columbus, OH 43202
PCT

CIRCLE NO. 237 ON READER SERVICE CARD

ready provided.

To employ polling, issue a *poll command* to the 8259, with processor interrupts disabled. Following this command, the 8259 will treat the next read pulse to the chip (i.e., the next INput instruction addressed to the 8259) as though it were an INTA pulse—an interrupt acknowledge. Thus, if there are any unserviced interrupt requests from peripherals, the highest priority of these will be considered to be in service, and its ISR bit will be set. The 8259 will then place a special status word on the system data bus (which the INput will read). Bit 7 of this word, if one, indicates that an interrupt request is present; if bit 7 is one, bits 0-2 contain the IRQ number of the interrupt to be serviced.

In other words, in the polling mode, the 8259 will give you the IRQ number of the highest priority interrupt request outstanding and will consider that request to be in service. Note that the interrupt vector is *not* specified by the 8259; it is up to the programmer to route execution to the appropriate service routine. In this way, no interrupt vector table is needed.

Before we turn to 8259 programming, a caution: IRQ0 and IRQ1 are both on the system board, while IRQ2-7 are in the I/O channel (i.e., available to each of the peripheral slots.) This means IRQ0-1 are permanently assigned to the system timer and keyboard, respectively, while IRQ2-7 are at the mercies of peripheral card designers. There is nothing sacred about IRQ6, for example. The diskette adapter is wired so that, when it asserts an interrupt, it uses the IRQ6 line. It could have been designed to use any of IRQ2-7. Any other card could also use IRQ6. We'll just have to assume that the peripheral card designers will try to make life easier by maintaining consistency.

8259 Programming—Initialization

The 8088 CPU programs the inter-

rupt controller by using OUTput instructions. That is, the 8259 is addressed by the 8088 as an I/O device; in the PC, it is located at ports 20H and 21H. Once again, following descriptions pertain only to the PC.

There are two general types of operation codes issued to the 8259: initialization control codes and operation control codes.

The initialization is a sequence of 3 bytes OUTput to the 8259. These bytes specify the chip's basic operating mode; they are called ICW1, ICW2, and ICW4 (*I*nitialization *C*ommand *W*ords; ICW3 is not used on the PC). The ICW's are illustrated in Figure 9. They work as follows:

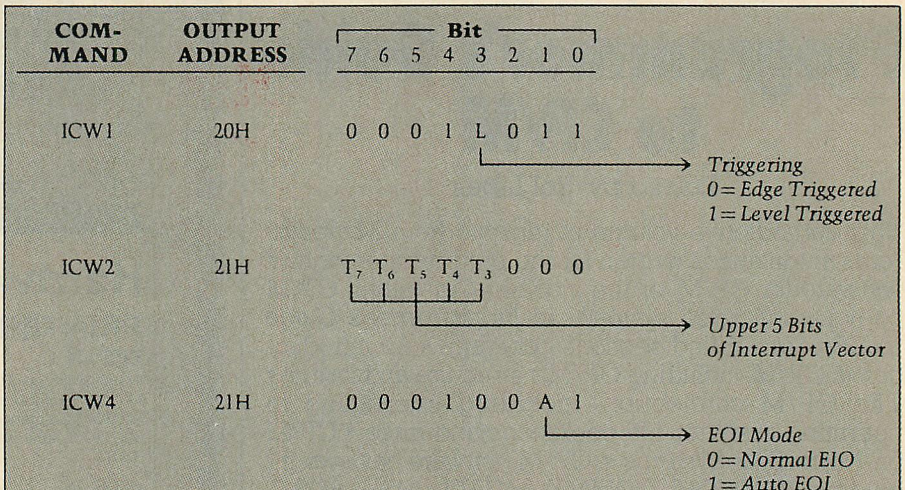


Figure 9: Initialization Command Words

ICW1: this byte (OUTput to port 20H) specifies the triggering mode. The only optional bit (bear in mind that this is true for the PC's configuration only) is the L bit; a one indicates level triggering, and a zero indicates edge triggering. To program the 8259's triggering mode, place 00010011B in register AL for edge, or 0011011B for level, triggering, and then execute an output instruction to port 20H. The standard mode for the PC (edge triggering) would be set up as follows:

MOV AL,00010011B OUT 20H,AL

ICW2: this byte (output to port 21H) partially specifies the interrupt type. The five T bits constitute the upper five bits of the interrupt vector supplied by the 8259 to the 8088 when an interrupt request is acknowledged. Refer back to the section on vectoring if this isn't clear. In the standard PC mode,

NEWS FOR BUSINESS USERS OF IBM MINI'S...

Announcing DBA 34/36... the RPGII Data Base

5 Reasons Why DBA 34/36 Will Increase the Facility, Speed, Accuracy and Flexibility of Your Information Processing and Lower Your New Business Applications Costs

Now there is a true data base management system (DBMS) for IBM System 34 and 36 users which organizes computer files into a single, coordinated information bank that is accessible in a variety of logical groupings—DBA 34/36 from Fits Systems Inc. Here are five reasons why you should be using it with your mini:

1. DBA 34/36 is the only data base management system designed for both the IBM System 34 and the new System 36—a true data base, not just a scaled-down version of mainframe software or retrieval tool.

2. DBA 34/36 makes it easy to define and produce recurring reports including simple user-defined calculations. All requisite support programs, including Data Base Maintenance, a powerful Universal Inquiry Program. RPG II Interface and a Report Generator come with the package.

3. Because DBA 34/36 is written in RPG II, your programmers can adapt any of its calling subroutines into your own programs, significantly reducing programming time for new applications.

4. DBA 34/36 can be up-and-running in less than a week because it does not change existing files. Instead, DBA 34/36 creates an external structure that manages references to your files with remarkable efficiency. An experienced programmer can install DBA 34/36 and have it running inquiry against your files in just a few days.

5. No schooling is required—your staff will quickly become proficient with DBA 34/36 by simply using the "user friendly" manual supplied with the package. The manual describes installation procedures and includes complete instructions for tailoring DBA 34/36's functions to reference the files selected for installation.

You Can Try DBA 34/36 For 45 Days FREE

We offer qualified users a free 45 day trial of DBA 34/36 in order to demonstrate what it can do for you. We'll send you a copy of the software, and complete installation documentation, for a 45 day free trial to use on your own system. We think you'll wonder how you ever did without it—but, if you're not completely satisfied, simply return the package—there's no further obligation.

Free Demonstration Disk Available

FITS

Casey Stern, Vice President
FITS Systems, Inc.
DBA Department
65 West Red Oak Lane
White Plains, N.Y. 10604
212-269-5540 • 914-694-1554

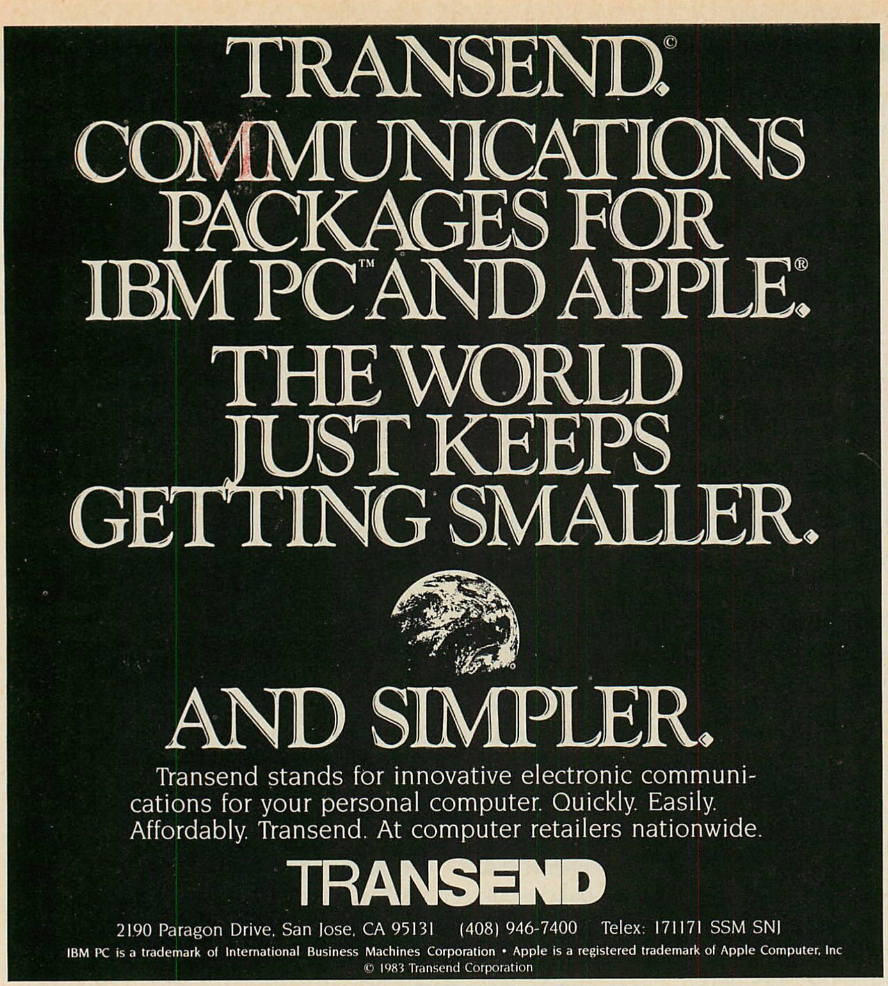
☐ YES, I'm interested in your DBA 34/36 Software Package.

Please send me:
☐ FREE DEMO DISC which illustrates DBA 34/36
☐ COMPLETE PACKAGE for 45-day free trial
☐ MORE INFORMATION—have a sales rep contact me.

Name__________ Title__________
Company__________
Address__________
City______ State______ Zip______
Telephone ( )______ Best Time______

Mail This Coupon Or Call (914) 694-1554

CIRCLE NO. 249 ON READER SERVICE CARD



these five bits are 00001, so ICW2 is specified as

MOV AL,00001000B OUT 21H,AL

ICW4: the final initialization byte (output to port 21H) sets the EOI mode. A one in the A bit puts the 8259 into automatic EOI, and a zero indicates normal EOI. Move 00010001B to reg AL for normal EOI, or 00010011B for auto EOI, and then

OUT 21H,AL

That takes care of initializing the chip. You can reinitialize it any time you want by resending the sequence. You must, however, always send all three bytes in order: ICW1, ICW2, ICW4. Also, bear in mind that the following is done whenever the 8259 receives the initialization sequence:

1. The ISR is cleared to all zeroes.

2. The IMR is cleared to all zeroes.

3. The special mask mode is reset.

4. The rotate in automatic EOI mode is cleared.

5. The priority sequence is reset to default: IRQ0 has the highest priority, IRQ7 the lowest.

6. The edge sense latch is cleared for each IRQ input. This means that, if you select the edge triggered mode, a low-to-high transition on the IRQ lines must occur before an interrupt request will be generated.

7. The IRR is selected for register reads (see OCW3 below).

8259 Programming—Operations

After initialization, there are three operational controls which can be issued to the 8259 at any time. These are called OCW's (Operational Command Words), and they are illustrated in figure 10.

OCW1: This OCW is simply a link to the IMR (the mask register). Unlike the other OCW's, it has no prespecified bit record; its eight bits

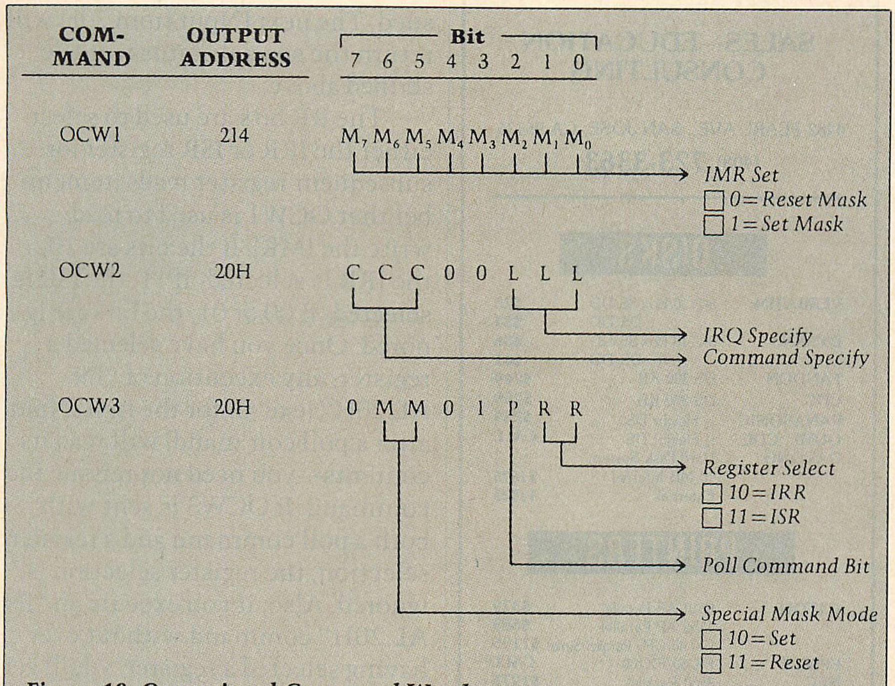


Figure 10: Operational Command Words

correspond directly to the bits of the IMR. To write the contents of the IMR, simply use the command

OUT 21H,AL

where register AL contains the bit pattern you want written to the IMR. For example, if you want to mask IRQ0 (the system timer), use the following code:

MOV AL,00000001B OUT 21H,AL

OCW2: This command (OUTput to port 20H) is used to modify priorities and to send EOI signals to the 8259. The three CCC bits specify which command is being sent. In cases where the command requires that an IR2 number be specified. (The three commands marked with asterisks in Figure 11), the LLL bits are used for that purpose. The CCC and LLL decode is shown in Figure 11.

A couple of examples to clarify OCW2:

1. Send a non-specific EOI to the 8259. (This is what you normally would do at the end of an interrupt service routine.) The CCC bits for non-specific EOI are 001; since non-specific EOI does not require that an IRQ be named, the LLL bits are "don't cares." So the code for a normal EOI is

MOV AL,00100000B OUT 20H,AL

2. Send a specific EOI command, clearing ISR bit 7. The CCC bits for specific EOI are 011. In this case, an interrupt level must be named, so the LLL bits are used. To specify bit 7, LLL will be 111:

MOV AL,01100111B OUT 20H,AL

3. Modify priority sequence, giving IRQ4 the lowest priority. The CCC bits for set priority are 110, and 100 will specify IRQ4:

MOV AL,11000100B OUT 20H,AL

OCW3: The last operational command word is used to read the ISR and IRR registers, to issue the poll command, and to set/reset the special mask mode. It is output to port 20H.

The two MM bits are used to set/reset the special mask mode. If the bits are 10, the special mask mode is reset; if they are 11, the mode is set; if they are 00 or 01, the bits are ignored.

The P bit is the poll command bit. If it is 1, the poll command is is-

sued. The next INput from 20H will return the special status word described above.

The RR bits are used to select either the IRR or ISR register for subsequent register reads (remember that OCW1 is used to read/write the IMR). If the bits are 10, the IRR is selected; if 11, the ISR is selected; if 00 or 01, the bits are ignored. Once you have selected a register, any execution of "IN AL,20H" (except for the first INput after a poll command) will read its contents—you need not reissue the command. If OCW3 is sent with both a poll command and a register selection, the register selection is ignored. Also, if you execute an "IN AL,20H" command without ever having selected a register, you'll get the IRR.

Here are some examples:

1. Select the ISR register for subsequent reads:

MOV AL,00001011B OUT 20H,AL

2. Select the IRR register for subsequent reads:

MOV AL,00001010B OUT 20H,AL

3. Read the reg selected via example 1 or 2:

IN AL,20H

4. Issue the poll command and read the results:

MOV AL,00001100B OUT 20H,AL
IN AL,20H

5. Set the special mask mode:

MOV AL,01101000B OUT 20H,AL

6. Reset the special mask mode:

MOV AL,01001000B OUT 20H,AL

CONCLUSION

That's about everything you need to know regarding the 8259A Programmable Interrupt Controller. I do want to stress that I have not attempted to cover all of its features, and that I have also simplified some of its operations. If you are interested in an in-depth discussion of the chip, read the Intel AP-59 note mentioned in the references. It's ex-

```
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
C C C X X L L L
```

000 = Clear rotate in auto-EOI mode
001 = Nonspecific EOI command
010 = No operation
011 = Specific EOI command*
100 = Set rotate in auto-EOI mode
101 = Rotate on nonspecific EOI command
110 = Set priority command*
111 = Rotate on specific EOI command*

000 = IRQ0
001 = IRQ1
010 = IRQ2
011 = IRQ3
100 = IRQ4
101 = IRQ5
110 = IRQ6
111 = IRQ7

Figure 11: OCW3 Decoding. Commands without asterisks ignore LLL bits.

cellent, and is the source of virtually everything you have read above.

In Part II, we'll put into practice some of the things that were covered herein.

REFERENCES

1. *Technical Reference.* IBM Corporation, P. O. Box 1328, Boca Raton, Florida 33432.

2. *iAPX 86,88 User's Manual.* Intel Corporation, Literature Department SV3-3, 3065 Bowers Avenue, Santa Clara, California 95051.

3. "Using the 8259A Programmable Interrupt Controller". Application Note AP-59, Intel Corporation (available separately or included in *User's Manual*).

Chris Dunford is an independent consultant specializing in financial applications and technical services for personal computers in business.

QUIZ TIME!

Now that we've covered quite a bit of the interrupt structure of the PC, let's take a look at an annoying problem in DOS's DEBUG program. It's a problem that involves the interrupt system.

You may have noticed that DEBUG occasionally goes into outer space during the Trace operation (single-stepping). The symptom is a register display which shows an execution address that has nothing to do with the program you are debugging, followed by a refusal to accept any keyboard input. It's necessary to reboot the machine to regain control.

The problem has to do with an error in interrupt handling during single stepping. If the system clock (via the 8259) causes INTR to go active while an instruction is executing with the trap (single step) flag set, the 8088 will acknowledge the interrupt request. The flags and CS:IP are pushed onto the stack, interrupts are disabled, and the CS:IP values for the timer service routine are loaded from the vector table. At this point, *before the timer service routine is executed,* the CPU recognizes the single step interrupt. The flags and CS:IP are pushed again, and DEBUG's single step service routine is executed. The routine enables interrupts, displays the register contents (getting CS:IP from the stack!), and waits for the next user command.

Three questions: why can't DEBUG get anything from the keyboard? What should DEBUG have done before executing the single-stepped instruction? What can you do to partially remedy the problem WITHOUT PATCHING DEBUG? You have 15 seconds...begin.

Ready? First answer: DEBUG can't get input because ISR bit 0 is set. The keyboard is wired to IRQ1, which has a lower priority, so the 8259 won't pass along a keyboard interrupt request. Second answer: DEBUG could have avoided the problem with one additional byte—a CLI instruction executed just before single stepping. Third answer: before executing DEBUG, rotate priorities so that IRQ0 has the lowest priority. If the error situation occurs, the clock will get no further service, the CS:IP values in the register display will be wrong, and there will be six extra bytes on the stack, but at least the keyboard won't be dead. I did say it was a partial fix...

If your thirst for technology is combined with an interest in the IBM Personal

ANNOUNCING

TECH PC JOURNAL

FOR IBM PERSONAL COMPUTER USERS

To The Limits... And Beyond

As you well know, the IBM Personal Computer is proving to be the success story of the 1980s. Only 18 months after its introduction, the IBM Personal Computer commands almost a fifth of all personal computer sales—a remarkable achievement. At present the number of IBM Personal Computers in users' hands exceeds a quarter-million, with perhaps as many as half a million on the way in the next 12 months.

But despite its widespread public acceptance and the wealth of products now available to support it, we are convinced that *vast areas of its potential remain unexplored,* not to mention those products waiting to be introduced for which the IBM Personal Computer is the precursor.

For those serious enough about microcomputers to accept the challenge, the IBM Personal Computer represents a host of untapped possibilities.

For those with a genuine appetite for technology, there are ways of stretching the IBM Personal Computer to the very limits of its specifications. Ways to willfully expand those specifications...to throw light into the dark recesses of its complex software systems. Ways to enlarge our understanding of the equipment and to *increase its usefulness.*

If this sounds appealing, then *PC Tech Journal* is for you. For it will be the definitive source of authoritative, technically-satisfying information about your IBM Personal Computer, its future transformations and the host of products developed to support it.

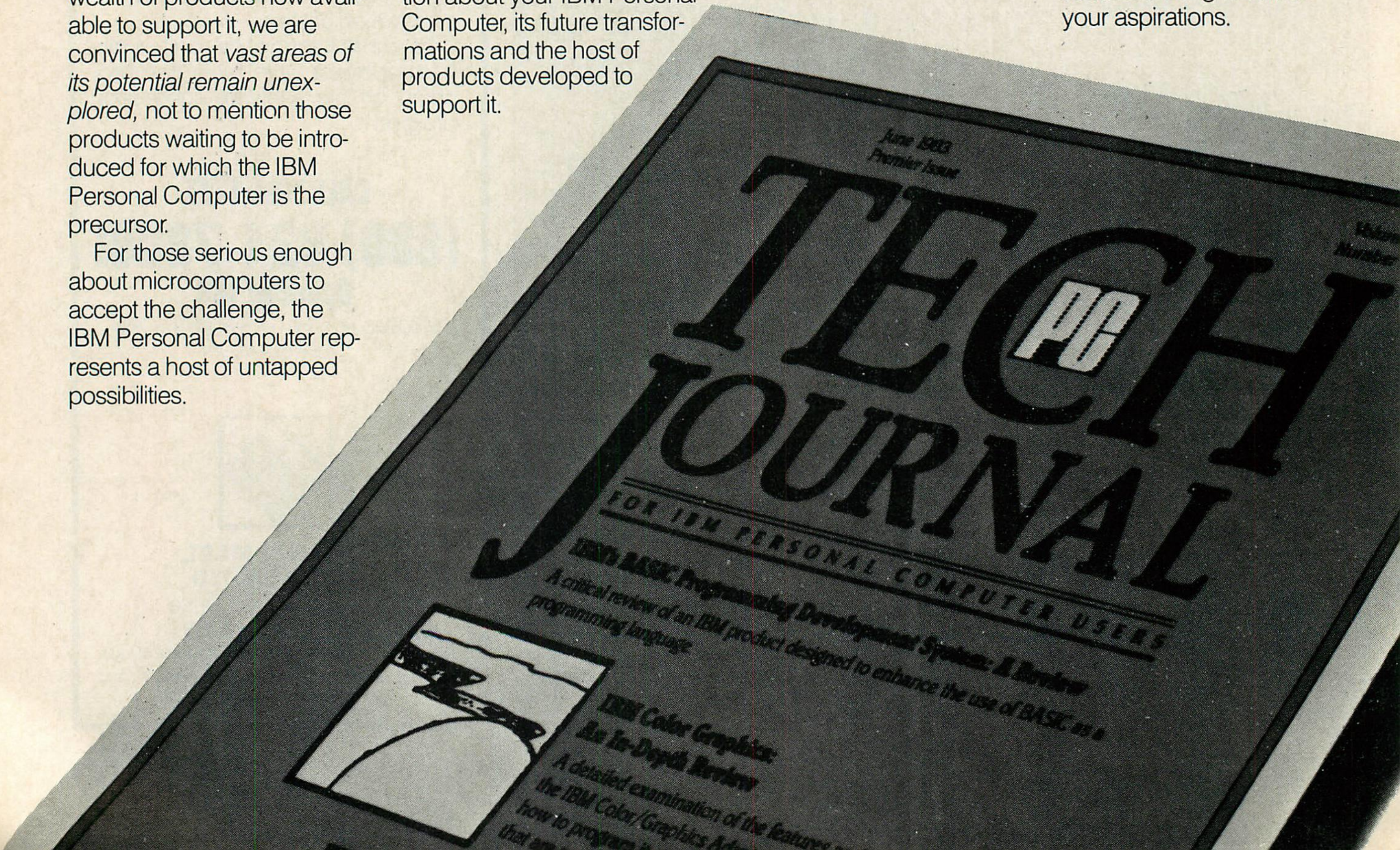
Why a Technical Journal?

The readership of *PC* Magazine has, in the last year, grown at a rate to match the success of the IBM Personal Computer itself. But as the number of committed readers has expanded, so has that portion of users who are not only interested in *output*—that is, using the IBM Personal Computer to better solve problems—but who care deeply about the *process* of the computer itself.

We consider you to be among that select group of readers. Your relationship with microcomputers, vocational or otherwise, has led you to levels of technical competence and curiosity which go far beyond problem-solving. In effect, you have a compelling interest not only in *what* your IBM Personal Computer does, but also *how* it does it and how it can do more.

For you, technological sophistication is a welcome challenge, perhaps even something of an adventure.

In both its depth and breadth of applicable sophistication, we are confident that you will find *PC Tech Journal* a fitting match for your aspirations.



Computer you will want to take part in exploring its vast technological landscape.

Enroll now as a Charter Subscriber at a special Charter rate ...and get your own copy of our Premiere Issue.

A Select Audience

Needless to say, *PC Tech Journal* is not for everyone. But among *PC* Magazine's current audience is a sizable segment where *PC Tech Journal* will find an active, committed readership:

Practicing professional developers who will want to read the *Tech Journal* for information they can't find anywhere else.

Serious programmers—both full-time professionals and non-professionals alike—with a clear interest in expanding the range and utility of software compatible with the IBM Personal Computer.

Management and staff serving in MIS and DP roles with a requirement for intimate knowledge of the working processes of their companies' IBM Personal Computers.

Independent businessmen and professionals who understand the increased benefits of tailoring their IBM Personal Computers to their own specific demands.

Members of the scientific and academic community whose ability and training allow them to enhance their use of their IBM Personal Computer.

And, of course, anyone with a genuine appetite for state-of-the-art information about the emerging possibilities presented by the IBM Personal Computer.

A Menu for Technical Gourmets

Under the leadership of Editor-in-Chief Will Fastie, author of the widely respected "IBM Images" column in Creative Computing Magazine, we've assembled a staff and a stable of regular contributors all with just the sort of demonstrated expertise you'd expect from *PC Tech Journal.*

Every bimonthly issue will be filled with useful articles on subjects such as...

- *How to fully exploit—or, if necessary, avoid—the complexities of BIOS, the IBM Personal Computer's installed firmware.*
- *Detailed examinations of component hardware available for the IBM Personal Computer, including multifunction cards, display devices, laboratory data acquisition equipment and voice recognition and synthesis devices.*
- *Elegant programming methodologies which exploit the IBM Personal Computer's various operating system environments, plus reviews of new operating environments.*
- *Evaluation of the IBM Personal Computer's communications protocols and standards, including a detailed discussion of computer-to-computer interconnection, terminal emulation and distributed data processing.*
- *Plus a range of articles on networks, mass storage and important user development tools.*

Moreover, as *PC Tech Journal* evolves, it is our explicit intent that you, our readers, play an important part in shaping the magazine. For we are convinced that it will be you who shape the future usefulness of the IBM Personal Computer itself.

To that end, we will make a special effort to involve you in the focus of the magazine, listening to your needs and together forging workable technical solutions to fully take advantage of IBM's revolutionary Personal Computer.

Charter Subscription Offer

Just fill in and mail the coupon or the attached card. We'll enroll you as a Charter Subscriber, send your Premiere Issue and bill you at the special introductory price—a discount of up to 33% (based on the full one-year subscription price.)

PC TECH JOURNAL
P.O. Box 598 Morris Plains, New Jersey 07950

4S044

☐ Yes. Please enroll me as a Charter Subscriber to *PC Tech Journal.*

☐ One year (6 issues) only $19.97—20% off!
☐ Two years only $36.97—26% off!
☐ Three years only $49.97—33% off!

Savings based on full one-year subscription price of $24.97.
CHECK ONE: ☐ Payment enclosed. ☐ Bill me later.

Mr./Mrs./Ms.____________________
(please print full name)

Company____________________

Address____________________

City____________________

State________________ Zip________

TECH NOTEBOOK 9

Filename Extensions

A useful reference for the most commonly used filename extensions in PC-DOS

ARTHUR A. GLECKLER

In PC-DOS, a large number of filename extensions have become standard and widely used. Software developers and users alike should be aware of these conventions in order to avoid confusion and conflict. Here is a list of some of the most commonly used extensions:

$$$	DOS 2.0 %PIPE# file; used by DOS 2.0 to send the output of one program to be used as input for another program; can be seen by typing dir:dir in the root directory
AIO	APL file transfer format
APL	APL workspace format
ARF	Automatic response file used by IBM's BASIC, COBOL, and FORTRAN compilers; similar in usage to batch file
ASM	Assembly language source code (in ASCII format) to be used by the IBM MacroAssembler
BAK	Backup file for edlin (in ASCII format); edlin renames original file to filename.BAK, then saves the edited file under the old name
BAS	BASIC language program; may be in ASCII format with Ctrl-Z terminator or in BASIC special format
BAT	Batch (job control language) file; in ASCII format
BIN	Binary format file; used to store exact memory images
CAL	SuperCalc spreadsheet datafile format
CHK	File produced by CHKDSK/f when problems with a disk are found and user requests an attempt at recovery of lost information. .CHK files are the recovered information.
CMD	dBase II command file
COB	COBOL source program
COD	Compiled assembly code source listing file from the IBM FORTRAN and Pascal compilers
COL	MultiPlan spreadsheet datafile format
COM	Machine language programs and non-resident DOS commands
CRF	Cross-reference information generated by the IBM MacroAssembler for use by a cross-reference utility
DAT	Program data
DBF	Database file from dBase II
DEV	Device file - in DOS 2.0 CONFIG.SYS file
DIF	VisiCalc data interchange format
EXE	Executable, relocatable code produced by LINK
FOR	Fortran source program
FRM	dBase II report form files
HEX	Causes DEBUG to treat a file as an ASCII file of hexadecimal numbers and convert the numbers to binary as it loads them
HLP	Help information file
IMP	Implementation files for IBM Pascal units
INT	Interface files for IBM Pascal units
LIB	Library file; used by the linker to locate library module files
LST	Program listing generated by an the IBM MacroAssembler; similar to source (.ASM) listing, but includes assembled code in hexadecimal notation, etc.; in ASCII format
MAP	Default extension for list file created by LINK
MEM	dBase II memory file
MSG	MultiPlan message file
NDX	dBase II index file
OBJ	Object code modules produced by compilers and assemblers and used as input to the linker
OVL	Program segment created by the linker when linking a segmented program
OVR	Overlay file
PAS	Pascal source program
PRF	VisiCalc print format
PRG	dBase II program file (same as .CMD files in CP/M)
REF	Printable cross-reference listing generated by a cross–reference utility using information in .CRF file
SYS	DOS System file; used for CONFIG.SYS system configuration file
TMP	Temporary file
TXT	ASCII text files, sometimes used for ASCII output from a word processor
VC	VisiCalc normal spreadsheet datafile format

1984 Business Activity Planner

Imagine! A complete Appointment Book, Financial Record Keeping System, Travel Information Guide, Health and Fitness Aid and Directory... All in one book!

No matter how organized and successful you are today, our Planner will make you even better in the future... or your money back!

IT'S A GREAT GIFT IDEA, TOO!

IT'S AN APPOINTMENT BOOK!
SEE-A-WEEK CALENDAR
■ A full week... at a glance! Time planning becomes easy when your appointments, meetings, luncheon and dinner engagements and special activities are in front of you.

HALF-HOUR TIME SCHEDULING
■ Convenient scheduling... seven days a week.

THINGS TO DO TODAY
■ Keep track of important follow-ups, telephone calls and correspondence.

SEVEN SNAP-LOCK RINGS
■ The seven ring format insures that your pages won't pull out... unless you want them to!

BEAUTIFUL, SOFT, LEATHER-LIKE BINDER
■ Padded front and back, your 9½ x 11½ Planner is comfortable to carry. You can take it with you wherever you go. The sturdy, permanent bookmark always keeps you in the right week and the two inside pockets enable you to keep all your important papers in your **1984 Activity Planner.**

YOUR CHOICE OF IMPRINTS
■ Order the 1984 Business Activity Planner for everyone in your office ... and select the cover imprint for each person! Available with Business Activity Planner, Chairman of the Board Activity Planner, Executive Woman Activity Planner, or Executive Activity Planner.

IT'S MUCH MORE!
■ Each Section is Index-Tabbed for Instant Retrieval of Information.

FINANCIAL RECORD KEEPER
■ 12 Income and Expense Reports
■ 1984 Business Tax Calendar
■ Executive Compensation Checklist
■ Personal Investment Portfolio

HEALTH AND FITNESS AID
■ Fat - Cholesterol - Calorie Charts
■ Value of Various Exercises
■ Substitution Chart for Better Health
■ First Aid Tips

TRAVEL INFORMATION
■ Average Temperatures for Most Major Cities
■ Rank and Population of the Top 100 U.S. Cities
■ Traveling Distances
■ Toll-Free Telephone Numbers for Major Airlines, Auto Rentals, Hotels, Motels and much more!

MISCELLANEOUS
This section is filled with valuable information including Principal Holidays, French and California Wine Vintage Charts and more.

DIRECTORY
Places all emergency and important telephone numbers at your fingertips.

ZIFF-DAVIS ACTIVITY PLANNER P.O. Box 16-2354, Miami, FL 33116
Please send me the following 1984 Activity Planners at $38.95* each plus $5 per copy postage and handling. Outside U.S.A. add $10 per copy postage and handling.

Specify quantity for each cover imprint ordered:
____ Business Activity Planner(s)
____ Chairman of the Board Activity Planner(s)
____ Executive Woman Activity Planner(s)
____ Executive Activity Planner(s)

QUANTITY DISCOUNTS
(on total number of Planners)

6–20	10% off	($4 P&H each)
21–50	15% off	($3 P&H each)
51–or more	20% off	($2 P&H each)

☐ Payment enclosed. ☐ American Express ☐ Visa ☐ MasterCard ☐ Purchase Order enclosed.

Card No. ____________ Exp. Date ______

Signature ____________

Name ____________
(please print)

Company ____________

Address ____________

City/State/Zip ____________

*Florida residents add 5% sales tax.
SATISFACTION GUARANTEED or return within 10 days for a prompt refund!
TJ11

FOR FASTER SERVICE CALL TOLL FREE 800-327-1969
(In Fla. and Canada call (305) 595-8744.)

TECH RELEASES

A recent month's accumulation of developments for the PC.

MARJORY SPRAYCAR
AND GINA MARANTO

SOFTWARE

OMNILINK from On-Line Software International links PCs to IBM mainframes and is part of the of the OMNIMICRO package, which is an applications generator and query language program. Major components of OMNILINK are OMNICOM, electronic mail software running on IBM's CICS teleprocessing monitor, OMNIQUERY, which allows first-time users to extract selectively data from the mainframe and distribute the information for processing on a PC, and OMNIGUARD, an adaptation of its existing GUARDIAN CICS-based security system.

OMNIMICRO is $28,000 for DOS systems and $35,000 for OS systems.

ON-LINE SOFTWARE INTERANTIONAL
Fort Lee Executive Park
Two Executive Drive
Fort Lee, NJ 07024.
800-526-0272 or in New Jersey 201-592-0009.

CIRCLE 469 ON READER SERVICE CARD

mbp Software and Systems Technology, Inc. has added compatibility with PC-DOS 2.0 and IBM PC and XT to its COBOL Compiler. The new version gives COBOL programmers increased execution performance by generating native machine language object code. The ANSI '74 Level II mbp COBOL also offers multi-keyed ISAM, Dynamic Assign options, and numerous extensions to the COBOL standard. $500.

mbp SOFTWARE AND SYSTEMS TECHNOLOGY, INC.
7700 Edgewater Dr.
Suite 360
Oakland, CA 94621.
415-632-1555.

CIRCLE 470 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Electronic Circuit Analysis (ECA) from Westico, the Software Express Service, may be of interest to science and engineering fields. It can analyze circuits of up to 64 nodes and 127 branches. For electrical engineers it is an alternative to bread boarding, testing, and measuring for the design of new electronic circuits. It is available for CP/M-80, MS DOS and PC DOS-compatible computers. $150.

WESTICO
25 Van Zant St.
Norwalk, CT 06855.
203-853-6880

CIRCLE 471 ON READER SERVICE CARD

A Pascal compiler, SBB Pascal™, is the first product to be released by **Software Building Blocks, Inc.,** of Ithaca, NY. SBB Pascal is a two-pass, locally optimizing Pascal compiler for the IBM PC. The compiler package includes an interactive Pascal debugger, written in SBB Pascal, designed to aid in isolating and correcting faults in Pascal programs. $4350.

SOFTWARE BUILDING BLOCKS, INC.
P.O. Box 119
Ithaca, NY 14851
607-272-2807

CIRCLE 472 ON READER SERVICE CARD

PLEASE from VM Personal Computing, Inc. (VMPC) allows transmission of data files between the IBM PC and any VM/CMS mainframe system. Used in conjunction with IBM PCs running VMPC's RELAY communications software package, PLEASE allows uploading and downloading of any format data over normal asynchronous telephone lines with full error detection and correction in both directions. It can accommodate either text or data files of any length or format. Personal PLEASE, which supports a single copy of RELAY, is $99. Corporate PLEASE, which supports multiple copies of RELAY, is $1495.

VMPC
60 East 42nd Street
New York, NY 10165
212-637-4747
Outside New York State call 800-847-3529

CIRCLE 473 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Context Management Systems now has Version 2 of its Context MBA software package, and it runs on all versions of the IBM PC, including the XT. The new program combines telecommunications, business graphics, financial analysis, word processing, data management and custom forms design into a single integrated software package. Context is providing Version 1 owners with a new package at no extra cost. $695.

CONTEXT MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS
1901 Avenue of the Stars
Los Angeles, CA 90067
213-557-1331

CIRCLE 474 ON READER SERVICE CARD

FAST FACTS from Innovative Software is an executive filing system/ report writing program that runs on both monochrome and color machines. It can write information to other spreadsheet programs like VisiCalc, 1-2-3, and MultiPlan in a DIF format, and it interfaces with WordStar. An interface with Fast Graphs is also included for drawing charts and graphs. FAST FACTS allows 1,000 forms per file, up to 50 pages per form, and 100 items per page. A page is one screen 80-columns wide and 20 rows long. It requires two disk drives and 128K of RAM. $195.

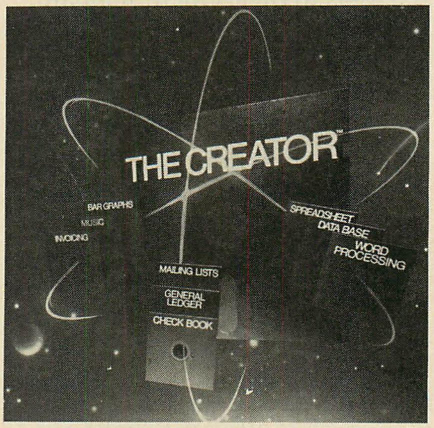
INNOVATIVE SOFTWARE, INC.
9300 W. 110th Street
Suite 380
Overland Park, KS 66210
913-383-1089

CIRCLE 475 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Taurus Software Corp. now has its CP+ for the PC. CP+ is actually three products: a computer-aided instruction tutorial on the basic operations of a personal computer; an English-language front-end interface suitable for novice or non-technical users, and a package of file management utilities. Version 2.0 of CP+ is a smaller, faster implementation of the product with several new features including START+, which allows the dealer, OEM, or end-user to integrate a major application package through a customizable menu screen. $200/ 16-bit version; $150 for 8-bit version.

TAURUS SOFTWARE CORP.
3865 Mt. Diablo Blvd.
Lafayette, CA 94549
415-283-7222

CIRCLE 476 ON READER SERVICE CARD



The CREATOR™ from Software Technology for Computers, Inc. is a new software package for personal computers designed to enable any user to tailor a variety of applications to his particular requirements—with virtually no programming knowledge. With the CREATOR loaded in the PC, a user selects one of ten ready-to-customize work areas and then answers simple English-language questions that appear in a logical step-by-step process on his screen. THE CREATOR does the programming and the custom application is completed and ready to use in as few as ten minutes. $300.

SOFTWARE TECHNOLOGY FOR OCMPUTERS, INC.
Park Square Bldg.
Boston, MA 02116
617-357-1900

CIRCLE 477 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Modula-2 from Volitions Systems, Niklaus Wirth's new programming language, is now available as part of a complete software system based on a version II UCSD Pascal™. The new system includes a comprehensive module library, Modula-2 compiler, and tutorial programs designed to bring Pascal programmers up to speed on Modula-2 in a matter of hours. All the attractive features of Modula-2 are provided: low-level machine access, real-time control, concurrent processes, and type-secure separate compilation with automatic version control. Real number and transcendental mathematical support is provided directly by the 8087 numerics processor. The complete Modula-2 system includes Pascal and Modula-2 compilers, module library, the Advanced System Editor (ASE), p-NIX command shell, and a complete set of utility programs. $595.

VOLITION SYSTEMS
P.O. Box 1236
Del Mar, CA
619-481-2286

CIRCLE 478 ON READER SERVICE CARD

BASIC87 from Field Computer Products is now available for the BASIC Compiler. It is a full "primitive" library that allows users to access the 8087 directly through IBM's BASIC Compiler using standard CALL operations. $50.

FIELD COMPUTER PRODUCTS
909 N. San Antonio Road
Los Altos, CA 94022
414-949-3457

CIRCLE 479 ON READER SERVICE CARD

MAG/base from MAG Software, Inc., is now available for the IBM PC. MAG/base is data management software that comes in three versions in varying degrees of sophistication. All three provide up to 99 keys, 999 fields per record, and up to 999,999 records per file. User memory required is 128K with two

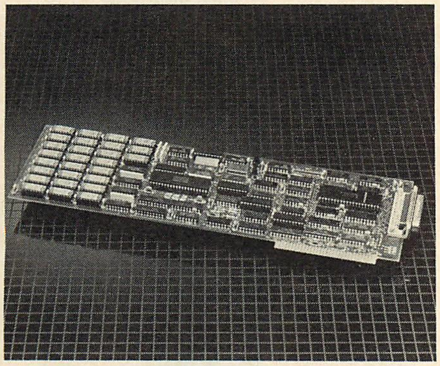
double-sided diskettes or a hard disk. $295, $495, and $795.

MAG SOFTWARE INC.
21054 Sherman Way
Suite 305
Canoga Park, CA 91303
213-883-3267

CIRCLE 480 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Hardware

California Computer Systems' new Z-80 processor board enables PC users to execute CP/M 2.2 or CP/M 3.0 programs. It has a 6MHz Z80B microprocessor, up to 192K bytes of dual-ported memory, and an asynchronous communications interface. When the Z80 is not in use, the memory may be used by the 8088 processor in the PC. Parity is supported properly by both the Z80 and the 8088. The asynchronous communications port may be con-



figured as either COM1 or COM2. Using CP/M 2.2, 64K bytes of memory are supported; using CP/M 3.0, 192K are available.

CALIFORNIA COMPUTER SYSTEMS (CCS)
250 Caribbean Dr.
Sunnyvale, CA 94086
408-734-5811

CIRCLE 481 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Version 1.07 of the Blue Lynx 3276 SNA/SDLC micro/mainframe communications link from Techland uploads and downloads data from the PC or XT to the 4341, 3033, and 3081. The new version features a configuration routine that simplifies installation and a completely revised instruction manual. With Blue Lynx the PC or XT can be a stand-alone distributed processor and an on-line terminal. The Blue Lynx board slips into a slot in the PC or XT and connects via modems and phone line to the host. $690.

TECHLAND SYSTEMS, INC.
25 Waterside Plaza
NY, NY 10010
212-684-7788

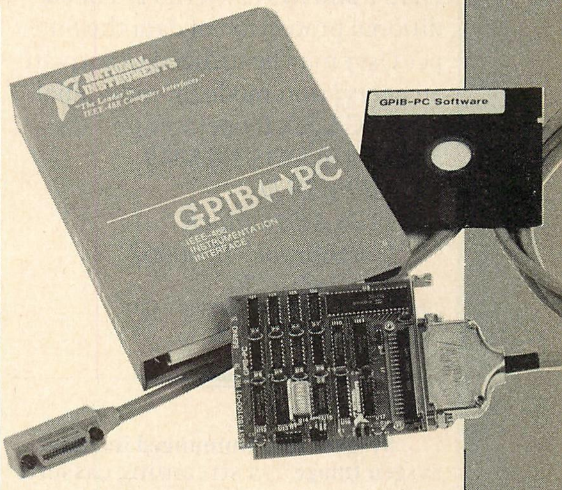
CIRCLE 482 ON READER SERVICE CARD

AST Research has two additions: **AST-BSC**, a communication package for Bisync 3270 emulation, and AST5251. AST-BSC is a complete software and hardware product family designed to utilize the full capabilities of any IBM computer supporting Bisync communication protocol. The PC operates as a 3274 Model 51 Control Unit, 3278 Display Station Model 2, or a 3279 Color Display Station Model 2A, and 3287 Printer with attached printer on the PC. Optional features include 2770 Batch RJE Terminal and Cluster Controller with support for additional IBM PCs or ASCII terminals. AST-BSC lists for $895.

AST-5251, also $895, allows a PC to be connected to the IBM System/34 or IBM System/38 for interactive communications.

AST RESEARCH
2372 Morse Ave.
Irvine, CA 92714
714-540-1333.

CIRCLE 483 ON READER SERVICE CARD



National Instruments now makes an IEEE-488 interface that converts the IBM PC into an instrumentation workstation complete with software. The GPIB-PC software consists of a handler under PC DOS 2.0 and subroutines that may be called from an application program witten in BASIC, 8088 assembly, Pascal, FORTRAN, or C. The GPIB-PC circuit card is implemented with the NEC 7210 GPIB controller chip and a Programmable Array Logic chip. $385 per single unit; OEM discounts available.

NATIONAL INSTRUMENTS
12109 Technology Blvd.
Austin, TX 78759
800-531-5066

CIRCLE 484 ON READER SERVICE CARD

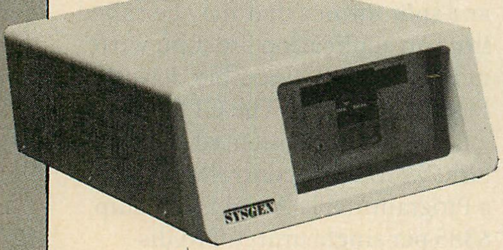
MPPi, Ltd. has released PC Lock II, its second generation of security products for the PC and XT. It is a combination of a 5-by-4 printed circuit board and a software diskette called a Super User, which allows the PC user the control to place files under password protection. Up to 42 passwords may be utilized with hierarchical levels of access, i.e., READ

ONLY and READ/WRITE. For additional protection of data the Super User may be utilized to activate an encryption mode for individual files. PC Lock II operates on PCs and XTs in DOS 2.0 $349.

MPPi. LTD.
1126 Adirondack
Northbrook, IL 60062
312-480-9730

CIRCLE 485 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Sysgen, Inc. announced its new Sysgen Image™, a streaming cassette tape backup for the XT. The backup subsystem includes controller, drive electronics, and tape drive. It is software compatible with either PC-DOS or CP/M-86. Under software control, the Image will per-



form complete archival backup of information on a hard disk at the rate of up to 2.5M bytes per minute. Storage capacity of the streaming tape cassette in the Sysgen Image is 20M bytes. $995.

SYSGEN INC.
47853 Warm Springs Blvd.
Fremont, CA 94539
415-490-6770

CIRCLE 486 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Linkup™ from Information Technologies Inc. is a comprehensive communications package for the PC. Its nucleus is a programmable hardware module that supports industry standard protocols and emulates commercially available terminals at data rates up to 56K. Initial Linkup software options will support TTY, DEC VT52/100, IBM 3101, IBM 2780/3780 emulation, ASCII Block Protocol and a print spooler.

INFORMATION TECHNOLOGIES, INC.
7850 East Evans Road
Scottsdale, AZ
602-998-1033

CIRCLE 487 ON READER SERVICE CARD

RTA 331 from Ariel is a ⅓ octave audio frequency spectrum analyzer that plugs into a single expansion slot inside the PC. The Analyzer divides the audio spectrum into 31 third-octave bands from 20 Hertz to 20 kHertz and interactively displays the relative amplitude of each frequency band. $649.95.

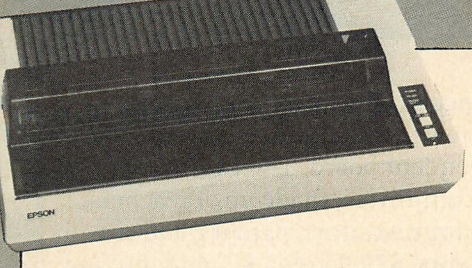
ARIEL CORPORATION
600 West 116th St.
New York, NY 10027
212-662-7324

CIRCLE 488 ON READER SERVICE CARD

From NETWORX™ comes the Wire Tree™, a reliable protection against voltage surges, spikes, and radio frequency interference (RFI) that can damage circuitry and affect computer memory. It mounts on the computer work station and offers continuous protection through surge-limiting, solid-state circuitry built into four grounded outlets. The circuitry absorbs any dangerous spike energy before it reaches the computer by providing an extremely rapid decrease in circuit impedance. The Wire Tree organizes the nine-foot power cord and four peripheral power cords to one side and drapes them to the rear of the workstation. $69.95.

NETWORK
203 Harrison Place
Brooklyn, NY 11237
212-821-7555

CIRCLE 489 ON READER SERVICE CARD



Epson's FX-100 dot matrix printer prints at 160 characters per second and 136 characters per line. It includes a choice of elite or pica spacing, and users can create their own character formats on the screen and download the font into the user's memory. $895.

EPSON AMERICA INC.
3415 Kashiwa St.
Torrance, CA 90505
213-539-9140

CIRCLE 490 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Companies

Control Data Corporation has acquired a license from **Chang Laboratories, Inc.** to market business software products for personal computers. Chang Labs produces numerous business software modules, including word-processing, financial planning, graphics, and others. The company's MicroPlan software, a financial planning spreadsheet, has already sold more than 100,000 copies.

CONTROL DATA CORPORATION
8100 34th Ave. South
Minneapolis MN 55440
612-853-6605

CIRCLE 491 ON READER SERVICE CARD

From ComputerLand Corporation comes news of its new national credit plan with **Citibank, N.A.** Card-carrying customers of ComputerLand's 300 franchised stores who want to finance an initial purchase of $1,500 or more will receive a revolving loan account.

The company has also opened its first **ComputerLand Learning Center,** in Indianapolis, the first of many such teaching centers nationwide.

COMPUTERLAND
30985 Santana Street
Hayward, CA 94544
415-487-5000

CIRCLE 492 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Sensor-Based Systems has been approved by **IBM** as a value-added dealer (VAD) for the PC, which allows SbS to sell the PC and the XT with its added value component, **METAFILE**. In addition to a fourth generation language for application programming, METAFILE includes the facilities of data base management, report generation, word processing, decision support, and communications.

SENSOR-BASED SYSTEMS
Olmsted Federal Bldg.
Chatfield, MN 55923
507-867-4440

CIRCLE 493 ON READER SERVICE CARD

CENTEC CORP. and GENIGRAPHICS Corp. have signed a long-term marketing and technical agreement. The first phase of the development project will interface the CENTEC CHEETAH software system, operating on the IBM PC with the GENIGRAPHICS high-resolution film recorder. GENIGRAPHICS will market the CENTEC IBM PC containing the graphics interface to the GENIGRAPHICS film recorder, which allows users to create title and word slides, rectangular charts, pie charts, block diagrams, organization charts or pictorials.

CENTEC CORP.
11260 Roger Bacon Dr.
Reston, VA 22090
703-471-6300

CIRCLE 494 ON READER SERVICE CARD

VisiCorp has acquired Communications Solutions, Inc. (CSI), supplier of communications consulting services, educational and training programs and communications software that operates in the IBM Systems Network Architecture environment. CSI's ACCESS/SNA™ software product enables independent computer and terminal manufacturers to offer their products with full SNA-compatibility. And CSI software provides capabilities enhancements for the IBM PC user through its SNA 3270 emulation product. This feature permits the PC to operate as an IBM 3274 Control Unit for application in single or multiple workstation configurations.

The SNA technology skills and resources offered by CSI will enable VisiCorp to enhance the value of its recently announced VisiON software environment by combining the communications capabilities of ACCESS/SNA with the performance and flexibility of the VisiON product.

VisiCorp has also upgraded its

VisiSeries™ for the IBM PC and XT. Products upgraded include VisiCalc®, VisiTrend/Plot®, VisiFile™, VisiWord™, and VisiSpell™. VisiSchedule™ will be available in the fourth quarter. The software is being sold on single-sided, single-density diskettes so that they can be used on any IBM PC with or without a hard disk option, or with the XT.

VISICORP
2895 Zanker Road
San Jose, CA 95134
408-946-9000

CIRCLE 495 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Digital Research and Phaser Systems have entered a marketing agreement to share marketing and distribution rights for the micro/SPF™ products from Phaser. DRI will incorporate the Phaser System product line into its own, expanding the DRI Language Division family of productivity tools for microcomputers. Digital Research will make these products available under the DRI label both through its well-established retail distribution channels and through its OEM sales force.

Micro/SPF offers the professional programmer a structured development tool including a full screen editor with the following options: browse, edit, utilities, and a tutorial for on-line operating information. 3270/SPF allows a microcomputer to function as a TSO/SPF distributed workstation with local computing power via Digital Research's CP/M.

DIGITAL RESEARCH
P.O. Box 579
Pacific Grove, CA 93950
408-649-3896

CIRCLE 496 ON READER SERVICE CARD

TRAINING

Micro Learning Concepts, Inc. has a new 56-minute video tape designed to demystify personal computers. In five parts, "Learning Concept: Introduction to Personal Computers," illumines computer jargon; components and functions of personal computers; spreadsheet, word processing, and data base applications; computer graphics; and communications. Included with the tape is a 28-page Quick Reference Guide that offers an in-depth discussion of computer programming and programs.

Intended as an introduction for those who have just purchased or intend to purchase a computer, the tape is the latest in a series of video learning aids produced by Micro Learning Concepts to advance computer literacy. $99.95.

MICRO LEARNING CONCEPTS, INC.
380 Lexington Ave.
Suite 1208
New York, NY 10017
212-687-0066

CIRCLE 497 ON READER SERVICE CARD

PUBLICATIONS

Software Reports, a reference manual published by **Allenbach Industries, Inc.,** evaluates 382 educational software programs for five popular computer brands: Apple, Atari, Commodore, IBM-PC, and TRS-80. Programs for students in preschool through college were evaluated, as well as educational software for adults, school administrators, and special education students. Reviews are coordinated by an independent board, The Evaluation Committee, made up of teachers, administrators, parents, and students. $39.95 plus $3. shipping and handling.

ALLENBACH INDUSTRIES, INC.
2101 Las Palmas Drive
Carlsbad, CA 92008
800-854-1515
In California, call
619-438-2258, collect

CIRCLE 498 ON READER SERVICE CARD

The **Journal of Pascal and Ada,** a bimonthly publication for Pascal, Modula-2, and Ada programmers, now covers Modula-2. Each issue contains a column dedicated solely to Modula, as well as feature articles on this small but powerful language. $14/yr.

WEST PUBLISHING
P.O. Box 384
Orem, UT 84057

CIRCLE 499 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Supertabs from Siechert & Wood Technical Publications are a set of mylar-reinforced dividers that summarize each section of the BASIC and DOS manuals, providing more complete information than is available with quick reference cards. SuperTabs come in two versions—DOS 1.0/1.0 and DOS 2.0 $9.95.

SEICHERT & WOOD TECHNICAL PUBLICATIONS
133 W. Colorado Blvd.
Pasadena, CA 91105
213-449-1276

CIRCLE 500 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Engineering Software

for your PC

- *Power plant and chemical process flowsheet analysis*
- *Pressure drops in pipes and fittings*
- *Thermodynamics of steam, air, fuels, combustion products*
- *Component simulation*
- *Solvers and optimizers*

Call or write for our free catalog

PSI/Systems

Research Park, P.O. Box 3100
Andover, MA 01810
(617) 475-9030

CIRCLE NO. 167 ON READER SERVICE CARD

PROGRAMMERS

COMPARE and EVALUATE compilers, editors, operating systems, toolkits, assemblers, debuggers, emulators, communications . . . We seek out all software and hardware addons for programmers of PCs and related micros. Need something? Try us.

If we don't stock it, we'll find it - at a discount.

Some Products that **stand out**:

"C" Compilers

	LIST PRICE	OUR PRICE
C86 by CI - Full "C" for MSDOS/CPM86	$395	**call**
Desmet by C Ware	100	**89**
Digital Res. - looks good, work to do	350	**280**
Lattice - strong competitor, MS -REL	500	**395**
Manx - full - good to learn with	249	**215**
MicroSoft - decent, not what you'd think	500	**395**
Full versions for cross-compile, CPM, APPLE, RSX, TRS.		Call

PASCAL Language

MS Pascal upgrade from IBM	350	**280**
Software Building Blocks - Fast, full	295	**255**
PASCAL MT + 86 by Dig. Res. for CPM-86/PCDOS	400	**299**

Programmer's EDITOR

C Screen Editor - source code	NA	**60**
VEDIT - popular, full	150	**119**
PMATE-everything, **program**	225	**195**
Final Word-**Manuals** & Editor	300	**225**

Concurrent OSes

Concurrent CPM - liked	350	**265**
Concurrent "PCDOS"??	NA	**159**
QNX - w/tight C Compiler	650	**call**
uNETix-w/MSDOS emulator	99	**89**

Other Languages, Utilities, Hardware, Services

APL*PLUS $555, Norton $65, Software Tools $249, MS BASIC lookalike $125. High Inter COBOL $450. **ADA**, APL, DIBOL, FORTRAN, **LISP**, FORTRAN to C Full comm. with remote use, EMail, Telex for $150, full MODEM $119, 1200 Baud $249

Call for answers, the Programmer's Referral List, a catalog, comparisons, literature or prices. Shipping $2.50 per item.

THE PROGRAMMER'S SHOP™

908-P Providence Hwy., Dedham, MA 02026, 617-897-4750, 800-442-8070

VISA **800-421-8006** MASTER CARD

CIRCLE NO. 239 ON READER SERVICE CARD

BEGIN

{Announcing

The Pascal Compiler

for the IBM PC®

The

Software Building Blocks Pascal Compiler Package

based on Pascal/Z™

Benchmarks available

Call now.}

END.

Software Building Blocks™

607/272-2807

Software Building Blocks, Inc.
Post Office Box 119
Ithaca, New York 14851-0119

IBM PC is a registered trademark of International Business Machines, Inc.
Pascal/Z is a trademark of Ithaca InterSystems, Inc.

CIRCLE NO. 202 ON READER SERVICE CARD

WATSOFTPRODUCTSINC

A subsidiary of the University of Waterloo

Announces

a full screen editor and a family of language interpreters for the IBM Personal Computer

APL
BASIC
COBOL
EDITOR
FORTRAN
PASCAL

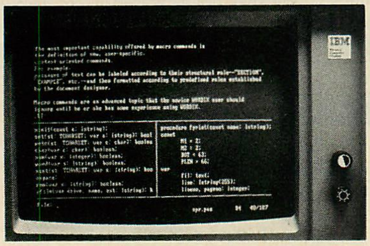
For further information contact:

WATSOFT Products Inc.
158 University Ave.
Waterloo, Ontario
N2L 3E9

(519) 886-3700
Telex No.: 06-955458

CIRCLE NO. 242 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Edix™ + Wordix™ has word processing features that our competitors are still dreaming about . . .



$390 buys the whole dream.

Edix Editing Features
Up to 4 screen windows
Up to 12 file buffers
Top-to-bottom and side-to-side scrolling.
Regular expression searching and translating
Intra- and inter-buffer moving and copying
Keystroke macros
Online tutorial

Wordix Formatting Features
Auto footnotes
Auto table of contents
Auto hyphenation
Multi-line headers and footers
Multi-column layout
Powerful macros
Data file access

Requirements: MS-DOS (PC-DOS), 128K, and an IBM PC, Compaq, Columbia, TI, DEC Rainbow 100 or Zenith Z100.

EMERGING TECHNOLOGY

2031 Broadway   Boulder, Colorado 80302   303 447-9495

Call for details: 800-782-4896

TM Trademark of Emerging Technology Consultants, Inc.

CIRCLE NO. 146 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Need HARDCOPY electronic mail?

Use the U.S. Postal Service's E-COM system along with our P-COM software for the IBM PC. P-COM does all of the formatting required, including text inserts and drawing forms lines, and transmits your letter to a Postal Service computer.

If you program your PC in BASIC, check out these programmer's aids:

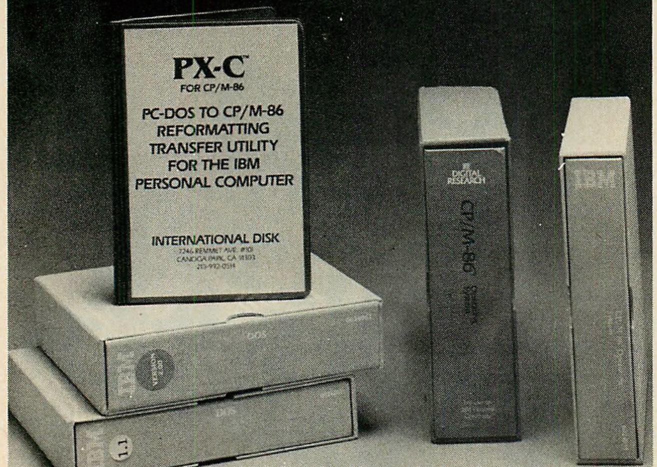
- **Screen Design Facility (SDF)** creates screen handling and data input routines.
- **Universal Report Facility (URF)** — a universal report writer for any random file(s).
- **B-Tree file access** — maintains keyed files using B-Tree access method — no sorting — nodal.

All of the code produced is in BASIC. It can be compiled as-is, and it can be modified, if desired. Priced at $150.00 each, $350 for three.

Fogle Computing Corp.
357 E. Blackstock Rd. / P.O. Box 5166
Spartanburg, SC 29304
800-845-7594 or 803-574-4950

CIRCLE NO. 149 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Need a Transfer?
Use PX-C. PC-DOS to CP/M-86®.



Available At Your Local IBM PC-Digital Research Dealer

INTERNATIONAL DISK
7246 Remmet Ave., Ste. 101 • Canoga Park, CA 91303
(213) 992-0514   (213) 704-6518

CP/M-86 is a Trademark of Digital Research

CIRCLE NO. 255 ON READER SERVICE CARD

OPT-TECH SORT™

SORT/MERGE program for IBM-PC & XT

Features

- Written in assembly language for **high performance**
  Example: 4,000 records of 128 bytes sorted to give key & pointer file in 30 seconds. **COMPARE!**
- Sort ascending or descending on up to nine fields
- Ten input files may be sorted or merged at one time
- Handles variable and fixed length records
- Supports all common data types
- Filesize limited only by your disk space
- Dynamically allocates memory and work files
- Output file can be full records, keys or pointers
- Can be run from keyboard or as a batch command
- Can be called as a BASIC subroutine
- Easy to use, includes on-line help feature
- Full documentation — sized like your PC manuals
- **$75** —VISA, M/C, Check, Money Order, COD, or PO
  Quantity discounts available

CIRCLE NO. 179 ON READER SERVICE CARD

To order or to receive additional information write or call:

OPT-TECH DATA PROCESSING
P.O. Box 2167   Humble, Texas 77347
(713) 454-7428

Requires PC-DOS, 48K and One Disk Drive

The Basic Tools of U.S. Intellectual Property Law

An introduction to some elementary concepts of this law —with the help of a program.

Max Stul Oppenheimer

If you are like most microcomputer owners, some day you will write a program that is so powerful, so elegant and so universally necessary that in return for a fair share of the world's supply of money you will begin to think about making its benefits available to the entire world.

If you are like most beginning entrepreneurs, listing 1, which follows this article, is as close as you will come to a consultation with a lawyer until you are up to your HIMEM in trouble. Run it if you like. (It's okay. You have my permission and I have the copyright.) It may not be the most exciting video game you have ever played, but it will introduce you to some elementary concepts of what is known as intellectual property law.

Protection of computer software is one of the major trouble spots in that area of the law. The American Bar Association's Section on Science and Technology is currently examining the deficiencies of the existing system, but the process of a major revision of a complicated area of law is likely to be lengthy. In the meantime, it will probably be worth your while to become at least generally familiar with the basic tools of United States intellectual property law. Figure 1 introduces the central characters.

A federal copyright is secured automatically as soon as a copyrightable work is created. At this very moment Section 302(a) of Title 17 of the U.S. Code is creating a federal copyright just as fast as I can write. Nevertheless, it is a good idea to put a copyright notice on the finished product. It is easy and inexpensive to take the further step of registering a copyright claim, which provides several benefits, including establishing a public record of your claim. You can get the necessary forms and instructions from the Register of Copyrights, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559. A federal copyright gives the owner the right to prevent others from copying the work. Copyright protects artistic expression, not ideas—one of the reasons that there are many spread sheet programs and data base programs. Because there are many ways to instruct a computer to accomplish the same results, copyright is not a perfect tool for protecting software: a programmer can, without violating a copyright, use the underlying concepts he learned from another programmer's work provided he expresses them sufficiently differently. A copyright owner's remedies for infringement can, however,

Max Stul Oppenheimer is a practicing attorney and a regular contributor to this magazine.

be significant and include the right to obtain a court order impounding infringing copies and to recover the infringer's profits.

Generally, U.S. Patent gives the owner the right to prevent others from using the covered invention for a period of 17 years. While a copyright protects only the author's particular artistic expression of a concept, a utility patent protects the patented invention regardless of what form it takes. Patents, however, are considerably more expensive and difficult to obtain than copyrights. While copyrights are rou-

A software author would like the breadth of protection of the patent system with the simplicity and economy of the copyright system. I would like a System 38 with the price tag of a pocket calculator.

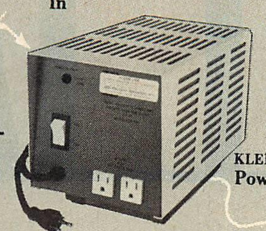
tinely registered upon the filing of an application, patents are issued only after an examiner determines that the application meets certain statutory criteria (including the requirement that there be an advance over the state-of-the-art). The examination process usually involves several rounds in which the examiner and applicant spar over the scope of the patent claims.

A software author would like the breadth of protection of the patent system with the simplicity and economy of the copyright system. I would like a System 38 with the price tag of a pocket calculator. While we're waiting, let's go on to trademarks.

Trademarks technically are not

Computer Protection

KLEEN LINE® CONDITIONER



Prevents:

- Computer Damage
- Brownout Interruptions
- Lightning Spike Damage
- Disruptive Line Noise
- Program Errors

Regulator • Filter • Suppressor

KLR-250A	250 Watt Load	$291.95
KLR-250A-1S0	250 Watt Load; Patented Filter Isolated Sockets	$346.95
KLR-500A	500 Watt Load	$390.95
KLR-500A-1S0	500 Watt Load; Patented Filter Isolated Sockets	$445.95

Shipping: $12.75 Land; $45.50 Air

Ask Your Local Dealer

ESP® Electronic Specialists, Inc.
171 South Main Street, Box 389, Natick, Massachusetts 01760

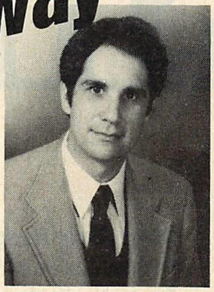
Toll Free Order Desk 1-800-225-4876
MasterCard, VISA, American Express

CIRCLE NO. 238 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Now on IBM PC too!

"Q-PRO 4 blows dBASE II away

We now complete complex applications in weeks instead of months."



says Q-PRO 4 user,
Richard Pedrelli, President
Quantum Systems, Norcross, GA

"As a dBASE II beta test site the past two years, we were reluctant to even try Q-PRO 4. Now we write all our commercial applications in Q-PRO 4. We find it to be an order of magnitude more powerful than dBASE II.

Q-PRO 4's 4th generation syntax is so efficient, we now complete complex jobs in weeks instead of months. Superb error trap and help screen capabilities make our finished applications far more user friendly. And our programs run much faster, too.

In my estimation, any application programmer still using outdated 3rd generation data base managers or worse, a 2nd generation language like BASIC, is ripping himself off."

Runs with PC/DOS, MS/DOS, CP/M, MP/M, TurboDOS™, MmmOST, N/STAR.
PRICE: C/PM version–$395. All others–$595. Moneyback guarantee.
Author's lock up package available.

quic-n-easi products inc.

136 Granite Hill Court, Langhorne, PA 19047 (215) 968-5966

PC/DOS, MS/DOS, CP/M and MP/M, TurboDOS, MmmOST, N/STAR and dBASE II are registered trademarks of IBM, Microsoft, Digital Research, Software 2000, TeleVideo, Molecular Computer and Ashton Tate respectively.

CIRCLE NO. 221 ON READER SERVICE CARD

DOS 1.1 and 2.0 UTILITIES
SOFTWARE PRINTER SPOOLER

Save Time!! Spooler allows the computer to be printing text to the printer while running a program. Supports Visicalc, Basic, Macro-Assembler, Multiplan, FinalWord, Wordstar etc.

- 5 different buffer sizes from 4k to 64k (DOS 1.1)
- DOS 2.0 buffer sizes to 320 kbytes
- Supports Xon-Xoff protocol for serial printers.

$45.00 Req. 1 drive, 64 kbytes, parallel or serial printer

RAM DISK

- No internal switches to set on the PC
- Disk sizes from 32k to 320 kbytes (32 kbyte steps)
- Keyboard reset (Ctl-Alt-Del) is disabled so you won't lose data
- Click from PC speaker can be enabled for disk access signal

Price $40.00 Requires 96 kbytes and 1 disk drive
Ram Disk and Software Printer Spooler both for $69.00

COPYLOCK PROTECTION PROGRAM

An effective protection system for your .COM or .EXE file which is not copyable by any of the general copy programs such as Copy- PC, COPY2PC, System Backup v1.3 and the DOS Disk-copy command. Disk can also be made a "bootable" disk by the end user by using the SYS command from DOS.

- Supports Compiled BASIC programs with chaining

Requires 2 drives, 64 kbytes. ~~$799.00~~
New Price $399.00

See us at PC '83 EAST
Bayside Exposition Center
Boston
Saturday-Monday
October 8-10, 1983

SoftDesign 617 861-0902
6 Blodgett Rd. Lexington, Ma. 02173

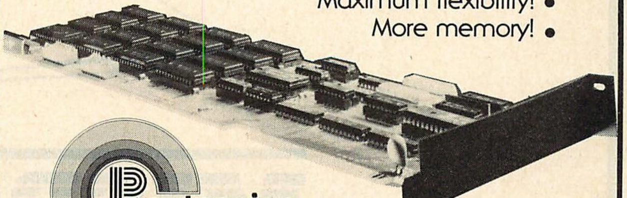
CIRCLE NO. 198 ON READER SERVICE CARD

New! Resident Virtual Programs for the IBM PC with FLEXIMEM™!

Use Fleximem™ as a Read/Only (ROM) board to configure utilities, interpreters, compilers, operating systems, and applications programs as resident virtual programs on your personal computer. Or expand your PC's memory capacity with up to 128K of Read/Write (RAM) memory. In fact, Fleximem™ lets you have both Read/Only AND Read/Write memory by installing compatible RAM and ROM/PROM/EPROM/EEPROM devices on the same board.

Call today for details on Fleximem's special features. Ask for Technical Note No. 47A.

Faster access to programs! •
Maximum flexibility! •
More memory! •



Raytronics

Call TOLL-FREE (800) 854-1085. In Calif. call (619) 270-4000.
4901 Morena Boulevard, Building 900·B, San Diego, CA 92117
Also ask about our RAMPLUS™ multifunction memory expansion board.

CIRCLE NO. 195 ON READER SERVICE CARD

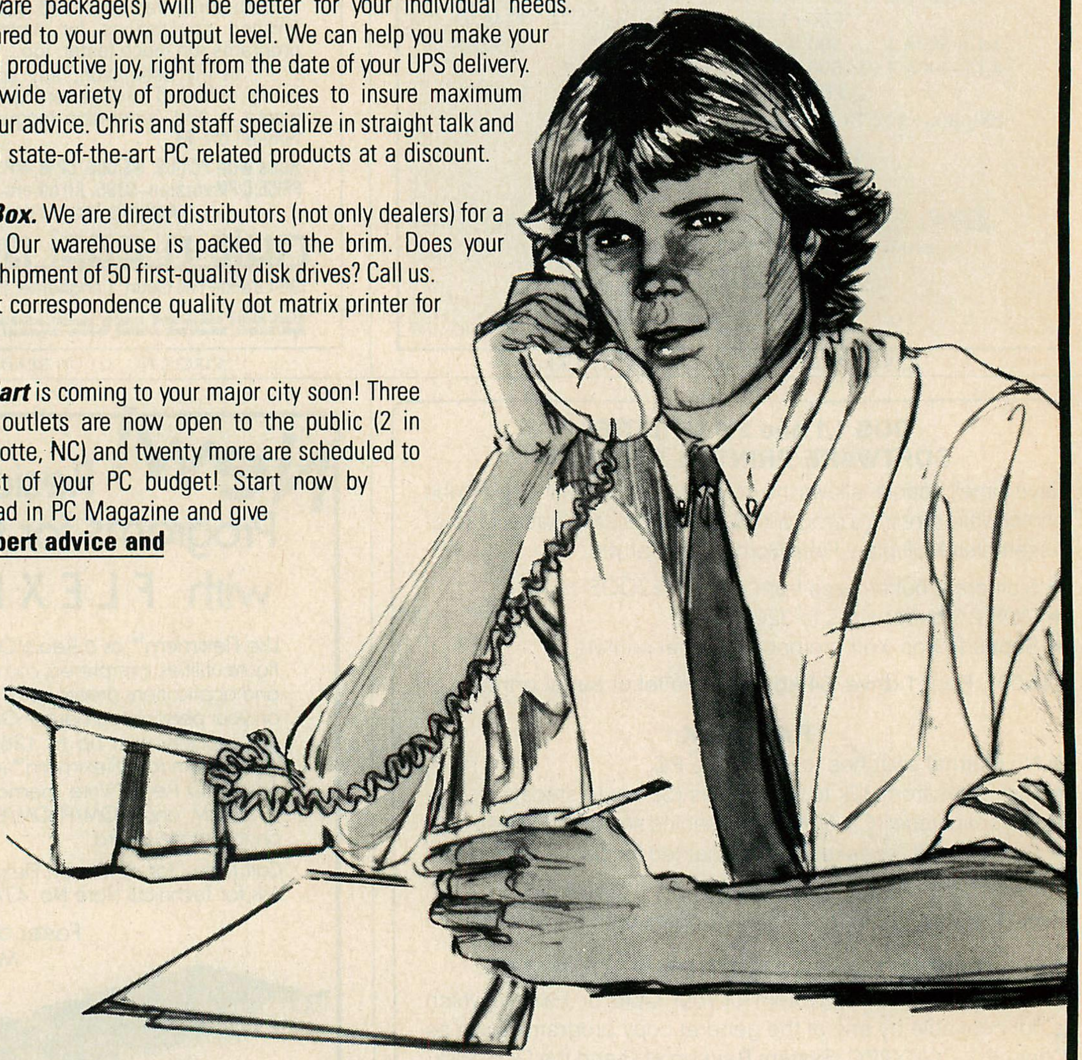
STRAIGHT TALK

Meet Chris Hodges, Sales Director. Eldest son of the oldest existing micro dealer in the southeast. Perhaps the most knowledgeable young man in the IBM-PC enhancement market — certainly one of the most effective. By channeling over 100 major shipments each business day, Chris knows that price and follow-up support are only two reasons for choosing Micro Mart as your primary PC enhancement supplier. Naturally we feel we are the country's price/service leader.

Compatibility is the Key. Choosing the right monitor with the right graphic card. Deciding which software package(s) will be better for your individual needs. Selecting a printer geared to your own output level. We can help you make your PC a cost-efficient and productive joy, right from the date of your UPS delivery. Micro Mart offers a wide variety of product choices to insure maximum compatibility. Ask for our advice. Chris and staff specialize in straight talk and offer only the latest in state-of-the-art PC related products at a discount.

Warehouse vs. P.O. Box. We are direct distributors (not only dealers) for a host of our products. Our warehouse is packed to the brim. Does your company need a rush shipment of 50 first-quality disk drives? Call us. Do you want the latest correspondence quality dot matrix printer for your home? Call us.

Remember Micro Mart is coming to your major city soon! Three Micro Mart discount outlets are now open to the public (2 in Atlanta, and 1 in Charlotte, NC) and twenty more are scheduled to open. Make the most of your PC budget! Start now by checking our product ad in PC Magazine and give us a call. **Ask for expert advice and your best price.**



MICRO MART

Orders Only 1-800-241-8149 • For Information 1-404-449-8089
6889 Peachtree Industrial Blvd., Norcross, GA 30092

intended to protect artistic expression or invention, but they can be extremely useful in protecting the

In the case of a custom program designed specifically for a limited number of users where the author can negotiate and enforce a secrecy agreement, maintaining a trade secret may be a viable option. It is cheap and foolproof—until the secret gets out.

value of software. A trademark protects the use of an identifying word or symbol in a particular field and geographic area (which may be nationwide). How does that help a software author? Well, suppose you could put any three uppercase English letters you wanted on the package containing your program. (The answer will be supplied to anyone sending a self-addressed stamped envelope to the editor). A trademark is acquired by use in connection with a product (or service, in which case it is referred to as a service mark). No registration is required, but coverage is limited to the geographic area (plus an additional area for expansion, which depends on the circumstances) in which the mark has been used to a substantial extent. There is a federal trademark statute that permits claimants to register under a procedure somewhere between copyright and patent in terms of complexity and cost. The key requirement is to demonstrate use of the mark in interstate or foreign commerce. The key benefit is the creation of constructive, nationwide notice of the trademark owner's claim.

The absence of a tailor-made method of legally protecting software makes trade secrecy appear to be an attractive alternative. Generally, trade secrecy protection is recognized where the owner has information that is not known to his competitors, that gives him a competitive advantage, and that he keeps secret. In the case of a custom program designed specifically for a limited number of users, where the author can negotiate and enforce a secrecy agreement, maintaining a trade secret may be a viable option. It is cheap and foolproof—until the secret gets out. In the case of a mass-marketed program where there is no direct negotiation between author and user, the author usually attempts to make secrecy self-executing (for example, by including instructions at the beginning of a program redefining the reset vector to erase the resident program from memory). The method is still cheap, but with the greater number of copies on the market and the absence of the moral sense of obligation to preserve secrecy

Figure 1: Central Characters of Intellectual Property Law

SYMBOL	MEANING	PRIMARY JURISDICTION
©	*Copyright*	*Federal (statute)*
Pat.	*Patent*	*Federal (statute)*
Pat. Pending *Pat. Applied for*	*An application for a patent has been filed, but the patent has not yet been issued*	
®	*Trademark (or Service Mark)*	*Federal (statute)*
TM	*Trademark is claimed, but federal registration has not yet been obtained*	*State (Common Law)*
[none]	*Trade Secret*	*State (Common Law)*

that may be imposed by face to face negotiations, the likelihood that the secret will get out rises and the ultimate value of trade secret protection is dramatically reduced. Once the secret is out, the chance of obtaining alternative protection is vanishingly small.

You now know the tools at your disposal. How to use them depends very much on the particular situation. Some factors to consider:

- Why is your program valuable? Is it a particular artistic feature or is it a clever concept? Once another skilled programmer has seen the output, how hard will it be for him to reproduce the end result using a different graphic representation or programming method.

How aggressive are you willing to be in pursuing infringers? Would you really sue the class of fourth graders who jointly and severally copied your spread sheet program and then improved it?

- How much can you afford to invest in protection?
- How aggressive can you afford to be in pursuing infringers?
- How aggressive are you willing to be? (Would you really sue the class of fourth graders who jointly and severally copied your spread sheet program and then improved it?)

One final factor to consider: you may be the defendant. Someone in this great land of ours may think that your program is based on his/hers. You may have noticed that copyright, patent, and trademark protection belongs to the first user, not the first person to register. (In some other countries, the opposite is the case.)

Therefore, regardless of whether you intend to seek formal legal protection of your software, you should keep careful, dated, notes of how you developed it. If you can spare the memory, put REM statements in each version indicating when you wrote it; if you can spare the space, keep hard copies. If you are not particularly credible (remember, if enough money is involved, someone will doubt your credibility), have a more credible third party sign the copies. Then keep a very close eye on that third party.

NEW

Announcing a solution to the most common computer problem.
(Where to put the equipment.)

$129.95 RETAIL

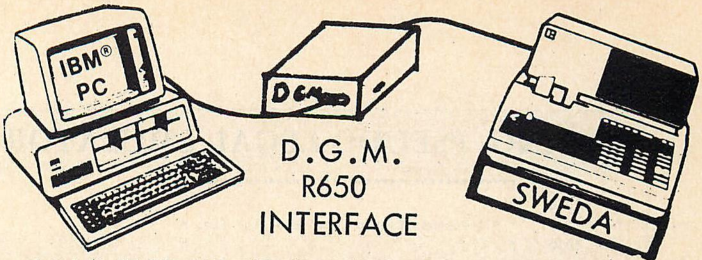
Monitor Mover. You won't have to buy any expensive new furniture. You won't lose any desk space. Monitor Mover adjusts in four ways to each individual user while keeping the monitor (and system, if necessary) completely off your existing work space. Available for most popular brands of computer monitors.

LinTek Computer Accessories

Dealer inquiries welcome.

P.O. Box 8056, Grand Rapids, MI 49508 (616) 241-4040

CIRCLE NO. 173 ON READER SERVICE CARD



CONNECT YOUR IBM PERSONAL COMPUTER TO YOUR SWEDA L-50 CASH REGISTERS!

The D.G.M. R650 Interface hardware and software will make this connection.

• 5 1/4" Diskette with Handler and Sample File	$ 99.00
• Sweda F1 IRC Board	$ 295.00
• Sweda to D.G.M. 50 ft. Cable	$ 35.00
(Add 25¢/ft. when ordering Long Cables)	
• D.G.M. to IBM 10 ft. Cable	$ 35.00
• R650 Interface (1 to 31 L-50s)	$1425.00

Order Now:
D.G.M. Corporation, 7671 Central Ave. NE, Minneapolis, MN 55432 (612) 784-7499

*IBM is a trademark of Int'l Business Machines
*Sweda is a trademark of Sweda Int'l Inc.

CIRCLE NO. 138 ON READER SERVICE CARD

SCREEN MACHINE

Screen Management
FOR
IBM-PC Pascal, FORTRAN, COBOL & Assembler

Creates a 160 column by 25 line display buffer. The screen, acting as a window, can view any section of the buffer.

Set color, character attributes and cursor position.
Allows vertical & horizontal scrolling, erasing and more.
Manipulate one character, one line, or whole blocks of text.
Includes: Tutorial, Example Programs, Complete User's Manual & Quick Reference Card

$49.95

OMRIC Corporation
258 Tower Hill Road
P.O. Box 309
Chaplin, CT 06235
(203) 455-0492

CIRCLE NO. 178 ON READER SERVICE CARD

SAVE MORE THAN EVER ON 3M Scotch® DISKETTES!

$1.95 ea. Qty. 20 ← 5¼" SSDD (744)
5¼" DSDD (745) → **$2.70** ea. Qty. 20

5¼" SSQD—96TPI (746)	**$2.89** ea.
5¼" DSQD—96TPI (747)	**$3.95** ea.
(Specify soft, 10 or 16 sector.)	
8" SSSD (740)	**$2.07** ea.
8" SSDD (741)	**$2.54** ea.
8" DSDD (743)	**$3.30** ea.
(Specify soft or 32 sector.)	

Save even more on quantity orders!
Minimum Order: 20 diskettes. Add $3.00 shipping per 200 diskettes. C.O.D. charge $1.65 additional.
Visa • Mastercard • Checks
For fast service, call
DISK WORLD!
Nationwide: 1-800-621-6827
In Illinois: 312-944-2788
Suite 4806 • 30 East Huron Street • Chicago, Illinois 60611

Authorized Distributor Information Processing Products 3M

CIRCLE NO. 141 ON READER SERVICE CARD

LISTING PSEUDO-LEGAL EMULATOR

```
1000 '  ******************************************
1010 '  *                                        *
1020 '  * All-Purpose Pseudo-Legal Emulator (tm) *
1030 '  *                                        *
1040 '  * Copyright 1983 by Max Stul Oppenheimer *
1050 '  *                                        *
1060 '  * A non-exclusive license to use this    *
1070 '  * program is hereby granted to any       *
1080 '  * person giving credit to the author     *
1090 '  * and this publication in the source     *
1100 '  * listing and accompanying text, if any  *
1110 '  *                                        *
1120 '  ******************************************
1130 CLS
1140 RANDOMIZE VAL (RIGHT$ (TIME$, 2))
1150 KEY OFF
1160 CLS
1170 DIM REPLY$(20)
1180 LIMIT = 0
1190 READ A$
1200 IF A$ = "!" THEN 1240
1210 LIMIT = LIMIT + 1
1220 REPLY$ (LIMIT) = A$
1230 GOTO 1190
1240 STALL$ = "We are researching your question now."
1250 WAFFLE$ = "  Wait a minute..."
1260 AD$ = "having reviewed your"
1270 VI$ = " program carefully, we think you should"
1280 INPUT "What is your name";NAM$
1290 FOR K = 1 TO LEN (NAM$)
1300    IF MID$ (NAM$, K, 1) = " " THEN 1320
1310 NEXT K
1320 NAM$ = LEFT$ (NAM$, K - 1)
1330 IF LEN (NAM$) <= 15 THEN 1370
1340 PRINT "I can't handle a name like ";NAM$
1350 PRINT "Try again."
1360 GOTO 1280
1370 CLS
1380 FOR RAN = 1 TO LEN (NAM$)
1390    X = INT ((10 * LIMIT * RND(1)) + .5)
1400 NEXT
1410 IF (X >= 1) AND (X <= LIMIT) THEN 1450
1420 CLS
1430 PRINT STALL$
1440 GOTO 1380
1450 A$ = REPLY$ (X)
1460 PRINT
1470 PRINT NAM$;", ";AD$;
1480 PRINT VI$
1490 PRINT A$;"."
1500 PRINT
1510 PRINT
1520 PRINT
1530 FOR B = 0 TO 2
1540    PRINT MID$ (WAFFLE$, 1 + 6 * B, 6);
1550    FOR C = 1 TO 500 : NEXT C
1560 NEXT B
1570 FOR C = 1 TO 5000 : NEXT C
1580 GOTO 1370
1590 END
1600 DATA file an application for copyright
1610 DATA apply for a patent
1620 DATA affix a trademark notice
1630 DATA bring us a copy of your employee manual
1640 DATA go into some other line of work
1650 DATA initialize the diskette to keep it from being pirated
1660 DATA expect to be sued
1670 DATA "!"
```

NOW AVAILABLE
FOR DOS 2.0

Load or run more than one program with

MULTI-JOB™

For the IBM PC and XT Computer

- No special hardware (except memory) required.
- True timesharing — multiple programs can run concurrently.
- Programs can be run simultaneously or one at a time.
- Up to 9 separate jobs.
- Works with most programs for the IBM PC.
- Multiple users can be supported with the MULTI-TERMINAL MONITOR (MTM) option.
- PC-DOS 1.1 or 2.0 and 128K of memory are required.
- Much more cost effective than buying a second machine.
- Free 30-day trial period.

MULTI-JOB is available for $159 from:

B&L Computer Consultants
7337 Northview, Suite B
Boise, ID 83704
(208) 377-8088

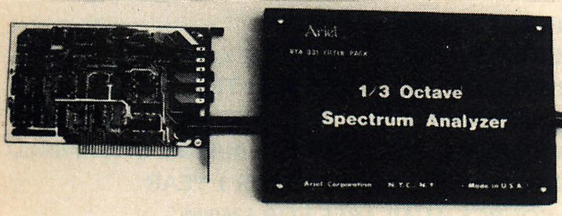
VISA MasterCard

MTM is currently available for certain terminals for $59.

Free brochure listing other B&L Products available upon request.

CIRCLE NO. 155 ON READER SERVICE CARD

RTA for PC



The Ariel RTA is a real time 1/3 octave spectrum analyzer for the IBM Personal Computer. Assembly language routines create an instantaneous display of the frequency spectrum of any audio signal. Also, the analyzer can digitize the signal and store it in the PC's memory for analysis or playback. Call or write for full specifications and applications.

- 31 two pole filters on ISO centers.
- Pink noise source under software control.
- Averaging, weighting and peak hold functions.
- ¼ db resolution from 20 Hz. to 20 KHz.
- 8 bit real time analog input/output system.
- Price: $649.95 shipping included.

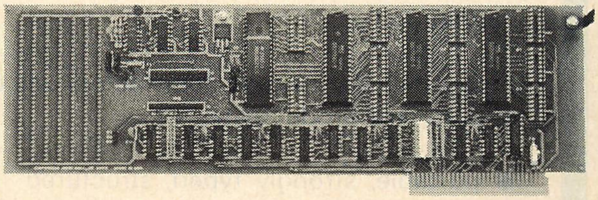
Ariel

600 West 116th Street
New York City, N.Y.
10027
(212) 662-7324

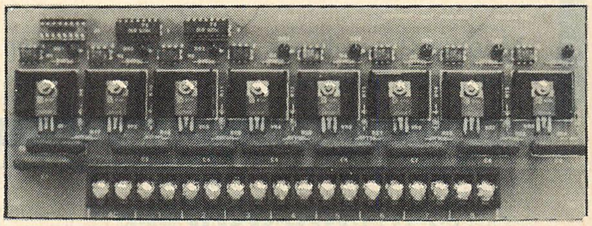
CIRCLE NO. 229 ON READER SERVICE CARD

PERIPHERALS FOR THE IBM PC

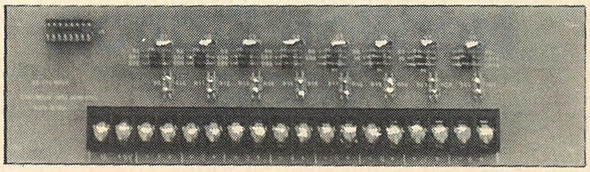
look for low cost–high quality interfaces for the IBM PC



UNIVERSAL I/O. The Universal I/O board has 16 eight bit analog inputs with a voltage range of 0 to 5 volts. It also has 9 eight bit parallel I/O ports. It has interrupt circuitry, Timer clock 32768 Hz. to 512 sec., prototyping area, and LED for power. Part number 83-064A **$299.95**



120 VAC CONTROL. This board has eight optically isolated triac switches. Each switch can control 200 watts. It connects via a 16 pin ribbon cable to a parallel output port. Screw terminals are provided for 120 vac connection. Part number 82-332. **$119.95.**



INPUT PROTECTOR. This board protects the inputs of the ANALOG input or PARALLEL input ports. There are 4.7K pullups, diodes and caps for each line. It connects via a 16 pin ribbon cable. Screw terminals are provided for connection. Part number 82-334. **$89.95.**

To order: Send check or money order. Add 6.5% tax in California. Add 5% shipping for orders less than $100 or 3% for orders over $100 or 10% outside U.S.A. Phone orders: We accept Visa or MC. Add $2.00 for C.O.D. Will Call Hours 9am to 4pm.

JOHN BELL ENGINEERING, INC.

1014 CENTER ST.
SAN CARLOS, CA. 94070
(415) 592-8411

CIRCLE NO. 168 ON READER SERVICE CARD

MODULA-2/86

By 1990, 1 million programmers will be needed to meet the demand for microcomputer software, unless there is a dramatic increase in software productivity.

The widespread use of high level languages for application programming has increased productivity by as much as an order of magnitude.

During the next decade, four factors will drive up software productivity:

- portable, strongly typed, structured languages
- use of software modules
- use of high level languages for system programming
- software development environments

Modula–2 combines these factors better than any other language!

Created by Niklaus Wirth, the designer of Pascal, Modula–2 does 80% of what ADA does, at 10% of the cost.

The Logitech Modula–2/86tm system is a full, standard implementation for 8086/8088 based computers, now available for the IBM PCtm under PC–DOStm and CP/M–86tm.

IBM PC and PC–DOS are trademarks of IBM Corp.
CP/M–86 is a trademark of Digital Research
ADA is trademark of the Department of Defense

LOGITECH

165 University Ave., Palo Alto, CA 94301

☎ (415) 326–3885

CIRCLE NO. 180 ON READER SERVICE CARD

WATSOFTPRODUCTSINC

A subsidiary of the University of Waterloo

Announces

Waterloo NetWorkStation Tools

for the IBM Personal Computer

Editor
- full-screen
- colour support
- function keys

Host Communications
- VM/370 CMS, RSTS/E, VAX/VMS
- file transfer micro to/from host
- access host files from micro programs

Terminal Emulation

For further information contact:

WATSOFT Products Inc.
158 University Ave. W.,
Waterloo, Ontario
N2L 3E9

(519) 886-3700
Telex No.: 06-955458

CIRCLE NO. 218 ON READER SERVICE CARD

C COMPILER

- FULL C
- UNIX* Ver. 7 COMPATABILITY
- NO ROYALTIES ON GENERATED CODE
- GENERATED CODE IS REENTRANT
- C AND ASSEMBLY SOURCE MAY BE INTERMIXED
- UPGRADES & SUPPORT FOR 1 YEAR

C SOURCE AVAILABLE FOR $2500⁰⁰

HOST	6809 TARGET	PDP-11*/LSI-11* TARGET	8080/(Z80) TARGET	8088/8086 TARGET
FLEX*/UNIFLEX* OS-9*	$200.00 WITHOUT FLOAT $350.00 WITH FLOAT	500.00	500.00	500.00
RT-11*/RSX-11* PDP-11*	500.00	200.00 WITHOUT FLOAT 350.00 WITH FLOAT	500.00	500.00
CP/M* 8080/(Z80)	500.00	500.00	200.00 WITHOUT FLOAT 350.00 WITH FLOAT	500.00
PCDOS*/CP/M86* 8088/8086	500.00	500.00	500.00	200.00 WITHOUT FLOAT 350.00 WITH FLOAT

*PCDOS is a trademark of IBM Corp. MSDOS is a trademark of MICROSOFT. UNIX is a trademark of BELL LABS. RT-11/RSX-11/PDP-11 is a trademark of digital Equipment Corporation. FLEX/UNIFLEX is a trademark of Technical Systems consultants. CP/M and CP/M86 are trademarks of Digital Research. OS-9 is a trademark of Microware & Motorola.

408-275-1659

TELECON SYSTEMS
1155 Meridian Avenue, Suite 218
San Jose, California 95125

CIRCLE NO. 214 ON READER SERVICE CARD

Nested Batch Files

A little-known DOS 2.0 feature gives batch files greater power

TECH NOTEBOOK 10

JEFF GARBERS

Batch files—lists of commands stored on disk that you can activate just by typing file names—are handy for everyone who uses DOS. An expert user can cut down his typing time or have complicated tasks performed while off getting coffee. While he's off getting coffee, novices can grab him and get him to make some batch files for them: They make life a little easier (Okay, Mr. Dithers, just put this disk in the drive and type GO).

A shortcoming of batch file processing has been that one batch file could not call another without losing control. For example, if ALPHA.BAT contains the following lines:

```
copy FILE1 FILE2
bert
copy FILE3 FILE4
```

and BETA.BAT contains

```
dir *.BAS
type LETTER1.TXT
type LETTER2.TXT
```

and you type

```
ALPHA
```

then things happen in the following order:

(1) DOS copies FILE1 to FILE2.
(2) The BETA batch file gets started up.
(3) You see a directory listing of all your .BAS files.
(4) You see the contents of the LETTER1.TXT and LETTER2.TXT files.
(5) Since BETA.BAT is now finished, you are returned to DOS command level.

There is a way to have one batch file call another without losing control, although it's far from obvious and is available only under DOS 2.00.

Notice that the last command in ALPHA.BAT—"copy FILE3 FILE4"—never took place. There appears to be no way for a batch file to say, "Look, when this other batch file is done I want to be back in control."

Fortunately, there is a way to have this happen, although it's far from obvious and is available only under DOS 2.00. Page 10-9 of your 2.00 manual describes a process called "Invoking a Secondary Command Processor," and this is the trick it takes. So, if you want to do the job properly, ALPHA.BAT should contain these lines:

```
copy FILE1 FILE2
command /C bert
copy FILE3 FILE4
```

The "command /C" on the second line tells DOS to start a new command processor. When it gets done with its job—namely doing the BETA batch file—control returns to the original command processor, which is doing the ALPHA batch file. The final COPY command takes place as desired. Using this method, batch files apparently can be nested as deeply as necessary. Each nesting level takes up slightly more than 3K of memory, which is freed up when the nested batch file is completed.

You can leave a batch file early with the EXIT command, which you'd probably only use in conjunction with the IF conditional statement. For example, let's say you didn't want to type the LETTER files if they didn't exist. You might redo BETA.BAT as follows:

```
dir *.bas
if not exist LETTER?.TXT exit
type LETTER1.TXT
type LETTER2.TXT
```

BASIC programmers will notice some parallels here—COMMAND is not unlike GOSUB, and EXIT is like RETURN. Calling a batch file the old (non-nested) way is like a GOTO.

One special note: if you intend to use the ECHO OFF command to suppress the display of each command as DOS processes it, you need to include it at the beginning of every batch file. Apparently DOS turns ECHO back on by itself every time a new batch file is started up.

If you're interested in learning how batch files can help you—and you probably should be!—take a look at pages 6-28 thru 6-49 of the DOS 2.00 manual, which discuss batch processing in great detail.

Jeff Garbers works for UserView Corporation in Atlanta, a software research and development firm specializing in human factors. He is coauthor of Crosstalk XVI.

The First Book to Read About the IBM Personal Computer
Arthur Naiman
(Houghton Mifflin Company, Boston, 1983)
103 pages, cloth, $11.95, paper, $5.95

Though its title might suggest that this is one of the new breed of contentless computer books now filling the shelves, *The First Book to Read About the IBM Personal Computer* is, in fact, a well-written, well-researched summary of the first things you might want to know about the PC. The audience for this book should be those who have a natural need for a computer (rather than just the curious). It gives a realistic picture of what small businessmen, writers, or families can expect this computer to do for them, assuming that they don't want to program it themselves.

The bulk of the book is devoted to discussions of the capabilities and prices of packages available in specific fields: money and data management, word processing, games and teaching, graphics, communications, and programming. A welcome aspect of this book is that it never forgets to discuss the cost of the hardware (modems, cables, printers) needed to support the software; nor does it forget to add in software costs when toting up typical configurations.

This book is definitely of most use *before* you buy a computer. The summary chapter gives a realistic estimate of what a useful system is finaly going to run. Typical figures are supplied for small businessmen, graphic artists, and even hobbyists (hobbyists need lots of memory). There is also a convenient table that lists systems by price range.

Just so you don't expect too much—the discussions in the chapters on available software are not deep. General capabilities and capacities are described, but the capabilities are never correlated with specific products or price ranges. Least attention is given to games, and most, to word processing. The toughest section to wade through, for both professionals and novices, is "How Computers Work," which doesn't describe how computers work but is the obligatory introduction to PC vocabulary. On the other hand "Your first time with a PC" is as true-to-life a description as I have read of a close encounter of the first kind with a new computer. It provides some genuinely useful hints for setting up the PC and reading IBM's manuals.

The book has lots of phone numbers to call if you need help, plus names and addresses of vendors. It has some good advice, and the author maintains a good attitude throughout. It even has a little French (Boca Raton) thrown in for style.

—William C. Appelbaum

PC Graphics: Charts, Graphs, Games, and Art on the IBM PC
Dick Conklin
(John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York, 1983)
182 pages, cloth, $15.95

The complete novice interested in "doing graphics" will find this book a welcome companion to the IBM BASIC Manual. Following a brief discussion of graphics-related options on the PC and a one-page review of BASIC ("Always remember to press the Enter key after changing a program statement; doing this causes your change to be recorded in computer memory"), are chapters on line and block character graphics, medium and high resolution dot graphics, advanced BASIC features (like CIRCLE, PAINT, and DRAW), and special applications (light pens, event trapping, etc.). Each chapter concludes with three or four questions, answers, and practice problems in an obvious bid for the educational market.

The incomplete novice may be bored or insulted by some of the more elementary advice, or just puzzled by such things as the references to 16K cassette systems or the tantalizing paragraph about videodisk players that can be attached to, and controlled by, your PC. Perhaps the explanation is the author's position with IBM's Entry Systems organization as a planner for PC software. Although the book acknowledges the existence of DOS 2.0, much of it may have been written before IBM pulled out of Disco Vision. Or maybe the author knows both guys with no diskette drives on their PCs.

The sample programs and accompanying discussions are the real meat of this book, and they're quite good, though a little thinly sliced. Each program is a short, well-structured (though the phrase "structured programming" never appears) example of some idea or technique, easy to read and understand, and a good starting point for further development or experimentation; great stuff for people who have no idea where to begin, and a source of one or two new ideas for the more experienced. The range covered is broad: charts, graphs, geometric designs, several animation techniques, a simple interactive video game, even curve fitting for statistics buffs. If one doesn't interest you, turn the page; the next one will.

Realizing that the depth of explanation is purposely shallow, I was still disappointed to see an isometric drawing of a cube, modified to make the rear face smaller, passed off as 3-D graphics with "improved perspective." I guess a technically correct discussion would have taken another page or two.

If you're a programmer looking for a book on computer graphics, this isn't it. If you're new to both PCs and graphics, or are at least willing to skip the kindergarten lessons, then this is a reasonable introduction to the possibilities and techniques available with standard IBM hardware and software.

—Thomas V. Hoffmann

INDEX TO ADVERTISERS

PC TECH JOURNAL PRODUCT INDEX

TECH BOOK
A Special Section for Product and Service Listings

Accessories/Supplies

DISCSAVERS™

Multi-Color vinyl sleeves for 5¼ and 8-inch diskettes that provide a 4-color filing system, durability, ease of labeling and secure fit. Packaged 12 or 10 (8") per box, they are available in red, blue, yellow and green. Ideal for home or office use.
(List Price: $6.29 for 5¼", $8.75 for 8")
ROCKROY, INC.
COMPUTER PRODUCTS DIVISION
7741 East Gray Road
Scottsdale, AZ 85260
(800) 528-2361, (602) 998-1577

IBM PC SECURITY

Deter unauthorized persons from opening PC system unit. Kit includes specially designed Clarke screwdriver & companion Kent screws, kit price $18.95. Control multiple PC'S..qty disc & extra screws available. To order send ck or money order:
HOOKER TECH/ETERIA
PO Box 461
Lawrence, NY 11559

Computer Services

INSURANCE

SAFEWARE, unique insurance for microcomputer owners, covers all hardware, media, purchased software. SAFEWARE provides full replacement coverage, after a low $50 deductible, for as little as $35 a year. Protect your system against power surges, fire, theft, accidental damage. For immediate coverage call toll-free 1-800-848-3469. In Ohio, 1-800-848-2112.
COLUMBIA NATIONAL GENERAL AGENCY
88 E. Broad
Columbus, OH 43215

Hardware/Add-On Boards

QUADCOLOR VIDEO CARDS

Quadcolor, designed for the IBM PC, has color bit-mapped graphics for sixteen colors on the screen at once. Quadcolor I is functionally equivalent to IBM's card and retails for $295. Quadcolor II offers 640 × 200 high-resolution for $275. And Quadcolor III offers 640 × 400 high-resolution.
QUADRAM CORP.
An Intelligent Systems Company
4355 International Blvd.
Norcross, GA 30093
(404) 923-6666
TWX 810-923-6666

FLEXIMEM ROM/RAM CARD

For resident virtual programs, this is the ONLY board to buy! Use as read/only (ROM) board for faster access to programs or expand read/write (RAM) memory up to 128K. Compatible RAM and ROM/PROM/EPROM/EEPROM devices can be installed on same board for maximum flexibility. Call for technical note 47A.
RAYTRONICS
4901 Morena Blvd., Building 900-C
San Diego, CA 92117
(800) 854-1085, (619) 270-4000 (CA)

PC ADD-ONS

We carry everything from memory upgrades and disk drives to memory cards and hard disks. Brands include Tandon, CDC, Seattle Computer, Tecmar, Tallgrass, and more. U.S. Inquiries: For service and satisfaction call:
EMJ DATA SYSTEMS LTD.
79 Regal Rd #5
Guelph, Ontario, N 1K 1B6 Canada
(519) 837-2444, (416) 846-3233

256K NO SLOT MEMORY

Let us install up to 256K RAM on your EXISTING SYSTEM BOARD using NO SLOTS. We improve your IBM PC so it can address the 64K RAM chip 128K—$192, 192K—$256, 256K—$320 (expandable and warranted). DO-IT-YOURSELF KITS—PC-KNB—$39.95, PC-KPC—$59.95. 64K-PUR—$5.95 each.
Add-MEM
22151 Redwood Rd.
Castro Valley, CA 94546
(415) 886-5443

13 FUNCTION EASIBOARD™

IBM quality plus Easitech Excellence exclusively at IBM PC dealers worldwide. Memory (64K-256K), spooler, printer and modem connections, three electronic disks, chronograph and more. No need to search for low prices. Our lowest prices are at authorized IBM PC dealers only. $325 to $595. EASIBOARD by EASITECH.

EASITECH EXCELLENCE

EASITECH CORP.
2215 Perimeter Park, Suite 22
Atlanta, GA 30341
(404) 452-7576

THE ENCRYPTOR

THE ENCRYPTOR, a data encryption board, is designed for use with the IBM, APPLE, S100 & IBM compatible micros. THE ENCRYPTOR puts the strength of DES at the disposal of business & personal computer users. Sensitive data can be quickly & economically protected whether for storage or transmission.
FUTUREX
9700 Fair Oaks Blvd.
Fair Oaks, CA 95628
(916) 966-6836

GET INTO THE BLACK

Consult PC Tech Journal every other month for easy reference to services/hardware/software. You can be part of PC Tech Journal for 3 issues for Only $180. You get 7 lines of copy, PLUS a boldface heading PLUS 4 lines for your name, address, and phone number. Logo art $75 additional. Reach out to IBM PC owners and users TODAY. Call collect.
PC TECH JOURNAL
1 Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016
(212) 725-4215 collect

Hardware/Disk Drives

8" & 5¼" FLOPPY DRIVES AND DISKETTES

- 8" flexible disk subsystem—Attractive thin-line design stacks above or below system's unit (19½" × 18" × 3½") ANT with complete documentation. Controller board and software available.
  1-8480 DD, DS, 2.4 MB $1495
  1-8481 SD, DS, 1.2 MB $995
- 5¼" internal disk drives—TANDON or Control Data—DS, 40 ATP1, 320 KB.
  TM 100-2 $235 • CDC 9409 $249
  5¼" half height internal drives available.
- Control Data diskettes—1240-00 5¼" SS/DD w/write protect notch in hub ring—bx of 10 $22. 1244-00 5¼" DS/DD $35. 1225-00 8" DS/DD wpn $39.50. VISA/MC.

MICROXPRESS
MICROXPRESS
305 S. State College, Suite 135
Anaheim, CA 92806
(714) 632-8512

Hardware/Monitors

QUADSCREEN

This 17-inch high-resolution monochrome monitor displays 10,240 characters at once with 960 × 512 dots resolution—more than five times that of IBM's PC monitor. Bit-mapped graphics allows addressability of each dot. Full IBM MSDOS/BIOS compatibility. Quadscreen comes with video card, cable and software. Retails for $1995.
QUADRAM CORP.
An Intelligent Systems company
4355 International Blvd.
Norcross, GA 30093
(404) 923-6666
TWX 810-923-6666

QUADCHROME

The RGB 12-inch color monitor has a special NEC.31mm dot pitch tube to deliver up to 690 × 480 dots resolution for a sharp screen image. Color graphics, word processing, and accounting are just a few tasks this monitor can perform. Retails from $795.
QUADRAM CORP.
An Intelligent Systems company
4355 International Blvd.
Norcross, GA 30093
(404) 923-6666
TWX 810-923-6666

Rates and Information

Listings are grouped by category and consist of a bold lead line (23 characters maximum), 7 lines of ad copy (45 characters per line), plus 4 lines of company name, address and telephone number.

Listings are available only on a 3 issue basis at $60. per issue ($180. total). Copy will have a set format and remain the same for all 3 months. Enhance the appearance of your ad by including your Logo at an additional cost of $25. per issue ($75. minimum extra charge). Pre-payment is required by check, money order, or American Express, Diners Club, MasterCard, Visa credit cards. Closing Date: 1st of 2nd month preceding cover date.

Send copy and remittance to PC TECH JOURNAL, TECH BOOK, 12th FLOOR, 1 PARK AVENUE, NEW YORK, NY 10016. Call (212) 725-4215 for additional information or assistance.

TECH BOOK
A Special Section for Product and Service Listings

HARDWARE/ PRINTER AIDS

GRAPHICS ON YOUR NEC?

Graphics ConvertaBuffer translates Epson Graftrax into format for dot graphics on NEC daisy wheel printers. End the two printer dilemma! No special print wheels to buy. Supports 1-2-3 and MBA. Graphics conversion and 64K Byte buffer in one unit. Ask your dealer for a demonstration or contact us.

von Leivendyke Enterprises
Silvermine Avenue
Norwalk, CT 06850
(203) 846-4973.

HARDWARE/ STORAGE DEVICES

WINCHESTER SUBSYSTEMS

Tallgrass Technologies offers a family of Winchester HardFiles and streaming tape by file backup for the IBM PC. With formatted capacities from 6.25MB to 70MB, Tallgrass has a HardFile System to fit the most stringent of data processing applications. From $2995 including integral tape backup.

STEVE VOLK/V.P. MARKETING
Tallgrass Technologies Corporation
11667 West 90th
Overland Park, KS 66214
(913) 492-6002

MAILING LISTS

PROFILES OF RETAIL STORES & USERS

CI can provide names & addresses of: a) over 2,200 retail computer stores surveyed via the telephone, b) new personal computer users (i.e. IBM, Apple, Osborne, etc.). Both can be tailored & used for mailing lists, telemarketing or direct sales. Call (619) 450-1667.

COMPUTER INTELLIGENCE CORP.
3344 North Torrey Pine Ct.
La Jolla, CA 92037

MICROS IN LARGE ACCOUNTS

CI's new information service locates large-volume users of personal computers in key accounts. This program provides installed user data, network configurations, and their plans for new purchases. The data is gathered via 1500 telephone surveys each month with large companies including the Fortune 1000. Call 619-450-1667.

COMPUTER INTELLIGENCE CORP.
3344 North Torrey Pine Ct.
La Jolla, CA 92037.
(619) 450-1667

IBM MAILING LISTS

Over 75,000 names of IBM personal computer owners (counts increase daily) available for rental on labels or magnetic tape. Total 550,000 including other brands.

IRV BRECHNER
TARGETED MARKETING, INC.
Box 453
Livingston, NJ 07039
(201) 731-4382

PUBLICATIONS

THE LAWYER'S PC™

A twice-monthly newsletter for lawyers using the IBM PC and compatibles. Written in plain English, the newsletter will give you practical information to turn your IBM PC into your best investment ever. $58/year (24 issues) U.S. MC/VISA. Money back guarantee on unmailed issues. Subscribe today or ask for FREE info.

R.P.W. PUBLISHING CORP.
P.O. Box 729B
Lexington, SC 29072
(803) 359-9941

JOURNAL OF PASCAL AND ADA

A bimonthly magazine for Pascal, Modula-2 and Ada users emphasizes programming techniques and applications. Articles include source code (also available by modem). JPA also reports on new developments, relevant books, software, hardware. Annual subscription (6 issues) is $14 ($21 outside U.S. in U.S. dollars).

JOURNAL OF PASCAL AND ADA
P.O. Box 384
Orem, UT 84057
(801) 373-4094

SOFTWARE/ ACCOUNTING

CUSTOM PAYROLL

All systems support multiple pay categories, calculation of all taxes, user-defined deductions, exceptional item handling, a variety of necessary reports, paychecks and W-2 forms. Written in PC Basic with full source included for easy maintenance. Prices start at $400.00 for basic system and manual.

DATASMITH, INC.
Box 8036
Shawnee Mission, KS 66208
(913) 381-9118

SOLOMON III GENERAL LEDGER

Suitable for large and small businesses, banks and accounting firms. Unsurpassed in flexibility, power and ease of use. Graphically displayed screens, user defined chart of accounts, reports, journal types and budgets. Consolidation of multi-divisions (companies), auto-reversing and recurring transactions, ratio analysis plus a complete report generator. $595 complete. Demo available.

Solomon Series® Software By TLB
The Serious Accounting Software

COMPUTECH GROUP INCORPORATED
Lee Blvd., Box 271
Frazer, PA 19355
(215) SOLOMON or 644-3344

SOFTWARE/BUSINESS PROJECT MANAGEMENT

PROMAC/DOS FOR MANAGERS

Project planning, management and control. Uses critical path method. Offers interactive control of project activities, schedules, costs and resources. Up to 10,000 activities in any work breakdown structure. Tabular and graphic reports support earned value analysis. Call or write for brochure and sample reports.

PRIMAVERA SYSTEMS, INC.
29 Bala Avenue, Suite 224
Bala Cynwyd, PA 19004
(215) 667-8600

SOFTWARE/COMPILER

C-SYSTEMS ● COMPILER ● WINDOW

C-Systems V7 compatible nonfloat c compiler for real-time system applications. Optimized assembler source code. 128K, 2 dd. $195. c-window is a source level debugger for c programs. Single step, breakpoint, trace at statement level. Display and change variables using full c expression syntax. Requires c-compiler $195.

C-SYSTEMS
P.O. Box 3253
Fullerton, CA 92634
(714) 637-5362

C86—"C" FOR PROFESSIONALS

"C" brings great power, control and conciseness to programming. C86 brings FULL UNIX syntax (portability), source to a rich library (gives you control), no royalties, PCDOS & CPM-86 support, and overlays. Ask a friend—we are ahead. Development will keep us ahead. Hotline support is solid. $395. Call your Dealer or CI.

COMPUTER INNOVATIONS, INC.
10 Mechanic Street, Suite J-113
Redbank, NJ 07701
(201) 530-0995

THE PROGRAMMER'S SOURCE

COMPARE products. Find what's best. We serve programmers of MSDOS and CPM systems. We cover all compilers (like 15 PCDOS C compilers), editors, utilities, operating systems, communications programs, addon hardware, key books and supplies. Call for answers, Referral Service, a catalog, literature, prices.

THE PROGRAMMER'S SHOP
135 Main Street, Suite 3-D
Maynard, MA 01754
(800) 421-8006, (617) 897-4750

PC COMPILERS

Consult PC Tech Journal every other month for easy reference to services/hardware/software. You can be part of PC Tech Journal for 3 issues for Only $180. You get 7 lines of copy, PLUS a boldface heading PLUS 4 lines for your name, address, and phone number. Logo art $75 additional. Reach out to IBM PC owners and users TODAY. Call collect.

PC TECH JOURNAL
1 Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016
(212) 725-4215 collect

TECH BOOK A Special Section for Product and Service Listings

Software/Communications

3740 CONVERSION SOFTWARE

Access IBM data processing equipment through the 8" diskette and avoid problems in serial communication. By adding an 8" drive to your PC & using our REFORMATTER Conversion Software you can exchange diskettes with IBM's 3741, 3742, 3747, 5110/20, Series 1, System 3/32/34/36/38/360/370 and 43xx & other machines that read & write the IBM 3740 diskette.

MICROTECH EXPORTS
467 Hamilton Ave.
Palo Alto, CA 94301
(415) 324-9114
TWK: 910-370-7457 MUH/ALTOS

MULTILEAVING REMOTE JOB ENTRY WORKSTATION

Edit inexpensively off-line. Bypass TSO or CMS by transmitting your jobs straight into MVS/JES or VM/RSCS. Receive printouts automatically using error-correcting bisynchronous multileaving communication. Features: menu-driven operation, 1,200 to 19,200 band, multiple printers, more throughput than 3780, easy installation, and one-year warranty. BARR/HASP package includes synchronous communications adapter board, software and manual. $750.

BARR SYSTEMS, INC.
2500 Blue Ridge Road/Suite 315/Raleigh NC 27607

BARR SYSTEMS, INC.
2500 Blue Ridge Road, Suite 315
Raleigh, NC 27607
(800) BARR-SYS

VT/102/52 TERMINAL

PC100 turns your IBM type PC into a VT100/102/52 terminal. With PC 100 you can use DEC applications such as EDT, KED, WORD 11, & vi. PC 102 adds VT102 printer support & text file transfer to the standard VT100 features. Full VT keyboard emulation, easy to use SET-UP screens. Call or write for more information. From $89.

GENERAL MICROSYSTEMS
7525 Mitchell Rd., Suite 101
Minneapolis, MN 55344
(612) 837-4215

Software/Data Management

T.I.M. IV

A relational data base management system that generates and summarizes files, mailing lists, and employee records. The data can be accessed and searched in a number of ways. T.I.M. provides help screens and function key legends as user aids. Capacities include 32,767 records per file, 40 fields per record, 60 char/field. (List Price: $500.)

INNOVATIVE SOFTWARE, INC.
9300 W. 110th St. #380
Overland Park, KS 66210
(800) 255-0470

Software/Development Tools

METAFILE DEVELOPMENT SYSTEM

The METAFILE Software System creates a development and operational environment that provides integrated facilities for high level programming, word processing, data base management, modeling, report generation, communications, forms generation, menu building, data conversion, and impromptu interaction.

METAFILE

SENSOR-BASED SYSTEMS
Olmstead Federal Building
Chatfield, MN 55923
(507) 867-4440

BASIC DEVELOPMENT SYSTEM

An integrated set of software tools that will greatly increase the efficiency and productivity of programmers using PC BASIC. Includes Single Step Trace, complete cross-reference, dynamic dump of all program variables, renumber with program line relocation, program compression and expansion. $79, VISA and MC accepted.

SOFTOOL SYSTEMS
8972 E. Hampden Ave., Suite 179
Denver, CO 80231
(303) 793-0145

PASCAL BIOSLIB

Give Microsoft Pascal all the power of the PC's BIOS roms. Graphics, color, cursor control, scrolling supported. Use all keys including ALT and all 40 Function Keys. Use communications adapters, multiple printers. Determine installed equipment and memory. $39.95 for diskette and documentation.

NEXT GENERATION SOFTWARE
144-10 Roosevelt Avenue
Flushing, New York 11354
(212) 762-2833

LANGUAGE ORIENTED EDITOR

The Entry System for Programs is the easiest way to program in Pascal and C. Great for expert & beginning programmers. Formats your code and checks for syntax errors while you edit. One keystroke builds complete skeletons and structures. Write error free programs 50% faster, 100% better. $245. Call for Demo Disk.

BELLESOFT
THE FIRST NAME IN PROGRAMMING PRODUCTIVITY

BELLESOFT, INC.
2127 Bellevue Way SE
Bellevue, WA 98004
(206) 451-9788

ACTIVE TRACE

Automates the tedious part of PC BASIC programming/debugging, leaving you time to learn & create. Pops a window into BASIC which displays variable values as your program runs. Output to screen, printer, or disk. No need to single step. Complete XREF mapping. Review in BYTE 4/83 p. 334. $79.95 CALL FOR INFO.

AWARECO
P.O. Box 695
Gualala, CA 95445
(800) 358-9120, in CA (707) 884-4019

MACHINE CODER UTILITY

Writing assembly language routines to enhance interpreted BASIC programs? You need CODER! CODER reads object files created by the IBM assembler and generates BASIC statements to your specs for merging into your programs. Written in interpreted BASIC; source code provided. $29.95. 64K/monochrome.

COMMUNITY SOFTWARE
PO Box 101
Griffith, IN 46319

Software/Engineering

TEPRO 4010

TEPRO 4010 a software package, permits the IBM PC owner with graphics and communication capability to emulate the TEKTRONIX 4010 terminal. It offers alphanumeric, graphics, file transfer, and hard copy even when connected to a host system. Price $400. Also Consultants, CUSTOMIZED SOFTWARE. For further information call:

TECHNOLOGICAL SYSTEMS GROUP,
3852 Foxford Drive
Atlanta, GA 30340
(404) 939-3526.

Software/File Management

CADSAM

BASIC btree keyed file management system. Supports 5 data files and 10 index files open simultaneously. Supports 32,000 records/file. Automatically reuses deleted records. Supports keys between 4 and 60 bytes. Supports duplicate keys. Random search time 1 second. Sequential search time 1/10 second. Supplied in source form. $150. Demo $15.

CADS, INC.
P.O. Box 17304
Greenville, SC 29606
(803) 277-0650

Software/Financial

CALCULATOR EMULATOR

Now you can make quick calculations with the ease of an adding machine or print calculator on your IBM PC. Includes programmable formats for scientific notation, fixed or floating point, auto decimal entries, PLUS optional title line and labelling of entries. For home or business. Dealer inquiries welcomed. $39.95. MC/VISA/CHECK/MO.

SPECIALTY DESIGNS
7739 El Pensador
Dallas, TX 75248
(214) 960-2455

Software/General

RAM FAST SORT

Sorts 500 strings (like names, dates and #'s) in 4 seconds with optimized bubble and quick sorting. Use multiple arrays (1 primary, 15 secondary), of any length. Written in machine code. Uses compiled MS Basic (8088/8086). Comes with: high speed string search & expanded basic input routines. $34.95

GSC, INC.
Route 2, Box 466
Alachua, FL 32615
(904) 462-4564

TECH BOOK

A Special Section for Product and Service Listings

SOFTWARE/ GRAPHICS

FORTRAN GRAPHICS PACK

57 MicroSoft or SuperSoft FORTRAN callable subroutines. Professional graphics power backed by a 90 page user manual, filled with examples and designed to be helpful to every level of user. Five packages in one! General utility, 2-D interactive, 2-D plots, 3-D plots, and solid models (hidden line removal!). $95.

MICROCOMPATIBLES
11443 Oak Leaf Drive
Silver Spring, MD 20901
(301) 593-0683

CHEETAH BUSINESS GRAPHICS*

Starting at under $1000, the Cheetah Business Graphics System is upgradable to Gene-graphics-quality resolution, with a variety of intermediate resolutions and hardcopy film or plotter output options. Infinitely friendly and flexible. You can make a slide in 10 minutes for as low as $5.00. *Elected by IBM as a VAR for graphic content.

CENTEC CORPORATION
11260 Roger Bacon Drive
Reston, VA 22090
(703) 471-6300

GIRAPH BUSINESS GRAPHICS

GIRAPH: Line, bar, stack bar and pie charts. Menu-driven with selectable shading, labeling, colors, etc. Will use VisiCalc and Multiplan files ($199). GIRAPH SUPER: All the above features PLUS scatter diagrams, 3-D bars, separate left and right scales, log scales, text anywhere and more ($299). Demo $25. Call or write to:

DATA DISPLAY
171 W. 4th Street
NY, NY 10014
(212) 620-8134

VERSAWRITER

Complete drawing system for IBM PC includes digitizer drawing board and software—ready to use. Use digitizer to trace drawings to the computer screen. Features include draw & dot mode, fill & airbrush in 100 colors, add text, save and recall picture, dump graphics to printer, make circles, boxes, pie charts & bargraphs, create your own brush palette and more. $299.00.

VERSA COMPUTING, INC.
3541 Old Conejo Road, Suite 104
Newbury, CA 91320-2178
(805) 498-1956

35mm SLIDE FROM YOUR PC

COMPUTER SLIDE EXPRESS converts graphic files produced on the IBM PC into brilliant 35mm color slides with color resolution 400% better than your monitor. Leave your printouts behind. Project yourself into the technology of tomorrow. Use high resolution color slides at your next presentation. COMPUTER SLIDE EXPRESS. $6/slide, $30 minimum order.

VISUAL HORIZONS
180 Metro Park
Rochester, NY 14623
(716) 424-5300

GRAPH 'N' CALC

Bridge the function gap between spreadsheets and graphics. A unique graphics/analysis system that uses techniques such as Seasonality Trending, Exponential Smoothing and Multiple Regression Analysis to develop projections. Then visualize the results using vivid color video or hard copy graphic presentations.

DESKTOP COMPUTER SOFTWARE, INC.
303 Potrero Street, Ste 29-303
Santa Cruz, CA 95060
(408) 458-9095

PLOT-10 GRAPHICS EMULATOR

PC-PLOT is a complete emulation of the TEKTRONIX model 4010 graphics terminal. The basic packages range from $40 to $75 plus optional plotter driver software. Write or call for a technical brochure.

MICROPLOT SYSTEMS CO.
1897 Red Fern Drive
Columbus, OH 43229
(614) 882-4786

SOFTWARE/ LANGUAGES

PC/FORTH

Fast, extensible, interactive language ideal for graphics, communications, and process control application. Extension packages for 8087 numeric processor support, advanced graphics, and cross-compilation also available. Runs under PC-DOS or CP/M-86 with 48K and one disk drive. Prices start at $100.

LABORATORY MICROSYSTEMS
4147 Beethoven St.
Los Angeles, CA 90066
(213) 306-7412

ADA ON A MICRO

JANUS/ADA is an exceptional programming language for software development. Being a subset of the Ada programming language JANUS/ADA implements those features of Ada which are directly needed by professional programmers. These features include separate compilation, user defined data types and helpful program debugging.

R.R. SOFTWARE
P.O. Box 1512
Madison WI 53701
(608) 244-6436

SOFTWARE/MAILING PROGRAMS

POWERIZE

Powerize your EasyWriter/Volkswriter letter-writing with these MBS software tools: Merge'n Print for automatically repeating customized form letters (keyboard and file insertions, etc.)—$100; MBS Label Program with fast, 6-way sorting—$95; and Data Base for other follow-up and client data—$225. VISA/MC.

MBS SOFTWARE
12729 N.E. Hassalo St.
Portland, OR 97230
(503) 256-0130

SOFTWARE/ MARKETING RESEARCH

SURVTAB™

Easy-to-use system for entering, editing, and tabulating data from survey questionnaires. Produces cross-tabs, frequency displays, and summary statistics for up to 80 questions and as many records as your disk permits. Perfect for market research surveys! Includes 43-page manual with instructions and examples. $180.

STATISTICAL COMPUTING
CONSULTANTS
9025 Andromeda Drive
Burke, VA 22015
(703) 455-2379

SOFTWARE/ OPERATING SYSTEMS

OS DEVELOPMENT TOOLS

Universal development interfaces and IRMX 86 implementations for PC DOS/MS DOS based systems. A complete family of development tools. For further information contact:

RTCS

RTCS/REAL TIME COMPUTER
SCIENCE CORP.
PO Box 3000-886
Camarillo, CA 93010
(805) 482-0333

SOFTWARE/SORT

OPT-TECH SORT/MERGE

Extremely fast machine language Sort/Merge program. Sort ascending or descending on multiple fields, merge files. Works with variable or fixed length records. On-line help, full documentation and much, much more. Best features on the market! Compare before you buy any other. Write or call for more information. $75.

OPT-TECH
P.O. Box 2167
Humble, TX 77347
(713) 454-7428

SOFTWARE/ STATISTICS

FORTRAN SUBROUTINES

100 Fortran subroutines covering data screening, correlation and regression, design, discriminant, factor, and time series analysis. Nonparametric statistics, generation and distribution functions, matrix and storage operations, Eigen analysis, matrix & polynomial solutions, & misc. linear analysis. SOURCES INCLUDED. Price $295.00, CA residents, please add 6% sales tax. Check or money order.

ALPHA COMPUTER SERVICE
P.O. Box 2517
Cypress, CA 90630
(714) 894-6808
The Source: STA550

TECH BOOK

A Special Section for Product and Service Listings

SOFTWARE/UTILITIES

SUPER TOOLS FOR PC

• PFAS is the easy to use, proven B+ tree ISAM designed for Pascal. It supports multiple key access and unlimited file and record size.
• PhosForm is the fill-in form input for Pascal allowing interactive design of screens. It performs data conversion validation.
PFAS-$200.00 PhosForm—$95.00

GRYPHON SYSTEMS
922 Grange Hall Rd.
Cardiff by the Sea, CA 92007
(619) 436-1455.

PC DISK ID

Eliminates the need, under PC DOS 2.0, to reformat disks in order to add, change, or delete volume labels. Prints sorted list of files (including hidden files) from disk directly to labels or to a listing. Also allows recovery of files erased inadvertently. Requires PC DOS 2.0, 1 disk. $30.

ErgoSoft
P.O. Box 454
Oakhurst, NJ 07755
(201) 493-8352

SOFTWARE PROTECT DEVICE

Matchbox-sized Software Protection Device (SPD) attaches externally & works on both PC and XT. Each SPD is custom manufactured to uniquely respond when your program checks for it. Prevent unauthorized use of your software while allowing end-users to back-up. Prices vary from $15.00 to $50.00/unit depending on quantity. We have a complete line of software protection products for the IBM and others. (i.e. PC PROTECTOR which does what PC PADLOCK & COPY PROTECTOR do for less . . . $75). Also available: RS-232C SPD & a high level disk copy protect that CANNOT be copied by ANY back-up program. Call for details on these & other products.

SAFETY FIRST!
13031 San Antonio Drive
Norwalk, CA 90650
(213) 870-7069

PC FILECOMPARE

Compare disk files with meaningful results. See the difference when a non-compare occurs. Filecompare displays the actual records that failed to compare, not just the offset into the files. Also allows comparison of files of different lengths, individual files or allows specification of global file name characters. $50. NJ + 6%. MC/VISA.

ERGO-SOFT
PO Box 454
Oakhurst, NJ 07755
(201) 493-8352

COPY PROTECTION BY MSD

The ULTIMATE diskette copy protection system designed for software developers and publishers. A variety of protection methods are available to suit your protection requirements. All IBM PC and XT environments are supported which includes: DOS, BASIC (compiled and interpretive). Pascal, P-System and stand-a-lone systems. Customized systems also available. Requires: 64K, two disk drives.

MICRO-SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS, INC.
555 Festes Avenue
Schaumburg, IL 60193
(312) 980-8338

COPY PROTECTION

Protects your .COM or .EXE program from copy programs such as System Backup v1.3, Copy-PC, and all other general copy programs. User can use the disk as a normal disk. SYS command can be used to make disk bootable. Automatically loads. .EXE files. Random method precludes copying. Price $799.

SOFT DESIGN CO.
6 Blodgett Rd.
Lexington, MA 02173
(617) 861-0902

DISK UTILITY

DISKMAP/PC is a disk utility which allows you to recover erased files and display, alter or copy the contents of any sector on a diskette. Displays are in hex and ASCII, and patches can be entered in either. Displays directory including erased files. Requires DOS 1.0 or 1.1. $59, CA residents add 6.5% sales tax.

UNICORN SYSTEMS COMPANY
3807 Wilshire Boulevard
Los Angeles, CA 90010
(213) 380-6974

DISASSEMBLY CROSS-REF

The ULTIMATE research tool for the assembly language programmer. Captures output from the PC-DOS DEBUG utility and prints a disassembly listing marking each referenced address. This is followed by a sorted cross-reference of all hexadecimal byte and word values appearing in the disassembly list. $49, VISA and MC accepted.

SOFTOOL SYSTEMS
8972 E. Hampdon Ave. Suite 179
Denver CO 80231
(303) 793-0145

COPY PROTECTION

SLK/F places an assembled or compiled program on a diskette with 4 different copy-resistant features in such a way that it runs normally, but cannot be copied by backup programs such as COPYPC. The rest of the diskette is available as normal, and DOS may be added. Price $150.

OLIVE BRANCH SOFTWARE

OLIVE BRANCH SOFTWARE
1715 Olive Street
Santa Barbara, CA 93101
(805) 569-1682

FINALLY HD'S & 2.0

MEDIA MAGICIAN! Absolute and file relative disk editing for hard/floppy disks. For any MS-DOS 2.0 computer, plus IBM 1.0/1.1/2.0 custom version. Instant HEX/ASCII display and editing to boot tracks, directories, FAT'S, any place. Advanced W/P type functions, full screen editing and active "HELP". $68.50 and $1.50 p/h for both versions plus full DOC'S.

PHOTON SOFTWARE

PHOTON SOFTWARE
636 120th Ave. NE
Bellevue, WA 98005
(800) 426-2675

ULTIMENU FOR DOS

Take the mystery out of DOS! Our full screen system allows you to create menus with up to 36 program entries. A single keystroke activates the selected program. Eliminates the need to memorize commands or to type lengthy character strings. $24.95 (similar system for BASIC add $19.95). VISA and MASTERCARD too!

DB/DC SOFTWARE ASSOCIATES
P.O. Box 4695
Manchester, N.H. 03108
(617) 682-6629

dBASE TRACER

Use this utility program to help maintain and document your dBASE programs. Reduces a trace listing of nested DO files as well as a cross reference table to file systems. $40.

DATA DISPLAY
171 W. 4 Street
New York, NY 10014
(212) 620-8134

/N

Industrial strength line number remover. Let the BASIC Compiler give you tighter, faster code. Overcome Compiler memory limitations. Let it compile larger programs. Unreferenced line numbers waste memory and prevent full optimization. Remove unwanted line numbers with /N. $30. (Check or money order.)

SHERBORN SOFTWARE SYSTEMS
226 Western Ave.
Sherborn, MA 01770
(617) 655-6543

SOFTWARE/WORD PROCESSING

VOLKSWRITER INT'L EDITION™

For IBM-PC and compatibles. On screen tutorials, full-screen editing, on-screen formatting and standard ASCII/DOS files. Permits writing in German, French, English, Spanish & Italian and generation of scientific, mathematical & engineering characters. Multiple keyboard arrangements and communications possible. $225.00.

LIFETREE SOFTWARE, INC.
411 Pacific St., Suite 315
Monterey, CA 93940
(408) 373-4718

USER GROUPS

PASCAL NEWS

Pascal News is the official but informal publication of the Pascal Users' Group (PUG). PUG promotes the use of, and the ideas behind, the programming language Pascal. Pascal News has seven years of back issues at present and documents source programs written in Pascal. Four issues per year—$25.

PASCAL NEWS
2903 Huntington Rd.
Cleveland, OH 44120

USE US

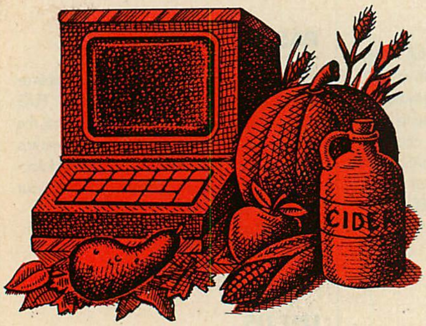
Consult PC Tech Journal every other month for easy reference to services/hardware/software. You can be part of PC Tech Journal for 3 issues for Only $180. You get 7 lines of copy, PLUS a boldface heading PLUS 4 lines for your name, address, and phone number. Logo art $75 additional. Reach out to IBM PC owners and users TODAY. Call collect.

PC TECH JOURNAL
1 Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016
(212) 725-4215 collect

TECH CALENDAR

NOVEMBER

November 1–3
Symposium on Application and Assessment of Automated Tools for Software Development
San Francisco, CA
Sponsors:
IEEE-CS, the University of Texas at Austin and ACM SIGSOFT
Contact:
J.C. Browne, Dept. of Computer Sciences
University of Texas at Austin
Austin, TX 78712



November 3–4
Workshop on Using Computers in the Employment and Education of the Handicapped
Minneapolis, MN
Sponsors:
IEEE in cooperation with ACM SIGCAPH
Contact:
Everett L. Johnson
Wichita State University, Box 44
Wichita, KS 67208, 316-689-3425

November 7–9
24th Annual Symposium on Foundations of Computer Science
Tucson, AZ
Contact:
Paul R. Young, TEO21
Evans Hall,
University of California
Berkeley, CA 94720, 415-642-1024

November 7–11
COMPSAC 83
Chicago, IL
Sponsor:
IEEE
Contact:
Compsac 83, P.O. Box 639
Silver Spring, MD 20901
301-589-8142

November 17–19
5th Annual Northeast Computer Show and Software Exposition
Boston, MA
Contact:
Northeast Expositions
822 Boylston St.
Chestnut Hill, MA 02167
617-739-2000

November 28–Dec. 2
COMDEX Fall '83
Las Vegas, NV
Sponsor:
Interface Group
Contact:
300 First Ave., Needham, MA 02194
617-449-6600

DECEMBER

December 6–8
Software Maintenance Workshop
Monterey, CA
Sponsors:
IEEE-CS and Natl. Bureau of Standards
Contact:
Norman Schneidewind, Code 54Ss
Naval Postgraduate School
Monterey, CA 93940
408-646-2719/3211

December 7–9
1983 Conference on Small and Personal Computers
San Diego, CA
Sponsors:
ACM SIGSMALL, SIGPC
Contact:
Anne-Marie Claybrook,
The Mitre Corp.
Bedford, MA 01730, 617-271-2439

December 12–15
CHI 83, Conference on Human Factors in Computer Systems
Boston, MA
Sponsors:
ACM SIGCHI
Contact:
Raoul Smith, GTE Labs
40 Sylvan Rd., Waltham, MA 02254

December 13
Computer Networking Symposium
Silver Spring, MD
Sponsor:
IEEE
Contact:
Computer Networking
P.O. Box 639
Silver Spring, MD 20901
301-589-8142

JANUARY

January 7–10
Consumer Electronics Show
Las Vegas, NV
Sponsor:
Consumer Electronics Shows
Contact:
William T. Glasgow
3 Illinois Center, Suite 945,
303 E. Wacker Dr. Chicago, IL
60601, 312-861-1040

January 15–18
11th Annual ACM SIGACT-SIGPLAN Symposium on Principles of Programming Languages
Salt Lake City, UT
Sponsor:
ACM SIGACT and SIGPLAN
Contact:
Mary Van Deusen
34 Archer St.
Wrentham, MA 02093
617-384-2526

PCnet is the first local area network designed specifically for the IBM Personal Computer. It consists of the necessary hardware and software to set up a powerful, yet cost effective local area network for the IBM PC. While others make claims, PCnet is a local area network proven to be successful by hundreds of installations in IBM Personal Computers.

AST communication PRODUCTS

AST RESEARCH INC.
2372 Morse Avenue, Irvine, CA 92714
Telephone (714) 540-1333
Call or write for immediate response.

AST & PCnet Hardware:
- CSMA/CD LAN technique
- 7000 feet max. distance
- Low cost CATV Coaxial cable as medium for transmission
- 1 Megabit per second transmission
- Optional Mainframe connection (e.g., AST-SNA; AST-5251; AST-3780 etc.)

AST & PCnet Software:
- Disk Sharing
  Unlike other networks, PCnet does not demand expansive file server or proprietary hard disk systems for disk sharing. Almost any PC-DOS compatible hard disk including IBM's can be used for disk sharing
- File locking
  Provides locking to common data files so that common files are only accessed by one user at a time
- PC Sharing (Multi-tasking) Allows user on 1 PC to run command on another PC in the same network as if the command had been entered on that PC's keyboard
- Printer Sharing
  Allows PCs to share printers installed in other PCs.

AST & PCnet Future Products:
- Universal File Server
- Gateway

Other AST Products
- I/O Plus II
- MegaPlus
- ComboPlus
- PlusModem
- Etc....

PCnet is a trademark of Orchid Technology, Inc. IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

CIRCLE NO. 109 ON READER SERVICE CARD